HANDBOUND
AT THE
UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/etonlatingrammar00edwauoft

[illegible]

8899

TO

THE REVEREND JOHN KEATE, D.D.

HEAD MASTER OF ETON COLLEGE,

This Accented Edition

OF

THE ETON LATIN GRAMMAR,

WITH NOTES,

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,

BY

HIS VERY OBEDIENT SERVANT,

T. W. C. EDWARDS.

# PREFACE.

This Work consists of the common Eton Text, with very slight alterations in four or five places only; but with the addition of *accents* on all English words of more than one syllable; and of the *quantities* of the several syllables of all the Latin words; and also of the acute accent on the syllable to be accented in every Latin word of more than one syllable. The vast utility of this plan can never be so fairly appreciated as by comparing the pronunciation of boys in schools where this Grammar is used, with the pronunciation of boys in schools where it is not used: and by viewing at the same time the diminution of labour to persons engaged in tuition, and also the satisfaction they must feel, at the accuracy, and accelerated progress, of their pupils.

Independent of the improvements just named, the common Eton text is rendered clearer than heretofore, by the method of printing the Latin, and by the amplification of the English of several of the words.

The Notes, appended to the Text, are of the most useful description, being selections from the best authors of antiquity condensed into as few words as possible, yet always preserving a lucidity. The same plan of marking the *accents* and *quantities* is pursued in the Notes as in the Text.

Again, in the present Work, the Construing is entirely new,—the genitive case of the several nouns, and, when anomalous, sometimes even other cases, being given; with whatever else appeared to me to be calculated to render the Latin more intelligible, and the whole more profitable to learners, than the old mode of translating the Rules and Examples could render it.

After the Construing, I have given a short appendix, containing various necessary information on Punctuation and

the use of Capital Letters; and also the principal figures of Grammar and of Rhetoric.

Some persons, I am well aware, think that the quantity of the Latin syllables is really an object of very little importance, and that accentuation is a matter of no moment at all the meaning of words, and the construction of sentences, being the chief thing to be learnt: and, they say, that accent is so much at variance with quantity, and quantity with accent, that, in a greater or less degree, the one must always be sacrificed to the other:—moreover, they say, Latin being a dead language, it may be pronounced as we like, without error and without offence. But what can be more false than doctrine like this?

A strict observance of Quantity is not by any means incompatible with the strictest observance of Accent; nor can any language be properly an oral language without a strict observance of both, according to some acknowledged system, —*true* or *false*.

If, in the Latin language, we moderns agree to shorten many of the long syllables, in pronouncing them; and to lengthen many of the short syllables; and, also, to accentuate the words in a way in which they never were accented by the Romans, let us not say we are reading or speaking Latin.

My main object in the present performance being to induce and to establish a habit of correct enunciation in reading and in speaking Latin, (as respects Quantity and Accent), I shall here briefly state what is meant by each of those terms.

By Quantity, then, we are to understand the time *actually* and *practically* devoted, in the act of speaking, to the enunciation of a syllable: thus, a syllable uttered *quickly*, as to time, is said to be *short*,—but a syllable, uttered *slowly*, is said to be *long*. Take, for example, the two English words "oval" and "oven,"—and it will be found, that by every man and woman bred in England, the former is pronounced as two long syllables, and the latter as two short ones:—the "o" in "oval" and the "o" in "oven," it will be allowed, seem to the ear to be scarcely the same letter.

Just so in Latin; the "o" in the word "ōvŭm, *an egg*," and that in "ŏvĭs, *a sheep*," are equally distinct from one

another :—nor less so, the "o" in "prōnŭs, *prone*," and that in "bŏnŭs, *good*."

In Latin, in Greek, and every other language, the length of a long syllable is not always owing to the length of the vowel in it; for, whenever a short vowel stands before a consonant, and the next syllable begins with a consonant, the time occupied between the consonants causes the first syllable to dwell on the ear longer than it otherwise would do, and hence its quantity is said to be long. Now where a long vowel or a diphthong is followed by a consonant in the same syllable, and the next syllable begins with a consonant, it follows that the first will be still longer, than one in which the vowel is short.

But, as every ear cannot discriminate, with so much nicety, the precise *time* and *parts of a time* which a correct speaker actually devotes to the enunciation of every individual syllable, Grammarians content themselves with the division of quantity into *long*, *short*, *doubtful*, and *common*.

Every long syllable ought, at least, to occupy double or twice the time of a short syllable; but syllables which are doubtful are uttered of a length betwixt long and short. Common syllables are such as are with equal propriety either long or short, at the option of the speaker or composer.

By ACCENT, we are to understand a peculiar inflexion and stress of voice laid upon some one syllable of a word.

Of accents there are three, namely, *the acute*, *the grave*, and *the circumflex:* but here we shall speak of the *acute* only, being that to which we moderns mostly confine ourselves, the limits of a preface not admitting of much detail.

In every word, then, of more than one syllable, some particular syllable of the word is always distinguished from the rest by a sort of émphasis, or greater stress, given to it by a stroke of the voice.

Without this, language would be monotonous, and often unintelligible to a hearer; for it would be next to impossible, in many instances, to know where one word terminates, and another begins.

In English, we have many words accented on the last syllable, as "aslánt, condescénd;" but in Latin very few or

no words have the accent on the last syllable. In that language the accent falls either upon the penult or the antepenult of words. Hence it follows, that *in all words of two syllables the stress must be on the first syllable.* Again, the place of the accent in polysyllables is readily determined by the following simple Rule:—

*If the penult, or last syllable but one, be long, the accent is on it, but if the penult be short, the accent is on the antepenult, or last syllable.*

It would, no doubt, have been extremely amusing to the ancient Greeks and Romans, to hear a word *pronounced* with the accent on the fifth, or sixth, syllable from the end; as it sometimes is in English; when in their respective tongues the antepenult, or third syllable from the end, was the very farthest from the terminational syllable that the accent was ever removed.

But in Greek, as in English, many words were accented on the final syllable.

In speaking all this time of accent, I must be decidedly understood to mean nothing more than that weight, or stress of voice, which serves to distinguish some one syllable of every word, containing more than one, from the other syllables of the same word; without alluding at all to the species of accent, or to the tone, or musical key, in which the ancients uttered certain syllables, conformably to the genius of their native tongues.

This subject, on which the elegant and forcible use of the Latin language so much depends, merits the greatest attention, let us, therefore, always lay the right stress of voice upon the right syllable,—equally regardless of the scorn of pedants, and of the sneer of fools. Be truth our sole aim, and error our only fear.

T. W. C. Edwards.

☞ In Scanning the Hexameter Rules, every syllable long by position is marked long; but in all other instances the true quantity of the syllables is given,—without reference to position.

THE

# ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.[1]

THE Látin Létters are thus wrítten

*Cápitals.*

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVXYZ.

*Small*, or *Cómmon.*

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.[2]

Of these Létters six are námed Vówels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*.

---

1 As Grámmar is that Scíence which has for its óbject corréctness of lánguage, both óral and wrítten, it fóllows then, that Látin Grámmar must mean the knówledge and art of speáking and of wríting the Látin lánguage corréctly ; that is, accórding to the estáblished Rules of the Róman tongue, and úsage of the Róman wríters. By the E'ton Látin Grámmar is implíed the abrídged Mánual of Mr. LILY, which has for mány years been succéssfully emplóyed at E'ton school, to inítiate boys in Látin.

In Grámmar there are four distínct depártments or divísions :—

I. *Orthógraphy*, which teáches us the shape, and sound, of the létters of a lánguage ; and the right méthod of combíning them in the formátion of sýllables and of words.

II. *Etymólogy*, which treats of the derivátion, significátion, and afféction, of the várious parts of speech.

III. *Sýntax*, which detérmines the Right Constrúction of words in a séntence, and points out their mútual connéxion, depéndence, and relátion.

IV. *Prósody*, which is the perféction of the óther divísions ; and which régulates the pronunciátion by físing the time or quántity of sýllables, the áccents of words, and the tone and émphasis, that ought to be obsérved, in the útterance of séntences. To this divísion of Grámmar belóngs the entíre art of *Versificátion.*

2 These are cálled Róman cháracters, béing básed on and resémbling, in a consíderable degreé, those úsed by the Rómans or Látins. They are, howéver, not altogéther the same. It is a mistáke that the Róman cháracters have been retaíned since the times of the Rómans, as each succéssive age úsed a dífferent cháracter ; and a pérson accústomed to Látin mánuscripts, and skílled in reáding them, can detérmine the ǽra of each from the cháracter úsed in it. Our présent Róman cháracter was fórmed by the eárly prínters, by áltering those úsed in Látin mánuscripts. It is úsed by the Itálians, Spániards, Danes, Swedes, En'glish, French, and látterly by the Dutch. Várious attémpts have been made to introdúce its use in Gérman works ; but though mány Gérman publicátions, of great impórtance, have been prínted in the Róman cháracter, by much the greáter númber of the prínters of that coúntry retaín the Góthic,

The rest (*h* alóne excépted[3]) are cálled Cónsonants.

A vówel makes a full and pérfect sound of itsélf, as *e*.

A cónsonant cánnot be soúnded withoút a vówel, as *b*, pronoúnced *be*.

Cónsonants are divíded ínto mutes,—líquids,—and doúble létters.

The líquids are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*;[4] the doúble létters are *j*, *x*, *z*:[5] the remaíning lettérs are cálled mutes.[6]

*K*, *Y*, *Z* are found ónly in words oríginally Greek.

A sýllable[7] is a distínct sound of one or more létters pronoúnced in a breath.

---

or black létter. The stúdent who wíshes for informátion on the íntricate súbject of *Palæógraphy* (as it is térmed), will receíve full satisfáction in Mabillon "De Re Diplomática," and Champollion, "Paléographie des Classiques."

[3] The létter *h* is neíther a vówel nor a cónsonant, but a sort of breáthing or aspirátion. It is found both at the begínning and in the míddle of words, and líkewise at the end: but in Látin, few words términate in this létter.

[4] Grammárians have gíven the name of líquids or semivówels to these four létters, becaúse, though they cánnot be soúnded withoút a vówel, yet, like the impérfect mutes (see note 6), no one of the four impédes the voice entírely, as ány of the pérfect mutes impédes it; and moreóver becaúse ány one of the four can fóllow a mute in the same sýllable, and líquidly coalésce with it. Thus, in glīs, *a dórmouse*, the líquid *l* fóllows the mute *g*, and coalésces with it: so, in crūx, *a cross*, the líquid *r* fóllows the mute *c*. Of these four létters *l* and *r* occúr more fréquently áfter a mute in Látin words than eíther *m* or *n*: and of the four, perháps *m* is the least líquid, excépt at the end of a word fóllowed by a vówel or a díphthong, when the vówel befóre the *m* is in most ínstances elíded by the fígure Ecthlípsis.

[5] The létters *j*, *x*, and *z*, are térmed doúble, becaúse the sound of *j* is equívalent to that of *dg*; and the sound of *x*, to that of *cs*, or *gs*, or *ks*; and the sound of *z*, to that of *ds*, or of *ts*. But it may be obsérved that *j* is not a doúble létter áfter the vówel *i*, as in bĭ′jŭgĭs, *two-yóked*, nor when it begíns the látter part of a cómpound word, the fórmer part béing in itsélf a pérfect word, as jūrĕjūrăn′dō, *by sweáring an oath*.

[6] The mutes then are b, c, d, *f*, g, k, p, q, *s*, t, and *v*; whereóf b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t are pérfect, that is, tótally dumb in themsélves, and occásioning, whenéver they end a sýllable, an ínstant stop to the pássage of the voice:—but f, s, and v, are impérfect; becaúse, althoúgh they are dumb in themsélves, yet áfter a vówel, they efféct not a compléte stóppage of the voice like the pérfect mutes. Of these three the létter *s* approáches by far the neárest to the cháracter of a líquid, for it can not ónly stand befóre a mute and líquid, as in strīx, *a groove or chánnel*, álso, *a screech-owl*: but it can fóllow a líquid and mute in the same sýllable, as in stīrps, *a stem*.

[7] In évery sýllable there must be at least one vówel; but the présence

A díphthong is the sound of two vówels in one sýllable.

Of próper díphthongs there are five, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, *ae*, *oe*.[8]

The two last of these díphthongs, námely *ae* and *oe*, are cómmonly pronoúnced as the vówel *e*, and are véry óften joíned and wrítten thus: *Æ æ*, *Œ œ*.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight:

1. Noun, Prónoun, Verb, Párticiple; declíned.

---

of a cónsonant is not nécessary: for sómetimes we meet with a word of séveral sýllables in which there is not a cónsonant; as Ææ'ă, *an ísland on the coast of I'taly.* But althoúgh the présence of a cónsonant be not ábsolutely nécessary in a sýllable, yet there are mány sýllables that both begín and end with a cónsonant. Some sýllables, indeéd, begín with two, or éven three cónsonants, and some fínal sýllables términate with the like númber. Thus, in the monosyllábic word "scōbs," *fílings or sáwdust,* a sýllable both begíns and ends with two cónsonants; and in "scrōbs," *a ditch,* a sýllable begíns with three cónsonants, and ends with two; so, in "stīrps," *a stem,* a sýllable begins with two cónsonants, and ends with three.—A sýllable long by authórity or use is distínguished by a straight line óver the vówel, as in flōs, *a flówer,* or in ūrbs, *a cíty* · a short sýllable is, in like mánner, distínguished by a curve line over the vówel, as in ŏs, *a bone:* and a cómmon or doúbtful sýllable is distínguished by both of these marks, as FĀC, *do.* The length of a long sýllable depénds eíther upón the estáblished length of the vówel in it, else upón the check given to the voice by the concúrrence of cónsonants: and sómetimes the length is ówing to both these cáuses.

*In the divísion of sýllables the fóllowing diréctions are to be obsérved:*—

I. A cónsonant betweén two vówels in the same word is joíned to the látter vówel; as bŏ'-nŭs, ă'-mŏ; excépt the áccent falls on the last sýllable but two (antepénult), then this sýllable takes the fóllowing cónsonant, as tŭn'-ĭ-că, *a túnic;* ŏp'-ĭ-fēx, *a wórkman:* and the doúble létter *x*, which may more próperly be consídered to belóng to the vówel befóre it; as in flēx'-ĭ-lĭs, *fléxile:* excépt, líkewise, ány partícular cónsonant términating the first part of a cómpound word; as *b* in ăb'-ēst, *it is dístant,* or *n* in ĭn'-ŏ-dō-rŭs, *inódorous.*

II. Two cónsonants betweén two vówels, in the same word, are to be séparated, as in pēc'-tĕn, *a comb,* dīph-thōn'-gŭs, *a díphthong,* īn-tēr'-prĕs, *an intérpreter;* unléss the cónsonants can begín a sýllable: in which evént they are to be joíned to the vówel which fóllows them, províded ónly that the quántity of the vówel befóre the two cónsonants be not léngthened by posítion, that is, be not made long ówing to the séquence of those cónsonants. Thus in such words as cў'cnŭs, *a swan,* the próper divísion is cў'-cnŭs; but if the first vówel be léngthened by posítion, then the right divísion becómes cȳc'-nŭs. This excéption, howéver, applíes not to cómpound words, éven where a short vówel is léngthened by posítion; as in rĕ'-spŭ-ō, *I spit out agaín.*

[8] The impróper díphthongs are *ai*, *oi*, *ui*, and *yi*, whereóf the first two séldom occúr in words púrely Látin; and *ui* is chíefly confíned to the two dátives *huic* and *cui*.

2. Ad'verb, Conjúnction, Prepositíon, Interjéction; úndeclined.[9]

Nouns are of two kinds—súbstantives and ádjectives.

A noun súbstantive decláres its own meáning, and requíres not ány óther word to be joíned with it to show its signification; as hŏ'mŏ, *a man;* ān'gĕlŭs, *an ángel;* lĭ'bĕr, *the book;* cōnstān'tĭă, *cónstancy.*[10]

A noun ádjective[11] requíres to be joíned with a súbstantive, eíther expréssed or understoód; of which it shows the náture or quálity: as, bŏ'nŭs pŭ'ĕr, *a good boy;* mă'lŭs pŭ'ĕr, *a bad* or *a naúghty boy;* mūl'tī (*understánd* hŏ'mĭnēs) *mány men;* mūl'tă (*understánd* nĕgō'tĭă) *mány things.*

## OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name of whatsoéver Thing, or Béing, we see, or discoúrse of.

### OF THE NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two númbers; námely, the síngular and the plúral.

The síngular speaks ónly of one; as pă'tĕr, *a fáther.*

The plúral speaks of more than one; as pă'trēs, *fáthers.*

---

[9] To these parts of speech may be ádded Insépara ble Párticles, as the prepósitives *ăm-, dī-, dĭs-, rĕ-, sē-, vē-,* and the adjúnctives *-mĕt, -tĕ, -cĕ, -ptĕ, -cĭnĕ,* with some óthers of the same sort: álso, the enclítics *-nĕ, -quĕ, -vĕ,* which howéver are clássed with conjúnctions:—líkewise pronóminal terminátions, altogéther dífferent from adjúnctive párticles; such as, *-dĕm, -dăm, -quăm, -quĕ, -năm, -pĭăm, -cūn'quĕ,* and mány more.

[10] A noun súbstantive is eíther *cómmon* or *próper*:—cómmon, when the name or appellátion belóngs equally to all things of the same idéntical simílitude or sort; as ă'quă, *wáter;* dŏ'mŭs, *a house;* ă'pĭs, *a bee;* paūpĕr'tās, *póverty;*—próper, when the appellátion is confíned to one indivídual, notwithstánding there may amóng mány be séveral indivíduals of the same appellátion; as Pĕ'trŭs, *Péter;* Brĭtān'nĭă, *Brítain;* Tă'mĕsĭs, *the Thames;* Lōndĭ'nŭm, *Lóndon.*

[11] Ad'jectives, líkewise, are eíther *cómmon* or *próper*:—cómmon, when they reláte to things in géneral; as, āl'bŭs, *white*· trĭs'tĭs, *sad;* fē'līx, *háppy;*—próper, when they owe their derivátion to some próper name; as Plūtō'nĭŭs, *Plutónian,* that is, *of or belónging to Plúto;* Sĭ'cŭlŭs, *Sicilian, or belónging to Sícily;* Trōjā'nŭs, *Trójan;* Āthēnĭen'sĭs, *Athénian.*

## OF THE CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cáses[12] in each númber:

The nóminative, the génitive, the dátive, the accúsative, the vócative, and the áblative.

The nóminative case comes befóre the verb, and may be known by its ánswering to the quéstion *who?* or *what?* as, *who teáches?* măgīs'tĕr dŏ'cĕt, *the máster teáches.*

The génitive case[13] is known by the sign *of*, in En'glish, and ánswers to the quéstion *whose?* or *whereóf?* as, *whose leárning?* dōctrī'nă măgīs'trī, *the leárning of the máster*, or *the máster's leárning.*

The dátive case is known, in En'glish, by the signs *to* or *for*, and ánswers to the quéstion *únto whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *únto whom do I give the book?* dō lī'brŭm măgīs'trō, *I give the book to the máster.*

The accúsative (or, as it is more cómmonly denóminated in En'glish, the objéctive) case fóllows the verb, and ánswereth to the quéstion *whom?* or *what?* as, *whom do you love?* ă'mō măgīs'trŭm, *I love the máster.*

The vócative case is known by cálling, or speáking to; as, ō măgīs'tĕr, *O máster.*

---

[12] The Stóics consídered the relátion which, in discoúrse, a noun hath to a verb, in the same mémber of a séntence with it, únder the fígure of a right line fálling upón a plane. If the line (as they thought) fell perpendícularly, the noun was said to be "*in récto cásu*," that is, in its *right* or *straight case;* by which they meant the *nóminative:*—but if the line swérved or declíned from the perpendícular, then the noun was said to be "*in oblíquo cásu*," that is, in a *cróoked* or an *oblíque* case; and its deviátion from the perpendícular, or, *right fall*, was términed "*declinátio*," that is, *declénsion.* Now it is évident, that the *right case* could be ónly *one*, while the *oblíque cáses* might be *few* or *mány* accórding to the degreé of declinátion, or declénsion. Howéver inapprópriate these terms may appeár, grammárians have, véry good-náturedly, conténted themsélves to retaín them.

[13] The génitive, as its name indeéd implíes, is the case from which all the óther oblíque cáses (with the excéption of the vócative síngular, which seems to be mérely a sort of écho of the nóminative, díffering from it in nóthing for the most part, and séldom díffering from it much; and with the excéption álso of the accúsative of neúter nouns, and some few anómalous ínstances not worth méntioning at présent) are génerated or fórmed by símply várying the terminátion. It may be right to nótice that the nóminative case plúral of nouns is in this sense to be consídered as an oblíque case, ínasmuch as it owes its formátion (a few anómalies excépted) to the génitive case síngular.

The áblative case is known in En'glish by prepositions expréssed or understoód, sérving to the áblative case; as, dē măgĭs'trō, *of* or *concérning the máster;* cō'răm măgĭs'trō, *befóre* or *in the présence of the máster.*

Al'so, the prepositions *in*, *with*, *from*, *by;* and the word *than*, áfter the compárative degreé, are signs of the áblative case.

## GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

GEN'DERS of nouns are three; námely, the másculine, the féminine, and the neúter.

AR'TICLES[14] are úsed in Grámmar, to denóte the génder of nouns; and are thus declíned:—

SINGULAR.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Nóminative* | Hĭc | hǣc | hŏc |
| *Génitive* | Hū'jŭs, *of all génders* | | |
| *Dátive* | Huīc, *of all génders* | | |
| *Accúsative* | Hŭnc | hānc | hŏc |
| *Vócative* | —— | —— | —— |
| *Ab'lative* | Hōc | hāc | hōc |

PLURAL.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Nóminative* | Hī | hǣ | hǣc |
| *Génitive* | Hō'rŭm | hā'rŭm | hō'rŭm |
| *Dátive* | Hīs, *of all génders* | | |
| *Accúsative* | Hōs | hās | hǣc |
| *Vócative* | —— | —— | —— |
| *Ab'lative* | Hīs, *of all génders.* | | |

[14] Though the Greeks emplóyed árticles in their lánguage, yet in the Látin tongue (stríctly speáking) árticles were néver úsed. The demónstrative prónoun *hĭc, haēc, hŏc*, by mány impróperly cálled an árticle, was sómetimes emplóyed, as it still is, to distínguish the génders of nouns. *Hĭc*, then, is the sign of the másculine génder; *haēc* of the féminine; and *hŏc*, of the neúter: so, *hĭc ĕt haēc* will sígnify the cómmon of two génders, that is, both the másculine and féminine génders únder one terminátion; *hĭc, haēc, hŏc*, the cómmon of three génders, as fē'līx, *háppy;* so líkewise, *hĭc aūt haēc*, the doúbtful génder, that is, a génder várying betwíxt másculine and féminine, as pām'pĭ-nŭs, *a vine-leaf*, indifferently féminine or másculine: again, *hĭc aūt hŏc* will sígnify the doúbtfully másculine or neúter génder, as vŭl'gŭs, *the rábble;* and lástly, *haēc aūt hŏc*, the doúbtfully féminine and neúter.

Nouns declíned with the two árticles *hĭc* and *hæ̆c* are cálled cómmon, that is, are of the másculine and féminine génder: as, *hic ĕt hæ̆c* pă'rēns, *a párent, fáther* or *móther.*

Nouns are cálled doúbtful, when declíned with the árticle *hĭc* or *hæ̆c:* as, *hic aūt hæ̆c* ān'guĭs, *a snake.*

Some nouns are álso cálled épicene; that is, when únder one árticle both séxes are sígnified; as *hĭc* pās'sĕr, *a spárrow; hæ̆c* ă'quĭlă, *an eágle:* both male and fémale.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

There are five decléensions of súbstantives, distínguished by the énding of the génitive case.

The first declénsion [15] makes the génitive and dátive cáses síngular to end in *ae* díphthong, (-æ̅); as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæc* | Mū'-să, | *a song,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Mū'-sæ̅,[16] | *of a song,* |
| D. | *huic* | Mū'-sæ̅, | *to a song,* |
| A. | *hanc* | Mū'-săm, | *a song,* |
| V. | *O* | Mū'-să, | *O song,* |
| A. | *ab hâc* | Mū'-sā, | *from a song.* |

[15] This declénsion has four terminátions, *-ă, -ē, -ās,* and *-ēs,* whereóf the first ónly is púrely Látin; the remaíning three, Greek. Of nouns énding in *-ă,* líkewise, mány are of Greek órigin. Látin nouns in *-ă* of the first declénsion are for the most part féminine: but some are másculine; óthers are cómmon; and óthers, doúbtful: one, pās'-chă, *the feast of the pássover,* is said to be neúter. Nouns in ē- of this declénsion are withoút excéption féminine; and nouns in *-ās,* and in *-ēs,* másculine.

[16] The génitive case of the first declénsion in Látin áneiently énded in *-ā'ï,* and sómetimes in *-ās;* thus of the nóminative vī'tă, *life,* was fórmed the génitive vītā'ī, *of life:* and in like mánner the génitive of aū'ră, *a breeze or gale,* was eíther aūrā'ī or aū'rās, *of a breeze or a gale.* Whenéver the vówel *i,* or the líquid *r,* precéded the terminátional *-ă,* of the nóminative, then the génitive énded in *-ās* préferably to *-ā'ī;* as, nóminative fī'lĭă, *a daúghter,* génitive fīlĭ'ās, ráther than fīlĭā'ī, *of a daúghter;* but áfterwards, fī'lĭæ̅, préferably to the óther two. The noun fămĭ'lĭă, howéver, génerally retaíns *-ās* in the génitive case, when joíned to pă'tĕr, *a fáther,* or to mā'tĕr, *a móther;* as păt'ĕr fămĭ'lĭās, *the fáther of the fámily* or *máster of the house;* pă'trĭs fămĭ'lĭās, *of the fáther of the fámily* or *máster of the house.*

Most nouns in *-ē, -ās,* and *-ēs* of the first declénsion are próper names, and cónsequently séldom, or néver, admít of the plúral númber; but some few are cómmon nouns:—as, for exámple, ō'dē, *an ode, or a lýric*

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæ* | Mū'-sæ, | *songs,* |
| G. | *hárum* | Mū-sā'rŭm,[17] | *of songs,* |
| D. | *his* | Mū'-sīs,[18] | *to songs,* |
| A. | *has* | Mū'-sās, | *songs,* |
| V. | *O* | Mū'-sæ, | *O songs,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Mū'-sīs, | *from songs.* |

*song;* ĕpĭ'tŏmē, *an abrídgement;* tĭā'răs, *a túrban, or sash for the head:* zĭ'phĭās, *a sword-fish;* pȳrī'tēs, *a fire-stone;* ăchā'tēs, *an ágate:* these, howéver, when plúral, díffer in no respéct, as to their terminátions, from the fórmula of nouns púrely Látin.

In the síngular númber, nouns in *ē-*, *-ās*, and *-ēs* are declíned in the mánner fóllowing :—

| Mū'sĭcē, *músic,* | Bŏ'rĕās, *the north-wind,* | Trĭŏr'chēs, *a búzzard.* |
|---|---|---|
| N. mū'sĭ-cē | N. bŏ'rĕ-ās | N. trĭŏr'-chēs |
| G. mū'sĭ-cēs | G. bŏ'rĕ-æ | G. trĭŏr'-chæ |
| D. mū'sĭ-cē | D. bŏ'rĕ-æ | D. trĭŏr'-chæ |
| A. mū'sĭ-cēn | A. bŏ'rĕ-ān *vĕl* ām | A. trĭŏr'-chēn |
| V. mū'sĭ-cē | V. bŏ'rĕ-ā | V. trĭŏr'-chē *vĕl* -chā |
| A. mū'sĭ-cē | A. bŏ'rĕ-ā | A. trĭŏr'-chē *vĕl* -chā. |

Mány Greek names in *-ē* of the first declénsion, have álso the Látin terminátion *-ă*, and are infléeted accórdingly both ways: as Hĕ'lĕnē *vĕl* Hĕ'lĕnă, *Hélen;* Pēnĕ'lŏpē *vĕl* Pēnĕ'lŏpă, *Penélopē:* these make *-ēs* or *-aē* in the génitive, *-ē* or *-aē* in the dátive, *-ēn* vèl *-ăm* in the accúsative, and so forth.

All próper names in *-ās* of this declénsion, as Ǣnē'ās, Lȳ'cĭdās, Ămȳn'tās, are declíned like bŏ'rĕās: but some cómmon nouns in *-ās* and *ēs* have álso the terminátion *-ă*, and are declíned like mū'să. To the terminátion *-ēs* belóng all patronýmic nouns in *-dēs*, as Pēlī'dēs, *son of Péleus,* Ǣă'cĭdēs, *descéndant of Æ'acus;* but these are sómetimes found, líkewise, of the third declénsion: álso to the first declénsion belóng séveral nouns, próper as well as cómmon, in *-stēs* and in *-tēs:* these have génerally *-ă* in the vócative, as Thȳēs'tēs, *vócative* ō Thȳēs'tă; Thērsī'tēs, *vócative* ō Thērsī'tă. Greek names in *-ă*, excépt such as have *ē-* álso, óften form the accúsative in *-ăn* ráther than in *-ăm:* as Īphĭgĕnī'ă, *accúsative* Īphĭgĕnī'ăn, ráther than Īphĭgĕnī'ăm; Ǣgī'nă, *accúsative* Ǣgī'năn, ráther than Ǣgī'năm.

[17] The terminátion *-ā'rŭm* of the génitive case plúral of the first declénsion, as well as that of *ō'rŭm* of the sécond, is not unfréquently contrácted ínto *-ŭm*, by sýncopē and crásis; thus we read tērrĭ'gĕnŭm, for tērrĭgĕnā'rŭm.

[18] The fóllowing nouns have *-ā'bŭs* ráther than *-īs*, in the dátive and áblative plúral, to distínguish them, in those cáses, from their másculines of the sécond declénsion :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ă'nĭmă, *the soul* | ĕ'quă, *a mare* | mū'lă, *a she-mule* |
| ă'sĭnă, *a she-ass* | fă'mŭlă, *a maid-sérvant* | nā'tă, *a daúghter* |
| dĕ'ă, *a góddess* | fī'lĭă, *a daúghter* | sēr'vă, *a fémale slave* |
| dŏ'mĭnă, *a lády* | lībēr'tă, *a freed-wóman* | sŏ'cĭă, *a she-compánion* |

The sécond declénsion[19] makes the génitive case síngular to end in *-ī;* as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hic* | Măgĭs′-tĕr, | *a máster,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Măgĭs′-trī, | *of a máster,* |
| D. | *huic* | Măgĭs′-trō, | *to a máster,* |
| A. | *hunc* | Măgĭs′-trŭm, | *a máster,* |
| V. | *O* | Măgĭs′-tĕr, | *O máster,* |
| A. | *ab hóc* | Măgĭs′-trō, | *by a máster.* |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hi* | Măgīs′-trī, | *másters,* |
| G. | *hórum* | Măgīs-trō′rŭm,[20] | *of másters,* |
| D. | *his* | Măgīs′-trīs, | *to másters,* |
| A. | *hos* | Măgīs′-trōs, | *másters,* |
| V. | *O* | Măgīs′-trī, | *O másters,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Măgīs′-trīs, | *by másters.* |

19 The sécond déclension has séven (or more própérly speáking, ten) terminátions: viz. *-ĕr, -ēr, -ĭr, -ŭr, -ŭs, -ūs, -ŭm, -ŏs, -ōs, -ŏn.* Of these the last three, námely, *-ŏs, -ōs, -ŏn,* are Greek; as is líkewise *-ūs:* and of the sécond (*-ēr*) and third (*-ĭr*) few exámples occúr beyónd Ī′bēr, *a Spániard, or nátive of Ibéria;* vĭr, *a man or húsband;* with their cómpounds, Cĕl′tĭbēr, *a Celtibérian;* dŭŭm′vĭr, *one of the duúmvirate,* trĭŭm′vĭr, *one of the triúmvirate,* and the plúral noun dĕcĕm′vĭrī, *the ten,* that is, *the ten men in authórity, or cónsular mágistrates:* in *-ŭr* there is ónly the másculine génder of the ádjective să′tŭr, să′tŭră, să′tŭrŭm, *full,* fórmed by apócopē from să′tŭrŭs. The Látin terminátions, thérefore, more fréquently met with, are these three, *-ĕr, -ŭs,* and *-ŭm.* Nouns énding in *-ĕr,* with véry few excéptions, drop the *ĕ* in the génitive case síngular, and in all cáses derívéd from it: the excéptions to this, are gĕ′nĕr, *a son-in-law;* sŏ′cĕr, *a fáther-in-law;* pŭ′ĕr, *a boy;* prēs′bўtĕr, *an élder;* ăr′mĭgĕr, *an ármour-beárer;* ădŭl′tĕr, *an adúlterer;* fūr′cĭfĕr, *a knave,* and the plúral noun lĭ′bĕrī, *children:* with the three próper names, Lĭ′bĕr, *Bácchus;* Mŭl′cĭbĕr, *Vúlcan,* and Lū′cĭfĕr, *the mórning-star.* Séveral ádjectives in *-ĕr,* howéver, retaín the *ĕ,* as tĕ′nĕr, *ténder,* lĭ′bĕr, *free:* but óthers rejéct it, as nĭ′gĕr, *black,* pŭl′chĕr, *fair.* The géntile noun Ī′bēr, and its cómpound Cĕl′tĭbēr, retaín the long *ē,* and make Ībē′rī and Cĕltĭbē′rī, in the génitive case. Mány Greek names énding in *-eūs,* and which ríghtly belóng to the third declénsion, are sómetimes transférred to the sécond with a resolútion of the terminátional díphthong ínto *-ĕŭs:* for exámple, Mōr′pheūs (génitive, Mōr′phĕŏs,) of the third declénsion, óften becómes Mōr′phĕŭs (génitive, Mōr′phĕī, and by contráction, Mōr′pheī *vèl* Mōr′phī,) máking in the accúsative, Mōr′phĕŭm or Mōr′phĕŏn.

20 The terminátion *-ōrŭm* of the génitive case plúral of this declénsion

*Observátion* 1*st.* The nóminative and vócative cáses of nouns are for the most part alíke in both númbers. But when the nóminative case síngular of the sécond declénsion ends in *-ŭs,* the vócative ends in *-ĕ :* as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hic* | Dŏ′mĭ-nŭs, | *a lord,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Dŏ′mĭ-nī | *of a lord,* |
| D. | *huic* | Dŏ′mĭ-nō, | *to a lord,* |
| A. | *hunc* | Dŏ′mĭ-nŭm, | *a lord,* |
| V. | *O* | Dŏ′mĭ-nĕ,[21] | *O lord,* |
| A. | *ab hôc* | Dŏ′mĭ-nō, | *by a lord.* |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hi* | Dŏ′mĭ-nī, | *lords,* |
| G. | *hórum* | Dŏmĭ-nō′rŭm, | *of lords,* |
| D. | *his* | Dŏ′mĭ-nīs, | *to lords,* |
| A. | *hos* | Dŏ′mĭ-nōs, | *lords,* |
| V. | *O* | Dŏ′mĭ-nī, | *O lords,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Dŏ′mĭ-nīs, | *by lords.* |

*Observátion* 2*nd.* Dĕ′ŭs, *God,* makes "O Dĕ′ŭs" in the vócative case síngular:[22] álso, the próper name of a man énding in *-ĭŭs* makes *-ī;* as, Gĕōr′gĭŭs, *George;* vócative, Gĕōr′gī. In like mánner, fī′lĭŭs, *a son,* makes fī′lī; and gĕ′nĭŭs, *a génius,* gĕ′nī.[23]

---

is óften contrácted into *-ŭm* by sýncopĕ and crásis :—thus, for vĭrō′rŭm we fréquently find vĭ′rŭm ; and for dīvō′rŭm, dī′vŭm.

[21] The póets occásionally, and the prose wrîters more rárely, retaín *-ŭs* in the vócative case, áfter the At′tic mánner : as flŭ′vĭŭs, *O stream ;* pŏ′pŭlŭs, *O peóple ;* āg′nŭs, *O lamb.*

[22] In the plúral númber, dĕ′ŭs is thus declined :—

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. dĕ′ī, | but, more cómmonly, dĭ′ī, and by crásis, | dî | *gods,* |
| G. dĕō′rŭm, | or by sýncopĕ and crásis, | dĕ′ûm | *of gods,* |
| D. dĕ′īs, | but, more cómmonly, dĭ′īs, and by crásis, | dis | *to gods,* |
| A. dĕ′ōs, | | | *gods,* |
| V. dĕ′ī | but, more cómmonly, dĭ′ī, and by crásis, | dî | *O gods,* |
| A. dĕ′īs, | but, more cómmonly, dĭ′īs, and by crásis, | dis | *from gods.* |

[23] Althoúgh fī′lĭŭs, *a son,* has ríghtly fī′lī in the vócative case, and gĕ′nĭŭs has ríghtly gĕ′nī, yet the vócative of both the one and the óther is sómetimes like the nóminative. O′ther nouns in *-ĭŭs,* whéther they be súbstantives or ádjectives. not éven excépting the ádjectives deríved from próper names, change *-ŭs* into *-ĕ* in the vócative ; as, cŭbĭcŭlā′rĭŭs, *a chámberlain,* vócative cŭbĭcŭlā′rĭĕ ; pĭ′ŭs, *gódly,* vócative pĭ′ĕ ;

*Observátion 3rd.* Nouns of the neúter génder are génerally of the sécond or third declénsion; and make the nóminative, the accúsative, and the vócative cáses alíke, in both númbers:—and in the plúral númber these cáses end all in *-ă:* as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hoc* | Rēg′-nŭm, | *a kíngdom,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Rēg′-nī, | *of a kíngdom,* |
| D. | *huic* | Rēg′-nō, | *to a kíngdom,* |
| A. | *hoc* | Rēg′-nŭm, | *a kíngdom,* |
| V. | *O* | Rēg′-nŭm, | *O kíngdom,* |
| A. | *ab hôc* | Rēg′-nō, | *by a kíngdom,* |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæc* | Rēg′-nă, | *kíngdoms,* |
| G. | *hórum* | Rēg-nō′rŭm, | *of kíngdoms,* |
| D. | *his* | Rēg′-nīs, | *to kíngdoms,* |
| A. | *hæc* | Rēg′-nă, | *kíngdoms,* |
| V. | *O* | Rēg′-nă, | *O kíngdoms,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Rēg′-nīs, | *by kíngdoms.* |

---

Jūnō′nĭŭs, *pertaíning únto Júno,* vócative Jūnō′nĭĕ; Dē′lĭŭs, *Délian,* vócative Dē′lĭĕ.

Nouns in *-ŏs*, *-ōs*, *-ūs*, and *-ŏn*, of the sécond declénsion, are infléeted, in the síngular númber, as fóllows:—

Āndrŏ′gĕōs, *Andrógeus;* Pă′phŏs, *a cíty of Cýprus,* Pān′thūs, *Pantheus,* Ī′lĭŏn, *Troy.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Āndrŏ′gĕōs | Pă′phŏs | Pān′thūs | Ī′lĭŏn |
| G. | Āndrŏ′gĕō *vĕl* -gĕī | Pă′phī | Pān′thī *vĕl* -thū | Ī′lĭī |
| D. | Āndrŏ′gĕō | Pă′phō | Pān′thō | Ī′lĭō |
| A. | Āndrŏ′gĕōn *vĕl* -gĕō | Pă′phŏn | Pān′thūm *vĕl* -thūn | Ī′lĭŏn |
| V. | Āndrŏ′gĕōs *vĕl* -gĕō | Pă′phŏs *vĕl* -phĕ | Pān′thū | Ī′lĭŏn |
| A. | Āndrŏ′gĕō | Pă′phō | Pān′thō | Ī′lĭō |

It should be nóticed that séveral names in *-ŏs* have líkewise the terminátion *-ŭs;* and cónsequently make the accúsative in *-ŭm,* as well as *-ŏn.* Mány names in *-ŏn,* have the terminátion *-ŭm;* and this they of course retaín in the accúsative and vócative síngular. The noun Ī′lĭŏn has, besídes the terminátion *-ŭm,* that of *-ŏs,* and is then féminine. Some few nouns, as, bār′bĭtŏn, *a harp,* neúter, have álso the terminátion *-ŏs,* másculine or féminine; and *-ŭs,* másculine.

In the plúral númber, Greek nouns of the sécond declénsion are declíned áfter the mánner of Látin nouns; those in *-ōs* and *-ŏs,* like nouns in *-ŭs;* and those in *-ŏn,* like nouns in *-ŭm:* excépt that they have *-ōn,* ráther than *-ō′rŭm,* in the génitive plúral: thus, būcŏ′lĭcŏn, *a pástoral song,* has (génitive plúral) būcŏ′lĭcōn, ráther than būcŏlĭcō′rŭm,

The third declénsion[24] makes the génitive case síngular to end in -*ĭs*: as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæc* | Nū′-bēs, | *a cloud,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Nū′-bĭs, | *of a cloud,* |
| D. | *huic* | Nū′-bī, | *to a cloud,* |

*of pástoral songs.* A few Greek names of men in -*ēs* of the third declénsion, which have líkewise -*eūs* in the nóminative, take sómetimes the form of the Sécond Declénsion, like nouns of the third which have -*eūs* ónly: thus, Ăchīl′lēs, *vèl* Ăchīl′leūs, *Achílles,* becómes Ăchīl′lĕūs, génitive Ăchīl′lĕī *vèl* Ăchīl′leī, and, by crásis, Ăchīl-′lī: the ádjective is Ăchīllē′ŭs, Ăchīllē′ă, Ăchīllē′ŭm. In like mánner, Ŭlȳs′sēs, *vèl* Ŭlȳs′-seūs, or (as it is sómetimes written), Ŭlīx′ēs *vèl* Ŭlīx-eūs, *Ulýsses,* becómes Ŭlȳs′sĕūs *vèl* Ŭlīx′ĕūs *vèl* Ŭlīx′ŭs, génitive Ŭlȳs′sĕī *vèl* Ŭlīx′ĕī *vèl* Ŭlīx′ī.

Greek names of this declénsion in -*ūs* and -*pūs* have -*ī* in the génitive, and (more rárely) -*ū*; but they are for the most part álso of the third declénsion, the fórmer terminátion becóming -*eūs*, with -*ĕŏs* in the génitive; thus Pān′thūs becómes Pān′theūs, Pān′thĕŏs: and the látter, máking the génitive in -*pŏdĭs*, as Pŏ′lȳpūs, Oē′dĭpūs, Mĕlām′pūs, génitive Pŏlȳ′pŏdĭs, Oē′dĭ′pŏdĭs, Mĕlām′pŏdĭs. These, when of the sécond declénsion, have sómetimes -*ŭs* in the nóminative, as though cóming from the Dóric díalect.

[24] of nouns súbstantive, consíderably more than one half will be found to be of the third declénsion; for its fínal sýllables amoúnt to úpwards of nínety; and its fínal létters to thirteén: námely, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x.* Of these, *a, e, n, r, o,* and *s,* are cómmon to the third, and some of the óther declénsions:—that is, *a* and *e* are cómmon to it with the first; *n* and *r,* with the sécond; *o,* with the fourth; and *s* with all the óther four. The séven fínal létters, then, *c, d, i, l, t, y,* and *x,* are pecúliar to this declénsion. All nouns of the third declénsion énding in *ă* are of Greek órigin and of the neúter génder; the *ă,* álso, is inváriably precéded by the létter *m*; as in stēm′mă, stēm′mătĭs, *a stem or pédigree.* Nouns in -*ĕ*, and in -*ĭ*, are neúter; the látter, indeclínable in both númbers: plúrals in -*ē*, as cē′tē, *whales,* are líkewise neúter, and indeclínable. Of nouns in *c* there are ónly two, lāc, *milk,* and ă′lēc, or hă′lēc, *an ánchovy,* also *a píckle,* or, as some say, *a hérring.* The nouns in *d* consíst sólely of a few próper names of men, as Dă′vīd. Some óther Hébrew names of várious éndings, such as Jōb, Ră′phăēl, Să′ūl, Bē′thlēm, Sēth, Ām′rām, belóng to this declénsion, but cánnot be próperly clássed with Látin words. The more cópious fínal létters of nouns púrely Látin are *o, n, r, s,* and *x*: the more cópious fínal sýllables are ĭō, -dō, -gō, -ĕn, [nouns in -ēn are Greek,] -ĕr, [nouns in -ēr are of Greek extráction,] -ŏr, -ās [all nouns in -ăs are Greek, and so are mány in -ās,] -ēs and -ĕs, [nouns in -ēs, máking -ē′tĭs in the génitive case, (excépt quĭ′ēs, *rest,* and its compoúnd rĕ′quĭēs,) are Greek, and of the másculine génder; nouns in -ĕs, not increásing, are líkewise Greek, but of the

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | *hanc* | Nū′-bĕm,[25] | *a cloud,* |
| V. | *O* | Nū′-bēs, | *O cloud,* |
| A. | *ab hāc* | Nū′-bĕ,[26] | *by a cloud.* |

neúter génder,] -ĭs, and -īs ; -ŏs and -ōs ; -ŭs and ūs ; -ns, -ps, -rs, ĕx, and īx.

[25] A few Látin nouns in *-ĭs* have *-ĭm* in the accúsative case ; such as, sĭ′tĭs, *thirst ;* tūs′sĭs, *a cough ;* rā′vĭs, *hoárseness ;* cŭ′cŭmĭs, *a cúcumber .* būrĭs, *the beam of a plough ;* ămūs′sĭs, *a máson's rule ;* mĕphī′tĭs, *foul air :* to which may be ádded, vīs, *strength* or *force :*—líkewise all próper names of pláces, and of rívers, énding in *-ĭs ;* but these sómetimes have *-ĭn* ráther than *-ĭm* in the accúsative case. And all Greek cómmon nouns in *-ĭs*, fórming the génitive in *-ŏs* pure, that is, in *-ŏs* precéded by a vówel, make the accúsative in *-ĭm* or *-ĭn ;* as hǣ′rĕsĭs, génitive hǣrĕ′-sĕŏs, *héresy,* accúsative hǣ′rĕsĭm *vèl* hǣ′rĕsĭn. In like mánner Greek nouns in *-ȳs*, whereóf the génitive ends in *-ŏs* pure, have *-ȳm* or *-ȳn*, in the accúsative case. To those add all másculine Greek names in *-ĭs*, máking *-dĭs* or *-dŏs* in the génitive ; for these have more fréquently *-ĭm* or *-ĭn* (though sómetimes *-dĕm*, but néver *-dă*) in the accúsative : thus, Pă′rĭs, génitive Pă′rĭdĭs *vèl* Pă′rĭdŏs, accúsative Pă′rĭm *vèl* Pă′rĭn, ráther than Părĭ′dĕm ; but in no ínstance Pă′rĭdă.

Mány Látin nouns énding in *-ĭs* have eíther *-ĕm*, or *ĭm*, in the accúsative case : such are, pēl′vĭs, *a básin ,* clā′vĭs, *a key ;* nā′vĭs, *a ship ;* pūp′pĭs, *the stern* or *poop ;* rēs′tĭs, *a cord* or *rope ;* tūr′rĭs, *a tówer ;* sĕcū′rĭs, *an axe ;* strī′gĭlĭs, *a cúrry-comb ;* ăquā′lĭs, *a wáter-éwer ;* cŭ′tĭs, *the skin ;* fĕ′brĭs, *a féver ;* aū′rĭs, *the ear ;* sēmēn′tĭs, *seed-time ;* and a few óthers : to which may be ádded one noun in *-ns*, námely, lēns, *a léntil.*

[26] Nouns which have the accúsative in *-ĭm* or *-ĭn* have *-ī* (Greek nouns *-ĭ*) in the áblative : as, vīs, *strength* or *force,* áblative vī, *with strength* or *force :* and those which have *-ĕm* or *-ĭm* in the accúsative, have *-ĕ* or *-ī* in the áblative ; thus, nā′vĭs, *a ship,* accúsative nā′vĕm *vèl* nā′vĭm, áblative nā′vĕ *vèl* nā′vī :—but rēs′tĭs and cŭ′tĭs have *-ĕ* ónly ; strī′gĭlĭs and sĕcū′rĭs, óftener *-ī* than *-ĕ*. Cănā′lĭs, *a chánnel,* vĕc′tĭs, *a léver,* and bĭpĕn′nĭs, *a hálbert* or *pole-axe,* make the áblative génerally in *-ī :* the fóllowing nouns have *-ĕ* or *-ī* indífferently ; *viz.* ām′nĭs, *a ríver ;* ān′guĭs, *a snake ;* ă′vĭs, *a bird ;* cī′vĭs, *a cítizen ;* clās′sĭs, *a fleet* fī′nĭs*; an end;* fūs′tĭs, *a rope ;* īg′nĭs, *fire ;* pōs′tĭs, *a door-post ;* and ūn′guĭs, *a nail of the hand or foot :* to which may be ádded, īm′bĕr, *a shówer ;* ŏc′cĭpŭt, *the hínder part of the head ;* rūs, *the coúntry ;* sŭpĕl′lĕx, *hoúse-hold fúrniture ;* sōrs, *chance,* with a few óthers : álso, the names of some cíties, as Cārthā′gŏ, *Cárthage,* áblative Cārthā′gĭnĕ *vèl* Cārthā′gĭnī. The names of months, though they have *-ĕm* in the accúsative, make the áblative álways in *-ī*. Neúters, too, in *-ăl*, *-ăr*, and *-ār* (see note 30, below) have, with véry few excéptions, *-ī* in the áblative : of séveral nouns, álso, of this declénsion, the dátive case is not unfréquently (by poétic lícence) usúrped for the áblative. Lástly, all nouns énding in *-ĕ* in the nóminative case (the names of towns excépted) have *-ī* in the áblative : as, mă′rĕ *the sea,* áblative mă′rī ; rĕ′tĕ, *a net,* áblative rĕ′tī.

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæ* | Nū'-bēs, | *clouds,* |
| G. | *hárum* | Nū'-bĭŭm,[27] | *of clouds,* |
| D. | *his* | Nū'-bĭbŭs, | *to clouds,* |
| A. | *has* | Nū'-bēs,[28] | *clouds,* |
| V. | *O* | Nū'-bēs, | *O clouds,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Nū'-bĭbŭs, | *from clouds.* |

Mány nouns of this declénsion[29] increáse in the génitive case; as in the fóllowing exámples.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hic* | Lă'-pĭs, | *a stone,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Lă'-pĭdĭs, | *of a stone,* |
| D. | *huic* | Lă'-pĭdī, | *to a stone,* |
| A. | *hunc* | Lă'-pĭdĕm, | *a stone,* |
| V. | *O* | Lă'-pĭs, | *O stone,* |
| A. | *ab hôc* | Lă'-pĭdĕ, | *from a stone.* |

[27] Nouns in *-ēs* and in *-ĭs* not increásing in the génitive case síngular, and nouns énding in *s* if a cónsonant immédiately precédes the *s*, or in *x* with the same restríction, álso mónosyllables in *-ās*, and nouns in *-īs*, have génerally *-ĭŭm* in the génitive plúral: to which add că'rŏ, *flesh;* cŏr, *the heart;* cōs, *a whétstone;* dōs, *a dówery;* faūx, *the gorge* or *éntrance of the gúllet;* lār, *a dwélling* or *fire-side;* bēs, *eight oúnces;* līn'tĕr, *a bark;* mūs, *a mouse;* nīx, *snow;* nōx, *night;* ŏs, *a bone;* ū'tĕr, *a bóttle* or *bládder;* vēn'tĕr, *the bélly*, and most nouns which have *-ī*, or *-ĭ*, in the áblative case síngular: excépt ŏc'cĭpŭt. But of nouns in *-ēs* and *-ĭs* the fóllowing are to be excépted, as háving *-ŭm:* vā'tēs, *a próphet* or *bard;* jŭ'vĕnĭs, *a young pérson;* pā'nĭs, *bread* or *a loaf;* rŭ'dĭs, *a foil;* vŏ'lŭcrĭs, *a bird;* că'nĭs, *a dog* or *bitch:* also, ă'pĭs, *a bee*, and the plúral noun ŏ'pēs, *wealth.* And of nouns énding in *s* precéded by a cónsonant, must be excépted all nouns énding in *-ēbs*, *-ēps*, and *-ōps:* álso hȳ'ēms, *winter;* and all words of Greek órigin; as grȳps, *a gríffin;* Ă'rābs, *an Arábian.* Here, too, it may be nóticed that *-ĭŭm*, of the génitive case plúral, of this declénsion, is fréquently contrácted ínto *-úm* by the fígure crásis; as, īnfān'tūm, *of ínfants*, for īnfān'tĭŭm.

[28] When the génitive plúral ends in *-ĭŭm*, the accúsative óptionally ends in *-eīs* (and by contráction in *-īs*) ínstead of *-ēs:* thus we find pār'teīs, and pār'tīs, for pār'tēs; and ōm'neīs or ōm'nīs for ōm'nēs.

[29] Greek nouns of this declénsion, increásing in the génitive case, are mány, and of várious terminátions. Of these, we shall only nótice the chief; divíding them ínto nouns cómmon, and nouns próper. Greek cómmon nouns, more fréquently occúrring, and in *-ēn*, *-īn*, *-ēr*, *-ăs*, *-ās*, *-ēs*, *-ĭs*, *-mă*, *-ōs*, and *-ȳs:* as, for exámple, rēn, rē'nŏs, *a kídney;* dēl'phīn, dēlphī'nŏs, *a dólphin;* crā'tēr, crātē'rŏs, *a bowl* or *góblet;* lām'păs, lām'pădŏs, *a lamp;* ă'dămās, ădămān'tŏs, *a diámond;* lĕ'bēs, lĕbē'tŏs, *a caúldron;* ĭās'pĭs, ĭās'pĭdŏs, *a jásper;* bă'sĭs, bă'sĕŏs, *a base;* pŏē'mă, pŏē'mătŏs, *a póem;* hē'rōs, hērō'ŏs, *a héro;* chlă'mȳs, chlă'mȳdŏs, *a*

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hi* | Lă′-pĭdēs, | *stones,* |
| G. | *hórum* | Lă′-pĭdŭm, | *of stones,* |
| D. | *his* | Lă-pĭ′dĭbŭs, | *to stones,* |
| A. | *hos* | Lă′-pĭdēs, | *stones,* |
| V. | *O* | Lă′-pĭdēs, | *O stones,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Lă-pĭ′dĭbŭs, | *from stones.* |

---

*cloak* or *mántle*, and chĕ′lȳs, chĕ′lȳŏs, *a harp* or *lute.* These we shall décline in the órder in which we have gíven them : and, as the Látins génerally preférred *-ĭs* to *-ŏs* in the énding of the génitive case, we shall (with the pérfect understánding that *-ŏs* is the true oríginal) adópt the terminátion *-ĭs* in most ínstances.

Declénsion of Greek cómmon nouns.

| | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | rēn | rē′nēs | dēl′phīn | dēlphī′nēs |
| G. | rē′nĭs | rē′nūm | dēlphī′nĭs | dēlphī′nūm |
| D. | rē′nī | rē′nĭbŭs | dēlphī′nī | dēlphī′nĭbŭs |
| A. | rē′nă | rē′nās | dēlphī′nă | dēlphī′nās |
| V. | rēn | rē′nēs | dēl′phīn | dēlphī′nēs |
| A. | rē′nĕ | rē′nĭbŭs | dēlphī′nĕ | dēlphī′nĭbŭs |

| | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | crā′tēr | crātē′rēs | lām′păs | lām′pădēs |
| G. | crātē′rĭs | crātē′rūm | lām′pădĭs | lām′pădūm |
| D. | crātē′rī | crātē′rĭbŭs | lām′pădī | lāmpă′dĭbŭs |
| A. | crātē′ră | crātē′rās | lām′pădă | lām′pădās |
| V. | crā′tēr | crātē′rēs | lām′păs | lām′pădēs |
| A. | crātē′rĕ | crātē′rĭbŭs | lām′pădĕ | lāmpă′dĭbŭs |

| | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | ă′dămās | ădămān′tēs | lĕ′bēs | lĕbē′tēs |
| G. | ădămān′tĭs | ădămān tūm | lĕbē′tĭs | lĕbē′tūm |
| D. | ădămān′tī | ădămān′tĭbŭs | lĕbē′tī | lĕbē′tĭbŭs |
| A. | ădămān′tă | ădămān′tās | lĕbē′tă | lĕbē′tās |
| V. | ădămās | ădămān′tēs | lĕ′bēs | lĕbē′tēs |
| A. | ădămān′tĕ | ădămān′tĭbŭs | lĕbē′tĕ | lĕbē′tĭbŭs |

| | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | ĭās′pĭs | ĭās′pĭdēs | bă′sĭs | bă′sēēs *vĕl* -sēs |
| G. | ĭās′pĭdĭs | ĭās′pĭdūm | bă′sēŏs *vĕl* -sĭs | bă′sĭūm *vĕl* sēōn |
| D. | ĭās′pĭdī | ĭāspĭ′dĭbŭs | bă′sēī *vĕl* sī | bă′sĭbŭs |
| A. | ĭās′pĭdă | ĭās′pĭdās | bă′sĭn *vĕl* ĭm | bă′sēēs *vĕl* -sēs |
| V. | ĭās′pĭs | ĭās′pĭdēs | bă′sĭs | bă′sēēs *vĕl* -sēs |
| A. | ĭās′pĭdĕ | ĭāspĭ′dĭbŭs | bă′sēī *vĕl* -sī | bă′sĭbŭs |

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hoc* | Ŏ′-pŭs, | *a work,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Ŏ′-pĕrĭs, | *of a work,* |
| D. | *huic* | Ŏ′-pĕrī, | *to a work,* |

| | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | pŏē′mă | pŏē′mătă | hē′rōs | hērō′ēs |
| G. | pŏē′mătĭs | pŏē′mătōn *vĕl*-tūm | hērō′ĭs | hērō′ūm |
| D. | pŏē′mătī | pŏē′mătīs *vĕl*-tĭbŭs | hērō′ī | hērō′ĭsĭ *vĕl* -ĭbŭs |
| A. | pŏē′mă | pŏē′mătă | hērō′ă | hērō′ăs |
| V. | pŏē′mă | pŏē′mătă | hē′rōs | hērō′ēs |
| A. | pŏē′mătĕ | pŏē′mătīs *vĕl*-tĭbŭs | hērō′ĕ | hērō′ĭsĭ *vĕl* -ĭbŭs |

| | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | chlă′mȳs | chlă′mȳdēs | chĕ′lȳs | chĕ′lȳēs |
| G. | chlă′mȳdĭs | chlă′mȳdūm | chĕ′lȳŏs | chĕ′lȳōn *vĕl* -ūm |
| D. | chlă′mȳdī | chlămȳ′dĭbŭs | chĕ′lȳī *vĕl* -ȳ | chĕ′lȳsĭ |
| A. | chlă′mȳdă | chlă′mȳdăs | chĕ′lȳn | chĕ′lȳăs |
| V. | chlă′mȳ | chlă′mȳdēs | chĕ′lȳ | chĕ′lȳēs |
| A. | chlă′mȳdĕ | chlămȳ′dĭbŭs | chĕ′lȳĕ *vĕl* -ĭ | chĕ′lȳsĭ |

Like crā′tēr are declíned ā′ēr, *the air,* and æ′thēr, *the sky,* excépt that they increáse short, máking ā′ĕrĭs, and æ′thĕrĭs, in the génitive case, and want the plúral númber. Nouns in *-ōn,* as ī′cōn, ī′cŏnĭs, *an ímage,* are declíned like rēn or dēl′phīn, but with short penúlt in the génitive case. Greek neúters in *-ăr* díffer in nóthing in declénsion from Látin nouns of the same terminátion, excépt that the fínal *-i* of the dátive is short: in the áblative case they have *-ĕ.*

Greek nouns which have *-dŏs* or *-dĭs* in the génitive, have fréquently *-dĕm* insteád of *-dă* in the accúsative síngular, and *-dēs* insteád of *-dăs* in the accúsative plúral, as though they were púrely Látin. Some óther Greek nouns, but more rárely, take *-ĕm* for *-ă* in the accúsative síngular, and *-ēs* for *-ăs* in the plúral. Any dátive or áblative plúral in *-sĭ* becómes *-sĭn* befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong.

Greek próper names of this declénsion end, for the most part, in *-ĭs, -ăs, -ās, ēs, -eŭs, -īs, -ŏs,* or *-ān.* Of names in *-ĭs,* some are másculine, as Pă′rĭs, Pă′rĭdŏs, *Páris;* and some, agaín, are féminine, as, Brīsē′ĭs, Brīsē′ĭdŏs, *Briséïs.* These díffer from one anóther in the accúsative, the másculines máking *-ĭm* or *-ĭn* or *-dĕm,* but néver *-dă;* and the féminines máking *-dĕm* or *-dă,* but néver *-ĭm* or *-ĭn.*

Declénsion of Greek próper names in the síngular ónly.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Pă′rĭs | Brīsē′ĭs | Pāl′lăs | Pāl′lās |
| G. | Pă′rĭdŏs *vĕl* -dĭs | Brīsē′ĭdŏs *vĕl*-dĭs | Pāl′lădŏs *vĕl*-dĭs | Pāllān′tŏs *vĕl*-tĭs |
| D. | Pă′rĭdī | Brīsē′ĭdī | Pāl′lădī | Pāllān′tī |
| A. | Pă′rĭn *vĕl*-rĭdĕm | Brīsē′ĭdă *vĕl*-dĕm | Pāl′lădă *vĕl*-dĕm | Pāllān′tă |
| V. | Pă′rĭ | Brīsē′ĭ | Pāl′lăs | Pāl′lā |
| A. | Pă′rĭdĕ | Brīsē′ĭdĕ | Pāl′lădĕ | Pāllān′tĕ |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | *hoc* | Ŏ'-pŭs, | *a work,* |
| V. | *O* | Ŏ'-pŭs, | *O work,* |
| A. | *ab hóc* | Ŏ'-pĕrĕ,[30] | *from a work.* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. Ăchīl'lēs | Ăchīl'leūs | Sĭ'mŏīs | Pān |
| G. Ăchīl'lĭs | Ăchīl'lĕŏs | Sĭmŏēn'tĭs | Pā'nŏs |
| D. Ăchīl'lī | Ăchīl'lĕī *vèl* -lî | Sĭmŏēn'tī | Pā'nĭ |
| A. Ăchīl'lĕm | Ăchīl'lĕă | Sĭmŏēn'tă | Pā'nă |
| V. Ăchīl'lē | Ăchīl'leū | Sĭ'mŏī | Pān |
| A. Ăchīl'lĕ | Ăchīl'lĕĕ *vèl* -lē | Sĭmŏēn'tĕ | Pā'nĕ |

Próper names in *-ōs* are declíned like hē'rōs ; and those in *-ȳs* like chĕ'lȳs : names of séveral óther termínations than those méntioned abóve, as Cȳ'clōps, Cȳ'clō'pĭs, ***a Cýclops,*** Cē'ȳx, Cēȳ'cĭs, ***a king of Thrace,*** Āstȳ'ănāx, Āstȳănāc'tŏs, ***one of the sons of Héctor,*** Tī'mōn, Tīmō'nĭs, ***an Athénian misánthropist,*** Chă'rōn, Chărōn'tĭs, ***the férryman on the ríver Styx,*** Cās'tŏr, Cās'tŏrĭs, and Pōl'lūx, Pōllū'cĭs, ***two sons of Léda,*** with many besídes, may be reférred to one or óther of the exámples gíven in this note. Of Greek names in *-ēs*, mány are declíned like Ăchīl'lēs, áfter the Látin fáshion, entírely relínquishing their oríginal form : as Eūrĭ'pĭdēs, Eūrĭ'pĭdĭs, ***a trágic póet of Sálamis :*** with all names in *-crătēs*, *-gĕnēs*, *-thĕnēs*, and a few more : but names in *-clēs*, have eíther *-ĭs*, or *-ĕŏs* in the génitive. Some Greek names in *-ēs* of this declénsion make eíther *-ĭs* or *-ē'tĭs* in the génitive case, as Chrē'mēs, génitive Chrĕ'mĭs *vèl* Chrĕmētĭs :—and some names of the first declénsion, are líkewise of the third, as Ătrīdēs, génitive Ătrī'dæ *vèl* Ătrī'dĭs : some few, álso, are of the third and sécond, as was remárked in notes 19 and 23, ábove. Dī'dō is of the third and fourth declénsion, máking Dīdō'nĭs *vèl* Dī'dūs in the génitive.

Althóugh the names of pérsons and of pláces, for the most part want the plúral númber, yet when more than one of the same name are spóken of, the plúral is úsed ; as in the fóllowing exámple :—

| | *Síngular.* | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Cæ'săr | *Cǽsar,* | Cæ'sărēs | *the Cǽsars,* |
| G. | Cæ'sărĭs | *of Cǽsar,* | Cæ'sărŭm | *of the Cǽsars,* |
| D. | Cæ'sărī | *to Cǽsar,* | Cæsă'rĭbŭs | *to the Cǽsars,* |
| A. | Cæ'sărĕm | *Cǽsar,* | Cæ'sărēs | *the Cǽsars,* |
| V. | Cæ'săr | *O Cǽsar,* | Cæ'sărēs | *O Cǽsars,* |
| A. | Cæ'sărĕ | *by Cǽsar.* | Cæsă'rĭbŭs | *by the Cǽsars.* |

| | *Síngular.* | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Pī'sō | *Píso,* | Pīsō'nēs | *the Písoes,* |
| G. | Pīsō'nĭs | *of Píso,* | Pīsō'nŭm | *of the Písoes,* |
| D. | Pīsō'nī | *to Píso,* | Pīsō'nĭbŭs | *to the Písoes,* |
| A. | Pīsō'nĕm | *Píso,* | Pīsō'nēs | *the Písoes,* |
| V. | Pī'sō | *O Píso.* | Pīsō'nēs | *O Písoes.* |
| A. | Pīsō'nĕ | *by Píso.* | Pīsō'nĭbŭs | *by the Písoes.* |

[30] We remárked in note 26, abóve, that neúters in *-ăl* and in *-ăr*, have *-ī* in the áblative síngular ; but jŭ'băr, ***a súnbeam,*** must be ex-

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæc* | Ŏ′-pĕră,[31] | *works,* |
| G. | *hórum* | Ŏ′-pĕrŭm, | *of works,* |
| D. | *his* | Ŏ-pĕ′rĭbŭs,[32] | *to works,* |
| A. | *hæc* | Ŏ′-pĕră, | *works,* |
| V. | *O* | Ŏ′-pĕră, | *O works,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Ŏ-pĕ′rĭbŭs, | *from works.* |

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hic et hæc* | Pă′-rēns, | *a párent,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Pă-rēn′tĭs, | *of a párent,* |
| D. | *huic* | Pă-rēn′tī, | *to a párent,* |
| A. | *hunc et hanc* | Pă-rēn′tĕm, | *a párent,* |
| V. | *O* | Pă′-rēns, | *O párent,* |
| A. | *ab hôc et hâc* | Pă-rēn′tĕ, | *by a párent.* |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hi et hæ* | Pă-rēn′tēs | *párents,* |
| G. | *hórum et hárum* | Pă-rēn′tūm,[33] | *of párents,* |
| D. | *his* | Pă-rēn′tĭbŭs,[34] | *to párents,* |
| A. | *hos et has* | Pă-rēn′tēs, | *párents,* |
| V. | *O* | Pă-rēn′tēs, | *O párents,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Pă-rēn′tĭbŭs, | *by párents.* |

cépted: with such Greek neúters in *-ăr*, as hĕ′păr, *the liver*, nĕc′tăr, *the drink of gods*: to these add mónosyllables in *-ār*: as fār, *bread-corn*, pār, *a pair or coúple*; lār, *a dwélling or hoúsehold god.* But the ádjective pār, *équal*, has *-ī* ónly: and yet its cómpounds have *-ĕ* or *-ī*.

[31] Neúters which have *-ī* in the áblative síngular, have *-ĭă* in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative plúral, and *-iŭm* (as has been alreády nóticed) in the génitive.

[32] By reférring to note 29, it will be perceíved in the declénsion of pŏē′mă, *a póem*, that the dátive and áblative cáses plúral end in *-tīs*, (as though of the neúter noun pŏē′mătŭm, pŏē mătī, of the sécond declénsion,) in préference to *-tĭbŭs*. All Greek nouns in *-mă* have this prediléction.

[33] The word bōs, *a cow* or *an ox*, makes bŏ′ūm (which is évidently a contráction for bŏ′vĭŭm, as părēn′tūm is of părēn′tĭŭm,) in the génitive plúral. The plúral noun Cœ̄′lĭtēs, *the inhábitants of heáven*, has cœ̄′lĭtŭm *vèl* cœ̄lĭ′tŭŭm: and in like mánner, ā′lĕs, *any large bird*, has ā′lĭtŭm *vèl* ālĭ′tŭŭm.

[34] Bōs, *a cow* or *an ox*, has bō′bŭs (and sómetimes bū′bŭs) in place of bŏ′vĭbŭs, in the dátive and áblative cáses plúral. Ausónius gives bŏ′bŭs with the penúlt short, as if by sýncopē of the míddle sýllable of bŏ′vĭbŭs, insteád of sýncopē of the *i*, and crásis of the *ov* or *ou*.

The fourth declénsion[35] makes the génitive case síngular to end in *-ûs*; as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hic* | Gră′-dŭs, | *a step,* |
| G. | *hújus* | Gră′-dūs, | *of a step,* |
| D. | *huic* | Gră′-dŭī,[36] | *to a step,* |
| A. | *hunc* | Gră′-dŭm, | *a step,* |
| V. | *O* | Gră′-dŭs, | *O step,* |
| A. | *ab hôc* | Gră′-dū, | *by a step.* |

---

[35] The fourth declénsion has four terminátions, námely, *-ŭs, -ūs, -ō* and *-ū*, whereóf the first and last are Látin; but the míddle two, Greek.

Nouns in *-ūs* of this declénsion are másculine; nouns in *-ō* are féminine; and those in *-ū*, neúter: and they are declíned in the mánner fóllowing:

Jē′sūs or Ĭē′sūs, *Jésus,* ē′chō, *an écho,* cōr′nū, *a horn.*

| | *Síngular.* | *Síngular.* | *Síngular.* | *Plúral.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Jē′sūs | ē′chō | cōr′nū | cōr′nŭă |
| G. | Jē′sū | ē′chūs | cōr′nū | cōr′nŭŭm |
| D. | Jē′sū | ē′chō | cōr′nū | cōr′nĭbŭs |
| A. | Jē′sūm | ē′chō | cōr′nū | cōr′nŭă |
| V. | Jē′sūs *vèl* sū | ē′chō | cōr′nū | cōr′nŭă |
| A. | Jē′sū | ē′chō | cōr′nū | cōr′nĭbŭs |

Mány próper names in *-ō* are declíned like ē′chō: for exámple Ār′gō, *the ship Ar′go;* Clī′ō and Ĕ′rătō, *two of the Múses;* Măn′tō, *a daúghter of Tirésias the seer;* Săp′phō, *a fámous póetess of Lésbos;* Ī′nō, *a daúghter of Cádmus;* and Ī′ō, *a daúghter of I′nachus:* with Dī′dō, *a queen of Cárthage;* which last is álso of the third declénsion, máking Dīdō′nĭs in the génitive case.

Séveral nouns in *-ŭs*, of the fourth declénsion, are líkewise (in whole, or in part,) of the sécond: such as, laū′rŭs, *a báy-tree;* pī′nŭs, *a píne-tree;* fī′cŭs, *a fíg-tree* or *a fig;* quēr′cŭs, *an oak;* vēr′sŭs, *a verse,* cŏ′lŭs, *a dístaff* or *whorl;* cōr′nŭs, *a wild-chérry-tree:* pĕ′nŭs, *próvisions,* is of the sécond, third, and fourth declénsions, pĕ′nŭs, (and pĕ′nŭm,) -ī; pĕ′nŭs, -ŏrĭs; pĕ′nŭs, -ūs; lă′cŭs, *a lake;* and dŏ′mŭs, *a house:* but there is not pérhaps one of these which have all the cáses of both declénsions in cómmon. Dŏ′mŭs has dŏ′mī as well as dŏ′mūs in the génitive síngular, but ónly to sígnify "*at home;*" dátive, dŏ′mŭī and dŏ′mō; vócative, dŏ′mŭs; áblative, dŏmō ónly; nóminative plúral, dŏmūs; génitive, dŏ′mŭŭm and dŏmō′rŭm; dátive and áblative, dŏmĭ′bŭs only; accúsative, dŏ′mūs and dŏ′mōs, which last is most úsed. The peculiárities of the declénsion of dŏ′mŭs are gíven in this old line—

"Tólle *me, mu, mi, mis,* si declináre *dómus* vis."

[36] The dátive síngular of this declénsion ánciently énded in *-ū*, a terminátion which, in some few ínstances, the best Látin aúthors have retained.

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hi* | Gră′-dūs, | *steps,* |
| G. | *hórum* | Gră′-dŭŭm, | *of steps,* |
| D. | *his* | Gră′-dĭbŭs,[37] | *to steps,* |
| A. | *hos* | Gră′-dūs, | *steps,* |
| V. | *O* | Gră′-dūs, | *O steps,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Gră′-dĭbŭs, | *by steps.* |

The fifth declénsion[38] makes the génitive and dátive cáses síngular to end in *-ĕī;* as,

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæc* | Fă′cĭ-ēs, | *a face,* |
| G. | *húius* | Făcĭ-ē′ī, | *of a face,* |
| D. | *huic* | Făcĭ-ē′ī,[39] | *to a face,* |

[37] The nine nouns which fóllow, make the dátive and áblative cáses plúral in *-ŭbŭs:* néver in *-ĭbŭs:*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ă′cŭs, *a neédle* | cōr′nŭs, *a córnel-tree* | quĕr′cŭs, *an oak* |
| ār′cŭs, *a bow* | lă′cŭs, *a lake* | spĕ′cūs, *a den,* and |
| ār′tŭs, *a joint* | pār′tŭs, *a birth* | trĭ′bŭs, *a tribe.* |

But the three fóllowing have eíther *-ĭbŭs* or *-ŭbŭs* indifferently:—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| pōr′tŭs, *a hárbour* | gĕ′nū, *the knee* | vĕ′rū, *a spit.* |

[38] The fifth declénsion has ónly one terminátion, *-ēs;* and the nouns belónging to it hárdly exceéd fífty in númber: and, with the excéption of dĭ′ēs, *a day,* which is eíther másculine or féminine, in the síngular, but másculine ónly, in the plúral; and with the excéption líkewise of its compoúnd mĕrĭ′dĭēs, *noon,* (which is másculine in the síngular, and wants the plúral númber,) all nouns of this declénsion are féminine. Here, álso, it may be remárked, that évery noun of the fifth declénsion ends in *-ĭēs,* excépt three; námely, fĭ′dēs, *faith,* spēs, *hope,* and rēs, *a thing:* and, móreover, that all nouns énding in *-ĭēs* are of the fifth declénsion, excépt three; námely, ă′bĭēs (*génitive,* ăbĭ′ĕtĭs *vèl* āb′jĕtĭs) *a fír-tree,* ă′rĭēs, (*génitive,* ărĭ′ĕtĭs *vèl* ār′jĕtĭs,) *a ram,* and pă′rĭēs (*génitive,* părĭ′ĕtĭs *vèl* pār′jĕtĭs) *a wall* or *partítion:*—but quĭ′ēs, *rest,* and its cómpound rĕ′quĭēs, *repóse,* are of the third, as well as of the fifth, declénsion; máking quĭē′ī *vèl* quĭē′tĭs, and rĕquĭē′ī *vèl* rĕquĭē′tĭs, in the génitive: agaín, the noun fă′mēs, *húnger,* of the third declénsion, is of the fifth decléusion in the áblative case. Fínally, the three nouns of this declénsion not énding in *-ĭēs,* have *-ĕī* in the génitive and dátive cases síngular: all the rest *-ē′ī.*

Rēspūb′lĭcă, *a cómmonwealth,* which is a cómpound of rēs, *a thing,* with the féminine génder of the ádjective pūb′lĭcŭs, *públic,* is declíned as if the súbstantive rēs and the ádjective pūb′lĭcă, though wrítten togéther, were áctually séparated; as, génitive, rĕīpūb′lĭcæ; accúsative, rēmpūb′-lĭcăm, &c.

[39] The génitive and dátive cáses síngular of nouns of the fifth declénsion oríginally énded in *-ē,* like the áblative; and this terminátion the póets sómetimes (the prose wríters more rárely) retaín.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | *hanc* | Fă′cĭ-ēm, | *a face,* |
| V. | *O* | Fă′cĭ-ēs, | *O face,* |
| A. | *ab hâc* | Fă′cĭ-ē, | *from a face.* |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hæ* | Fă′cĭ-ēs, | *fáces,* |
| G. | *hárum* | Făcĭ-ē′rŭm,[40] | *of fáces,* |
| D. | *his* | Făcĭ-ē′bŭs, | *to fáces,* |
| A. | *has* | Fă′cĭ-ēs, | *fáces,* |
| V. | *O* | Fă′cĭ-ēs, | *O fáces,* |
| A. | *ab his* | Făcĭ-ē′bŭs, | *from fáces.* |

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

A NOUN[41] ádjective is declíned éither with three terminá-tions; as, bŏ′nŭs, *good*, tĕ′nĕr, *ténder:* or with three árticles; as in the fóllowing exámples:—

SINGULAR.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Bŏ′-nŭs,[42] | bŏ′-nă, | bŏ′-nŭm, |
| G. | Bŏ′-nī, | bŏ′-næ̅, | bŏ′-nī, |
| D. | Bŏ′-nō, | bŏ′-næ̅, | bŏ′-nō, |

[40] Though fă′cĭēs be here declíned through all its cáses, for the púrpose of shówing the terminátions, yet, in the plúral númber, the génitive, dátive, and áblative of this noun séldom or néver occúr. Indeéd of nouns of the fifth declénsion, ónly two, rēs, *a thing*, and dĭ′ēs, *a day*, are said to be entíre: of the rest (excépt fă′cĭēs, *a face*, ēffĭ′gĭēs, *an éffigy*, spēs, *hope*, and spĕ′cĭēs, *an appeárance,* which have the nóminative, the accúsative, and vócative cáses,) few are read in the plúral númber, though in the síngular they are all pérfect.

[41] The ónly reáson for gíving to Látin ádjectives the name of "*nouns ádjective*," appeárs to be, that the Látin ádjectives are declíned like nouns súbstantive: that is, the féminine terminátion *-ă*, (with the excéption of the génitive and dátive cáses síngular of the nine ádjectives méntioned in note 45, belów,) like nouns féminine in *-ă*, of the first declénsion: the másculine terminátions *-ŭs* and *-ĕr*, (with the excéption of vĕ′tŭs, *old;* and with the excéption of the eléven ádjectives spécified in note 48, belów; and álso of paŭ′pĕr, *poor;* ū′bĕr, *fruítful;* dē′gĕnĕr, *degénerate;* pū′bĕr, *ripe of age;* īmpū′bĕr, *únripe of age,*) like nouns másculine in *-ŭs* and *-ĕr* of the sécond declénsion of súbstantives: all óther terminátions, (one in *-ŭr*, námely, să′tŭr, *full,* excépted,) like nouns súbstantive of the third declénsion. All ádjectives, then, are eíther of the first and sécond declénsion of súbstantives, or of the third ónly.

[42] Like "bŏ′nŭs" are declíned all ádjectives próper, énding in *-ŭs*, whéther they be deríved from the names of pérsons or of pláces:—as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | Bŏ′-nŭm, | bŏ′-năm, | bŏ′-nŭm, |
| V. | Bŏ′-nĕ, | bŏ′-nă, | bŏ′-nŭm, |
| A. | Bŏ′-nō, | bŏ′-nā, | bŏ′-nō. |

PLURAL.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Bŏ′-nī, | bŏ′-næ, | bŏ′-nă, |
| G. | Bŏ-nō′rŭm, | bŏ-nā′rŭm, | bŏ-nō′rŭm, |
| D. | Bŏ′-nīs, *of évery génder,* | | |
| A. | Bŏ′-nōs | bŏ′-nās, | bŏ′-nă, |
| V. | Bŏ′-nī, | bŏ′næ, | bŏ′-nă, |
| A. | Bŏ′-nīs, *of évery génder.* | | |

SINGULAR.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Tĕ′-nĕr, | tĕ′-nĕră, | tĕ′-nĕrŭm, |
| G. | Tĕ′-nĕrī,[43] | tĕ′-nĕræ, | tĕ′-nĕrī, |
| D. | Tĕ′-nĕrō, | tĕ′-nĕræ, | tĕ′-nĕrō, |
| A. | Tĕ′-nĕrŭm, | tĕ′-nĕrăm, | tĕ′-nĕrŭm, |
| V. | Tĕ′-nĕr, | tĕ′-nĕră, | tĕ′-nĕrŭm, |
| A. | Tĕ′-nĕrō, | tĕ′-nĕrā, | tĕ′-nĕrō. |

Thȳēstē′ŭs, *of Thyéstēs;* Eūrōpē′ŭs, *of Európa* or *of Eúrope,* that is, *Européan,* &c. Mány ádjectives próper in *-ē′ĭŭs* reláting to wómen, have álso the terminátion *-ē′ĭs,* and are declíned like Greek names féminine in *-ĭs* of the third declénsion of súbstantives:—for exámple, Cēphē′ĭŭs, *Cephéan,* or *of Cépheus,* when reláting partícularly to Andrómeda, daúghter of that mónarch, is read Cēphē′ĭs. Like bŏ′nŭs, líkewise, are declíned all párticiples in *-rŭs, -tŭs,* and *-dŭs;* and the supérlative degreé of compárison of évery ádjective (which has that degreé) withoút excéption.

[43] Mány ádjectives in *-ĕr,* (as was remárked in note 19, abóve.) whereóf the másculine génder is declíned áfter the mánner of nouns súbstantive in *-ĕr* of the sécond déclension, lose *e* in the génitive case, and cónsequently in the féminine and neúter génders throughoút:—such, for exámple, as ā′tĕr, ā′tră, ā′trŭm, *black;* génitive, ā′trī, ā′træ, ā′trī: or, pŭl′chĕr, pŭl′chră, pŭl′chrŭm, *fair:* génitive, pŭl′chrī, pŭl′-chræ, pŭl′chrī. The ádjectives which retaín the *e* in the génitive case, and cónsequently in the féminine and neúter génders throughoút, are, tĕ′nĕr, *ténder,* ās′pĕr, *rough,* lă′cĕr, *rágged,* ĕx′tĕr, *fóreign,* mĭ′sĕr, *wrétched,* lī′bĕr, *free,* prōs′pĕr, *prósperous,* gĭb′bĕr, *búnched* or *hump-bácked;* with all those that end in *-fĕr,* and in *-gĕr,* námely, the deríva-tives of fĕ′rō, *I bear,* and gĕ′rō, *I cárry.* To these add dĕx′tĕr, *right,* which sómetimes keeps, and sómetimes rejécts the *e:*—álso, cæ′tĕr, *the óther,* or *the rest,* but which is not read in the másculine génder, síngular número. Géntile or pátrial ádjectives in *-ĕr* (their número, indeéd, is extrémely few,) génerally drop the *e;* as, Ā′fĕr, Ā′fră, Ā′frŭm, *Af′rican.*

PLURAL.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Tĕ′-nĕrī, | tĕ′-nĕrǣ, | tĕ′-nĕră, |
| G. | Tĕ-nĕrō′rŭm, | tĕ′-nĕrā′rŭm | tĕ-nĕrō′rŭm, |
| D. | Tĕ′ nĕrīs, *of évery génder,* | | |
| A. | Tĕ′-nĕrōs, | tĕ′-nĕrās, | tĕ′-nĕră, |
| V. | Tĕ′-nĕrī, | tĕ′-nĕrǣ, | tĕ′-nĕră, |
| A. | Tĕ′-nĕrīs, *of évery génder* | | |

*Observátion.* The másculine and neúter génders of ádjectives of three terminátions are declíned like nouns súbstantive of the sécond declénsion; and the féminine génder like nouns of the first declénsion.[44]

But, ū′nŭs, *one;* sō′lŭs, *alóne;* tō′tŭs, *the whole;* nūl′lŭs, *none;* āl′tĕr, *the óther;* ŭ′tĕr, *which of the two;* and a few óther ádjectives,[45] make the génitive case, síngular, in *-īŭs,* and the dátive in *-ī;* as,

SINGULAR.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Ū′-nŭs,[46] | ū′-nă, | ū′-nŭm, |
| G. | U-nī′ŭs *vèl* ū′-nĭŭs, *of évery génder,* | | |
| D. | Ū′-nī, *of évery génder,* | | |
| A. | Ū′-nŭm, | ū′-năm, | ū′-nŭm, |
| V. | Ū′-nĕ, | ū′-nă, | ū′-nŭm, |
| A. | Ū′-nō, | ū′-nā, | ū′-nō. |

The ádjective Ĭ′bĕr, ***Ibérian*** or ***Spánish,*** (but more espécially pertaíning to that part of Spain which bórders on the E′bro,) retaíns the long *e*, and makes Ībē′ră and Ībē′rŭm in the féminine and neúter génders.

[44] Excépt, howéver, the eléven ádjectives in *-ĕr* or *-is*, méntioned in note 48, belów: for they are whólly of the third declénsion of súbstantives.

[45] The óther ádjectives are, ūl′lŭs, *ány,* ă′lĭŭs, *anóther,* and neū′tĕr, *neíther of the two,* máking (in all) nine:—to which may be ádded the cómpounds of ŭ′tĕr; as, ŭtĕr′quĕ, *each of the two* or *both,* ŭtĕr′vĭs, *which of the two you like,* ŭtĕr′lĭbĕt, *which of the two you please:* líkewise, āltĕr′ŭtĕr, *one and the óther,* génitive, āltĕrū′trĭŭs, *of both the one and the óther:*—but this last is not unfréquently wrítten as two distínct words, āl′tĕr ŭ′tĕr; génitive, āltĕ′rĭŭs ŭ′trĭŭs *vèl* āltĕ′rĭŭs ūtrī′ŭs. The *i* in the génitive of āl′tĕr is álways short, as āltĕr′ĭŭs; and in the génitive of ă′lĭŭs is álways long, as ălī′ŭs. The génitive of ŭ′tĕr is ŭ′trĭŭs more fréquently (perháps) than ūtrī′ŭs.

[46] Here it may be próper to remárk, that ū′nŭs sígnifies "*a single one,*" or "*one of mány,*" whereás āl′tĕr sígnifies "*one of two:*" thus,

PLURAL.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Ū'-nī, | ū'-næ̆, | ū'nă, |
| G. | Ū-nō'rŭm, | ū-nā'rŭm, | ū-nō'rŭm, |
| D. | Ū'-nīs, *of évery génder,* | | |
| A. | Ū'-nōs, | ū'-nās, | ū'-nă, |
| V. | Ū'-nī, | ū'-næ̆, | ū'-nă, |
| A. | Ū'-nīs, *of évery génder.* | | |

*Note.* Ū'nŭs has no plúral númber, unléss it be joíned to a noun that has not the síngular númber; as, ū'næ̆ lĭ'tĕræ̆, *a letter;* ū'nă mœ̆'nĭă, *a wall.*[47]

In like mánner, also, is declíned ă'lĭŭs, *anóther:* which makes ă'lĭŭd in the neúter génder síngular númber.

A NOUN ádjective of three árticles is declíned áfter the third declénsion of súbstantives; as, trīs'tĭs, *sad;* mĕ'lĭŏr, *bétter;* fē'līx, *háppy.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | *hic et hæc* | Trīs'-tĭs,[48] | *hoc* | trīs'-tĕ, |
| G. | *hújus* | Trīs'-tĭs, *of all génders,* | | |
| D. | *huic* | Trīs'-tī, *of all génders,* | | |

---

ū'nŭs ē dĭ'gĭtīs, *one of the fingers;* ū'nŭs dīscĭpŭlō'rŭm, *one of the schólars;* āl'tĕr ŏcŭlō'rŭm, *one of the eyes:* sómetimes, too, ă'lĭŭs is contrásted with āl'tĕr; as ă'lĭŭs, *the one,* āl'tĕr, *the óther:* and sómetimes ă'lĭŭs is contrásted with itsélf, that is, when *one,* and *anóther,* insteád of *one,* and *the óther,* are meant: thus, ă'lĭŭs cāntā'băt, ă'lĭŭs sāltā'băt, *one was singing, anóther was dáncing;* ă'lĭī sāltā'bānt, ă'lĭī cāntā'bānt, *some were dáncing, óthers were singing.* Ū'nŭs, *one,* is compoúnded with quĭs'quĕ, to sígnify "*évery indivídual one:*"—as, ūnūsquĭs'quĕ, ūnăquæ̆'quĕ, ūnŭmquŏd'quĕ; génitive, ūnīŭscŭjŭs'quĕ; dátive, ūnĭcuī'quĕ; accúsative, ūnŭmquĕm'quĕ, ūnāmquām'quĕ, ūnŭmquŏd'quĕ.

[47] Or to ány noun plúral, which, though it may have the síngular númber, yet, is táken colléctively in an indivídual or undivíded sense: as, ū'nī sĕx dĭ'ēs, *one six days,* that is, *the durátion* or *space of six days.* ū'nă vĕstīmĕn'tă, *one suit of clothes* or *of apparel.*

[48] The eléven ádjectives that fóllow, have eíther three or two terminátions in the nóminative and vócative cáses síngular, that is, they have either *-ĕr,* or *-ĭs,* in the másculine génder of those two cáses; but are in all the óther cáses declíned like trĭ'stĭs:—námely, ā'cĕr, *sharp;* ă'lăcĕr, *brisk;* cĕ'lĕr, *speédy* or *swift;* cĕ'lĕbĕr, *renówned;* sălū'bĕr, *whólesome.* vŏ'lŭcĕr, *swift of wing;* cămpēs'tĕr, *champaígn;* pĕdēs'tĕr, *belónging to foot,* ĕquēs'tĕr, *pertaíning to horse;* sīlvēs'tĕr, *woódy;* pălūs'tĕr, *márshy.* These eléven ádjectives, in the nóminative and vócative cáses síngular másculine génder, have *-ĕr* or *-ĭs* with the loss of *e* in all excépt cĕ'lĕr.

| | |
|---|---|
| A. *hunc et hanc* | Trīs'-tĕm, *hoc* trīs'-tĕ, |
| V. *O* | Trīs'-tĭs, *neúter, O* trīs'-tĕ, |
| A. *ab hôc, hâc, hôc* | Trīs'-tī.[49] |

PLURAL.

| | |
|---|---|
| N. *hi et hæ* | Trīs'-tēs, *hæc* trīs'-tĭă,[50] |
| G. *hórum, hárum, hórum* | Trīs'-tĭŭm,[51] |
| D. *his* | Trīs'-tĭbŭs, *of all génders,* |
| A. *hos et has* | Trīs'-tēs, *hæc* trīs'-tĭă, |
| V. *O* | Trīs'-tēs, *neúter, O* trīs'-tĭă, |
| A. *ab his* | Trīs'-tĭbŭs, *of all génders.* |

SINGULAR.

| | |
|---|---|
| N. *hic et hæc* | Mĕ'lĭ-ŏr, *hoc* mĕ'lĭ-ŭs, |
| G. *hújus* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rĭs, *of all génders,* |
| D. *huic* | Mĕlĭ-ō'rī, *of all génders,* |
| A. *hunc et hanc* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rĕm, *hoc* mĕ'lĭ-ŭs, |
| V. *O* | Mĕ'lĭ-ŏr, *neúter, O* mĕ'lĭ-ŭs, |
| A. *ab hôc, hâc, hôc* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rĕ *vèl* mĕlĭ-ŏ'rī. |

PLURAL.

| | |
|---|---|
| N. *hi et hæ* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rēs, *hæc* mĕlĭ-ŏ'ră,[52] |
| G. *hórum, hárum, hórum* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rŭm,[53] |
| D. *his* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rĭbŭs, *of all génders,* |
| A. *hos et has* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rēs, *hæc* mĕlĭ-ŏ'ră, |
| V. *O* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rēs, *neuter, O* mĕlĭ-ŏ'ră, |
| A. *ab his* | Mĕlĭ-ŏ'rĭbŭs, *of all génders.* |

---

Thus we say, ā'cĕr *vèl* ā'crĭs, ā'crĭs, ā'crĕ, or *hic et hæc* ā'crĭs, *hoc* ā'crĕ ; but, cĕ'lĕr *vèl* cĕ'lĕrĭs, cĕ'lĕrĭs, cĕ'lĕrĕ ; ótherwise, *hic et hæc* cĕ'lĕrĭs, *hoc* cĕ'lĕrĕ.

49 All ádjectives which have the vówel *-ĕ* for terminátional létter in the nóminative case síngular, neúter génder, have *-ī* ónly in the áblative.

50 Agreéably to the práctice of neúter nouns of the third declénsion of súbstantives, *-ī* in the áblative case síngular will give *-ĭă* in the nóminative, the accúsative, and vócative cáses plúral.

51 When the neúter génder of the nóminative case, plúral, ends in *-ĭă*, the génitive inváriably ends in *-ĭŭm.*

52 Althóugh ádjectives, of the compárative degreé, have the doúble terminátion *-ĕ* or *-ī* in the áblative síngular, yet they all have *-ă*, and néver *-ĭă*, in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative cáses plural, neúter génder : excépt plūs, *more,* which has éither plū'ră or plū rĭă.

53 With the excéption of plūs, *more,* which has both plū'rŭm and plū'rĭŭm in the génitive plúral, all compáratives make this case to end in rŭm.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. *hic, hæc, hoc* | Fĕ′-līx,[54] | | |
| G. *hújus* | Fē-lī′cĭs, *of all génders,* | | |
| D. *huic* | Fē-lī′cī, *of all génders,* | | |
| A. *hunc et hanc* | Fē-lī′cĕm, | *hoc* | fĕ′-līx, |
| V. *O* | Fĕ′-līx, *of all génders.* | | |
| A. *ab hôc, hâc, hôc* | Fē-lī′cĕ, *vèl* fē-lī′cī.[55] | | |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. *hi et hæ* | Fē-lī′cēs, | *hæc* | fē-lī-cĭă, |
| G. *hórum, hárum, hórum* | Fē-lī′cĭŭm, | | |
| D. *his* | Fē-lī′cĭbŭs, *of all génders,* | | |
| A. *hos et has* | Fē-lī′cēs, | *hæc* | fē-lī′cĭă, |
| V. *O* | Fē-lī′cēs, | *neúter, O* | fē-lī′cĭă, |
| A. *ab his* | Fē-lī′cĭbŭs, *of all génders.* | | |

Am′bŏ, *both,* and dŭ′ŏ, *two,* are nouns ádjective; and are thus declíned in the plúral númber ónly :—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. Ām′-bŏ, | ām′-bæ, | ām′-bŏ, | *both,* |
| G. Ām-bō′rŭm, | ām-bā′rŭm, | ām-bō′rŭm, | *of both,* |
| D. Ām-bō′bŭs, | ām-bā′bŭs, | ām-bō′bŭs, | *to both,* |
| A. Ām′-bōs *vèl* -bŏ, | ām′-bās, | ām′-bŏ, | *both,* |
| V. Ām′bŏ, | ām′-bæ, | ām′-bŏ, | *O both,* |
| A. Ām-bō′bŭs, | ām-bā′bŭs, | ām-bō′bŭs, | *with both.* |

---

54 Like fĕ′līx are declíned all ádjectives of one terminátion, and all párticiples in *-ns.* But, for the most part, ádjectives in *-ĕr*, *-ĕs*, *-ēs*, *-ŏs*, *-ŏr*, *-ēbs*, *-ēps*, *-ōps*, *-ōrs*, *-fēx*, *-īl*, *-ĭs*, *-ūx*, (with a few óthers, such as, sĕ′nēx, *old*, sūp′plēx, *súppliant*, sōns, *guilty*, and īn′sōns, *guiltless*,) have séldom or néver the neúter génder in the síngular númber, and véry rárely in the plúral. Pátrial and patronýmic ádjectives deríved from the Greek, términating in *-ĭs*, or, in *-ăs*, as, Pī′ĕrĭs, *Piérian*, Sī′cĕlĭs, *Sicílian*, Drȳ′ăs, *Drýad*, Lēs′bĭăs, *Lésbian*, Āc′tĭās, *Ac′tic*, *At′tic*, or *Athénian*, Ăchā′ĭăs, *Achaían*, are hárdly éver met with, excépt of the féminine génder, and móstly (althoúgh not álways) of the plurál númber: these have *-ĭsĭ*, and *-ăsĭ*, respéctively (in préference to *-ĭbŭs*) in the dátive and áblative cáses plúral.

55 All ádjectives (of one terminátion) in *-ĕr*, *-ĕs*, *-ĭs*, *-ŏs*, *-ŭs*, *-ās*, *-ēx*, *-ēbs*, and in *-pēs*, *-cŏlŏr*, *-cōr′pŏr*, have *-ĕ* ónly, in the áblative síngular, and *-ŭm*, (not *-ĭŭm*) in the génitive plúral. To these might be ádded a few ádjectives of the óther éndings specífied in note 54, abóve :—but séveral of those have sómetimes *-ī* in the áblative. Mĕ′mŏr, *míndful*, and pār, *like* or *équal*, have *-ī* only, in the áblative case síngular ; but the fórmer has *-ŭm*, the latter *-ĭŭm* in the génitive plúral :—vĕ′tŭs, álso, makes

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Most, but not all, ádjectives have three degreés of significátion, or compárison :—

1. The pósitive, which denótes the quálity of a thing ábsolutely :—as, dōc′tŭs, *leárned ;* brĕ′vĭs, *short.*

2. The compárative, which increáses or léssens the quálity :—as, dŏ′ctĭŏr, *more leárned;* brĕ′vĭŏr, *shórter* or *more short :—*

And it (námely, the compárative degreé) is formed of the first case of the pósitive that ends in *-ī*, by ádding theretó the sýllable *-ŏr*, in the másculine and féminine genders; and the sýllable *-ŭs*, in the neúter :—as, of

Dŏ′ctŭs, *génitive,* dŏ′ctī, is fórmed *hic et hæc* dŏ′ctĭŏr, *hoc* dŏ′ctĭŭs, *more léarned.* Of

Brĕ′vĭs, *dátive,* brĕ′vī, is in like mánner fórmed *hic et hæc* brĕ′vĭŏr, *hoc* brĕ′vĭŭs, *shórter* or *more short.*

3. The supérlative, which increáses or dimínishes the signification, or compárison, to the greátest degreé :—as, dōctīs′sĭmŭs, dōctīs′sĭmă, dōctīs′sĭmŭm, *the most learned;* brĕvīs′sĭmŭs, brĕvīs′sĭmă, brĕvīs′sĭmŭm, *the shórtest :—*

And it (namely, the supérlative degreé) is fórmed álso of the first case of the pósitive that ends in *-ī*, by ádding thereto the terminátion *-ssĭmŭs :*—as, of the

*Génitive,* dōc′tī, is fórmed dōctīs′sĭmŭs, *most leárned.*
And, of the
*Dátive,* brĕ′vī, is fórmed brĕvīs′sĭmŭs, *the shórtest.*

*Observe.* Mány ádjectives váry from these Géneral Rules, and form their compárison irrégularly :—as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bŏ′nŭs, | *good,* | mĕl′ĭŏr, | *better,* | ōp′tĭmŭs, | *best.* |
| Mă′lŭs, | *bad,* | pē′jŏr, | *worse,* | pēs′sĭmŭs, | *worst.* |
| Māg′nŭs, | *great,* | mā′jŏr, | *greater,* | māx′ĭmŭs, | *gréatest.* |
| Pār′vŭs, | *little,* | mĭ′nŏr, | *less,* | mĭ′nĭmŭs, | *least.* |
| Mūl′tŭs, | *much,* | plūs,[56] | *more,* | plū′rĭmŭs, | *most.* |

vĕ′tĕrŭm. The cómpounds of pār, as īm′pār, *unéven* or *odd,* dīs′pār, *unéqual* or *unlike,* have *-ĕ* or *-ī,* in the áblative, indifferently; and *-ŭm* or *-ĭŭm* in the génitive plúral.

[56] This compárative is not found eíther of the másculine or féminine génder in the síngular númber ; the neúter génder "plūs" fóllowed by

Dī′vĕs, *rich*, dī′tĭŏr,[57] *richer* or *more rich*, dītīs′sĭmŭs, *ríchest* or *most rich.*

Nē′quăm,[58] *wícked*, nē′quĭŏr, *more wícked*, nēquīs′sĭmŭs, *most wícked.*

Ēxtēr′nŭs, *oútward*, ēxtĕ′rĭŏr,[59] *more oútward*, ēxtrē′mŭs *vèl* ēx′tĭmŭs, *úttermost* or *most oútward.*

Īn′fĕrŭs, *low*, īnfĕ′rĭŏr, *lówer* or *more low*, īn′fĭmŭs *vèl* ī′mŭs, *lówest* or *most low.*

---

a génitive case béing upón all occásions úsed when eíther of the óther two génders may come ínto need: but, in the plúral númber, plūs makes *hi et hæ* plū′rēs, *hæc* plū′ră *vèl* plū′rĭă; génitive, *hórum, hárum, hórum* plū′rŭm *vèl* plū′rĭŭm; dátive, *his* plū′rĭbŭs of all génders, and so forth.

[57] This compárative is fórmed by sýncopē from dīvĭ′tĭŏr; which last word occúrs in the best aúthors, though perháps less fréquently than dī′tĭŏr.

[58] This ádjective, (which is whólly indeclínable in the pósitive degreé,) is a corrúption of "nē æ′quŭs," *not just*:—so nūl′lŭs, nūl′lă, nūl′lŭm, *none*, was fórmed by synæresis, of "nē ūl′lŭs, nē ūl′lă, nē ūl′lŭm," *not ány.*

[59] Ēxtĕ′rĭŏr is próperly the compárative degreé of the óbsolete ádjective ēx′-tĕrŭs, *oútward*, from which it appeárs (unquéstionably) to have been fórmed: use, howéver, has cónstituted it the compárative of ēxtēr′nŭs:—in like mánner, álso, ought īnfĕ′rĭŏr, and sŭpĕ′rĭŏr, to be consídered the compáratives of īnfēr′nŭs and sŭpēr′nŭs respéctively, as well as of īn′fĕrŭs and sŭ′pĕrŭs. Mány grammárians, and not withoút much reáson, regárd ēxtĕ′rĭŏr, īntĕ′rĭŏr, cĭtĕ′rĭŏr, ūltĕ′rĭŏr, sŭpĕ′rĭŏr, īnfĕ′rĭŏr, prĭ′ŏr, pōstĕ′rĭŏr, with their supérlatives, to have the ádverbs or else prepositíons ēx′trā, *withoút*, īn′trā, *withín*, cĭ′trā, *on this side*, ūl′trā, *beyónd*, sŭ′prā, *abóve*, īn′frā, *belów or beneáth*, præ, *befóre*, pōst, *áfter*, for their pósitives respéctively; thus:—

| *Pósitive.* | | *Compárative.* | | *Supérlative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| præ, | *befóre,* | prĭ′ŏr, | *fórmer,* | prī′mŭs, | *first,* |
| pōst, | *behínd,* | pōstĕ′rĭŏr, | *more behínd,* | pōstrē′mŭs, | *last,* |
| īn′tŭs, īn′trā, | *withín,* | īntĕ′rĭŏr, | *ínner* or *more withín,* | īn′tĭmŭs, | *ínmost* or *most withín,* |
| ēx′tĕr, ēx′trā, | *withoút,* | ēxtĕ′rĭŏr, | *oúter* or *more withoút,* | ēxtrē′mŭs, ēx′tĭmŭs, | *úttermost* or *most withoút,* |
| cĭs, cĭ′trā, | *on this side,* | cĭtĕ′rĭŏr, | *neárer* or *more tówards,* | cĭ′tĭmŭs, | *nearest* or *most tówards,* |
| ūl′tĕr, ūl′trā, | *beyónd,* | ūltĕ′rĭŏr, | *fárther,* | ūl′tĭmŭs, | *fárthest* or *last,* |
| īn′fĕr, īn′frā, | *beneáth,* | īnfĕ′rĭŏr, | *more beneáth* or *lówer,* | īn′fĭmŭs, ī′mŭs, | *most beneáth* or *lowest,* |
| sŭ′pĕr, sŭ′prā, | *abóve,* | sŭpĕ′rĭŏr, | *more abóve* or *hígher,* | sŭprē′mŭs, sūm′mŭs, | *most abóve* or *híghest,* |
| prŏ′pĕ, | *near,* | prŏ′pĭŏr, | *neárer,* | prōx′ĭmŭs, | *neárest.* |

To these, did our límits permít, we cértainly might add véry mány

Sŭ′pĕrŭs, *high*, sŭpĕ′rĭŏr, *higher* or *more high*, sŭprē′mŭs *vèl* sūm′mŭs, *highest* or *most high*.
Īn′tŭs, *ínward*, īntĕ′rĭŏr, *more ínward*, īn′tĭmŭs, *ínnermost* or *most ínward*.
Jŭ′vĕnĭs, *young*, jū′nĭŏr, *yoúnger*.
Sĕ′nēx, *old*, sĕ′nĭŏr, *ólder*.
Prĭ′ŏr, *fórmer*, prī′mŭs, *first*.
Prŏ′pĭŏr, *neárer*, prōx′ĭmŭs, *níghest* or *neárest*.
Ūltĕ′rĭŏr, *fárther*, ūl′tĭmŭs, *last*. With some ôthers.[60]

---

more: but, for the présent, the abóve must suffíce. In some of the ínstances which are here addúced, the oríginal pósitive is óbsolete; and in óthers, an ádjective ráther than a preposítion or an ádverb ought to be regárded as the pósitive: such, for exámple, as, īnfĕ′rĭŏr and sŭpĕ′rĭŏr, which have the ádjectives īn′fĕrŭs and sŭ′pĕrŭs ríghtly for their pósitive degreés: yet in óthers, as prĭ′ŏr and prŏ′pĭŏr, the ádverbs or preposítions prǣ, *befóre*, and prŏ′pĕ, *nigh*, seem to be the words from which those compáratives have been fórmed.

[60] The ádjectives, (not here spécified,) which, in addítion to those alreády gíven, váry from the géneral rule, may be clássed únder one, or óther, of the séven heads fóllowing. *First*, ádjectives bórrowing their compárison from ádjectives of some óther terminátion:—*sécond*, ádjectives fórming their supérlative degreé of compárison irrégularly:—*third*, ádjectives wánting the pósitive degreé:—*fourth*, ádjectives wánting the compárative degreé:—*fifth*, ádjectives wánting the supérlative degreé:—*sixth*, ádjectives which are found ónly in the pósitive degreé:—and *séventh*, adjectives which are found ónly in the compárative degreé.

1. *Ad′jectives bórrowing their compárison.*

All ádjectives énding in *-dĭcŭs*, *-fĭcŭs*, *-lŏquŭs*, and *-vŏlŭs*, change the fínal *-ī* of the first case of the pósitive degreé which términates in that vówel, ínto *-ēn′tĭŏr* for the másculine, and álso féminine génder, of the cómparative degreé; and ínto *-ēn′tĭŭs*, for the neúter. Agaín, they, in like mánner, form the supérlative degreé by chánging the same *-ī* into *-ēntĭs′sĭmŭs*, *-ēntĭs′sĭmă*, *-ēntĭs′sĭmŭm*: as though áctually bórrowing their compárison from párticiples in *-dĭcēns*, *-fĭcēns*, *-lŏquēns*, and *-vŏlēns*. For exámple, mūnĭ′fĭcŭs, *muníficent*, makes *hic* et *hæc* mūnĭfĭcēn′tĭŏr, *hoc* mūnĭfĭcēn′tĭŭs, *more muníficent*, mūnĭfĭcēntĭs′sĭmŭs, mūnĭfĭcēntĭs′sĭmă, mūnĭfĭcēntĭs′sĭmŭm, *most muníficent*: and so of ádjectives of the óther three terminátions: but mīrĭ′fĭcŭs, *wónderful*, has eíther mīrĭfĭcēntĭs′sĭmŭs or mīrĭfĭcĭs′sĭmŭs, *most wónderful*, in the supérlative degreé; and perháps some of the rest are símilarly fórmed.

2. *Ad′jectives fórming their supérlative degreé irrégularly.*

Séveral ádjectives of this class are gíven in the E′ton text, and these need not thérefore be repeáted:—we shall add ónly the four fóllowing, and which, in the compárative degreé, are régular:—

Ad′jectives énding in *-ĕr* form the supérlative degreé from the nóminative case síngular, másculine génder of the pósitive,

---

| *Pósitive.* | | *Supérlative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| mātū′rŭs, | *matúre* or *ripe*, | mātūr′rĭmŭs, | *the rípest* or *most ripe.* |
| vĕ′tŭs, | *old* or *áncient*, | vĕtĕr′rĭmŭs, | *véry old* or *most áncient.* |
| dĕx′tĕr, | *right* or *on the right hand*, | dĕx′tĭmŭs, | *the most to the right.* |
| sĭnĭs′tĕr, | *left* or *on the left hand*, | sĭnĭs′tĭmŭs, | *the most to the left.* |

With these, some folks (as Válpy) coúple cĭ′tĕr, *near*, cĭ′tĭmŭs, *neárest;* and pōs′tĕrŭs, *póstern* or *behínd*, pōstrē′mŭs, *last* or *most behínd;* but cĭ′tĭmŭs and pōstrē′mŭs we, in note 59, abóve, fórmed (though perháps less próperly) from the ádverbs or prepositíons cĭs or cĭ′trā, *on this side*, and pōst, *áfter*.

### 3. *Ad′jectives wánting the pósitive degreé.*

The ádjectives of this class are, by no means, númerous, if we are allówed to call an ádverb, or a prepósition, a pósitive degreé ; which, strictly speáking howéver, we hárdly can. These two ádjectives fóllowing seem entírely déstitute of a pósitive degreé, even in the látitude to which we have just allúded :—

| *Compárative.* | | *Supérlative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| dētĕ′rĭŏr, | *worse*, | dētĕr′rĭmŭs, | *worst*, |
| ō′cĭŏr *vĕl* ō′cy̆ŏr, | *swífter*, | ōcĭs′sĭmŭs, | *speédiest*, or *swíftest.* |

The fórmer of these seems indeéd to have had dē′tĕr, or some such like, for the pósitive degreé, but which has long since becóme óbsolete.

### 4. *Ad′jectives wánting the compárative degreé.*

Of this class the ádjectives, which here fóllow, are those which occúr more fréquently ; but séveral óthers might be ádded :—

| *Pósitive.* | | *Supérlative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bĕl′lŭs, | *spruce* or *fine*, | bĕllĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most spruce*, |
| dīvĕr′sŭs, | *dífferent*, | dīvĕrsĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most dífferent*, |
| fĭ′dŭs, | *faíthful*, | fīdĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most faíthful*, |
| ĭn′cly̆tŭs, | *renówned*, | ĭncly̆tĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most renówned*, |
| ĭnvĭc′tŭs, | *invíncible*, | ĭnvĭctĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most invíncible*, |
| ĭnvī′tŭs, | *unwílling*, | ĭnvītĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most unwílling*, |
| mĕ′rĭtŭs, | *desérving*, | mĕrĭtĭs′sĭmŭs, | *most desérving*, |
| nŏ′vŭs, | *new* or *late*, | nŏvĭs′sĭmŭs, | *néwest* or *látest*, |
| nū′pĕrŭs, | *récent*, | nūpĕr′rĭmŭs, | *most récent*, |
| pērsuā′sŭs, | *persuáded*, | pērsuāsĭs′sĭmŭs, | *fúlly persuáded*, |
| să′cĕr, | *hóly*, | săcĕr′rĭmŭs, | *most hóly.* |

A few of these (just námed) are párticiples ráther than ádjectives ; or, at all évents, they are particípials, that is, párticiples úsed ádjectively, withoút réference to time. Thus, ĭnvĭc′tŭs is a párticiple, if we transláte it '*uncónquered*,' becaúse this meáning is connécted with the past ; but the same word ĭnvĭc′tŭs is a particípial ádjective, if we rénder it '*invíncible*,' becaúse, in that sense, it is not confíned to the *past*, *présent*, nor *fúture*.

by ádding théreto the terminátion *-rĭmŭs:* as, of pŭl′chĕr. *fair*, is fórmed pūlchĕr′rĭmŭs, *the fairest.*[61]

---

5. *Ad′jectives wánting the supérlative degreé.*

The númber of ádjectives of this class is exceédingly númerous, if we admít ínto it all ádjectives which are not compáred: but in a more límited acceptátion, námely, a class of ádjectives which have the pósitive and compárative degreés, but not the supérlative, the númber is véry consíderably dimínished; embrácing ónly such ádjectives as end in *-ā′lĭs*, *-ī′lĭs*, and *-bĭlĭs*, with most of those in *-ā′nŭs*, *-ī′vĭs*, and *-īn′quŭs:* —to which may be ádded (in addítion to the two gíven in the E′ton text,) the fóllowing :—

| *Pósitive.* | | *Compárative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ădŏlēs′cēns, | *young* or *yoúthful,* | ădŏlēscēn′tĭŏr, | *yoúnger,* |
| dĭŭtūr′nŭs, | *lásting,* | dĭŭtūr′nĭŏr, | *more lásting,* |
| īn′gēns, | *great* or *huge,* | īngēn′tĭŏr, | *more huge,* |
| ŏpī′mŭs, | *fértile* or *rich,* | ŏpī′mĭŏr, | *more fértile,* |
| prō′nŭs, | *prone,* | prō′nĭŏr, | *more prone,* |
| să′tŭr, | *full,* | sătŭ′rĭŏr, | *more full.* |

6. *Ad′jectives which are found ónly in the pósitive degreé.*

This class is the most númerous of ány, comprísing all ádjectives and párticiples of whatéver tense, whéreunto degreés of compárison are incompátible with the significátion: and all ádjectives compoúnded with nouns súbstantive, and with the verbs fĕ′rō, *I bear*, and gĕ′rō, *I cárry*, with some óthers:—álso most, if not all, ádjectives términating in *-ĭcŭs*, *-ī′cŭs*, *-ĭmŭs*, *-ī′mŭs*, *-ĭnŭs*, *-ī′nŭs*, *-ī′vŭs*, *-ō′rŭs*, *-sŏnŭs*, *-fŭgŭs*, and *-būn′dŭs:* líkewise in *-ŭl′lŭs*, *-ŭlŭs*, and óther éndings índicative of diminútion; with all párticiples in *-rŭs*, and in *-dŭs*. To which add, āl′mŭs, *grácious;* dŭ′bĭŭs, *doúbtful;* ĕgē′nŭs, *índigent;* lă′cĕr, *rágged* or *torn;* mĕ′mŏr, *míndful;* mī′rŭs, *wónderful;* sōs′pĕs, *safe;* vă′cŭŭs, *émpty:* and séveral besídes. But some few of these are found compáred in the wrítings of the eárlier Rómans, and óthers of them admít, indeéd, of an impérfect compárison with the aid of the ádverbs mă′gĭs, *more;* vāl′dē, *véry;* and māx′ĭmē, *most.* And some ádjectives which are régularly compáred, and others which are not, do occásionally, in the pósitive degreé, increáse or léssen their significátion by means of prepositions in composítion: as, prædū′rŭs, *véry hard;* pērdī′lĭgēns, *véry díligent;* dēpār′cŭs, *véry níggard.*

7. *Ad′jectives which are found ónly in the compárative degreé.*

There are féwer ádjectives of this class than of ány óther: indeéd we hárdly know of more than these three belów :—

āntĕ′rĭŏr, *fórmer,* | să′tĭŏr, *bétter,* | sĕ′quĭŏr, *worse.*

Of which, the first seems to be the compárative degreé of the ádverb ān′tĕ, *befóre;* and the sécond, that of săt or să′tĭs, *enoúgh.* In this class, agaín, some grammárians rank pŏ′tĭŏr *more éligible* or *chóicer:* but this compárative has pŏ′tĭs, for its pósitive, and pŏtĭs′sĭmŭs for its supérlative degreé.

[61] The éleven ádjectives méntioned in note 60, abóve, form their com-

Ad'jectives énding in *-lĭs* form the supérlative degreé according to the Géneral Rule: as, of ŭ'tĭlĭs, *úseful*, dátive, ŭ'tĭlī, is fórmed ūtĭlĭs'sĭmŭs, *most úseful* :—excépt the fóllowing, which change *-ĭs* ínto *-lĭmŭs* : as,

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ă'gĭlĭs, | *nímble,* | ăgĭl'lĭmŭs, | *nímblest,* | or *most nímble,* |
| Fă'cĭlĭs, | *eásy,* | făcĭl'lĭmŭs, | *eásiest,* | or *most eásy,* |
| Gră'cĭlĭs, | *slénder,* | grăcĭl'lĭmŭs, | *slénderest,* | or *most slénder,* |
| Hŭ'mĭlĭs, | *low,* | hŭmĭl'lĭmŭs, | *lówest,* | or *most low,* |
| Sĭ'mĭlĭs, | *like,* | sĭmĭl'lĭmŭs, | *líkest,* | or *most like.*[62] |

Líkewise, if a vówel come befóre *-ŭs*, in the nóminative case síngular, másculine génder, of the pósitive degreé of an ádjective, the compárison is génerally made by mă'gĭs, *more*, and māx'ĭmē, *most* :[63] as,

Pĭ'ŭs, *gódly*, *dútiful*, or *afféctionate ;* mă'gĭs pĭ'ŭs, *more gódly*, *more dútiful*, or *more afféctionate ;* māx'ĭmē pĭ'ŭs, *most gódly, most dútiful*, or *most afféctionate.*

---

## OF A PRONOUN.

A Prónoun[64] is úsed insteád of a noun, and is declíned with númber, case, and génder.

---

párison like pŭl'chĕr :—but the cómpounds of fĕ'rō, *I bear*, and of gĕ'rō, *I cárry*, as lā'nĭgĕr, *wool-beáring*, ăr'mĭgĕr, *arms-cárrying*, admít not of a compárative or supérlative degreé. Dĕx'tĕr, *right*, and sĭnĭs'tĕr, *left*, with some few óthers in *-ĕr*, (see note 60, abóve,) déviate from this Rule, in the formátion of their supérlatives.

[62] To these may be ádded īmbēcĭl'lĭs, *weak ;* and ány cómpounds of fă'cĭlĭs or of sĭ'mĭlĭs : as, dĭffĭ'cĭlĭs, *dífficult ;* dĭssĭ'mĭlĭs, *dissímilar* or *unlíke ;* pērsĭ'mĭlĭs, *véry símilar* or *exceédingly like.*

[63] Althoúgh all ádjectives énding in *-ŭs* pure may be compáred by help of these two ádverbs, yet mány of them have álso their régular degreés of compárison ; thus, strĕ'nŭŭs, strĕnŭ'ĭŏr, strĕnŭĭs'sĭmŭs, *strénuous.*

[64] Prónouns, as the name véry cleárly índicates, are súbstitutes for nouns, supplýing the place of the látter, and prevénting them (as it were) from béing too fréquently repeáted: they have réference, thérefore, to some person or thing befóre méntioned. Prónouns are eíther Símple or Compoúnded: and they are moreóver divíded ínto *Pérsonal, Demónstrative, Rélative, Interrógative, Posséssive, Indéfinite,* and *Pátrial.* The símple prónouns, in Látin, amoúnt to eíghteen in númber ; námely, the fífteen gíven in the E'ton list, abóve ; with the rélative quī, *who*, the interrógative, quĭs ? *who*, or, *what ?* which last, howéver, some regárd

There are fífteen prónouns: námely,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ĕ'gŏ, *I*, | Ī'p'sĕ, | *himsélf*, | Sŭ'ŭs, | *his*, |
| Tū, *thou*, | Ī's'tĕ, | *that*, | Nōs'tĕr, | *ours*, |
| Īl'lĕ, *he*, | Hīc, | *this*, | Vēs'tĕr, | *yours*, |
| Ĭs, *he*, | Mĕ'ŭs, | *mine*, | Nōs'trās, | *of our country*. |
| Sŭ'ī, *of himsélf*, | Tŭ'ŭs, | *thine*, | Vēs'trās, | *of your coúntry*. |

To these may be ádded their cómpounds, ĕ'gŏmĕt, *I mysélf*, tū'tĕ, *thou thysélf*, ī'dĕm, *the same;* álso the rélative quī, *who*, or *what;* and cū'jās, *of what coúntry*.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ĕ'gŏ, tū, sŭ'ī,[65] are prónouns súbstantive, and are thus declíned:—

as a cómpound of quī with ĭs; and the pátrial, cū'jās, *of what coúntry*. Of these, ĕ'gŏ, *I*, tū, *thou*, (or *you* by coúrtesy,) and sŭ'ī, *of himsélf*, *of hersélf*, *of itsélf*, or *of themsélves*, are súbstantives of all génders:—the remaining fífteen are ádjectives. But of these símple ádjective prónouns, séveral are assúmed súbstantively: as, īl'lĕ, in the másculine génder, *he:* īl'lă, in the féminine génder, *she;* īl'lŭd, in the neúter génder, *it*. In like manner are hīc, hæ̆c, hŏc, *this*, īs'tĕ, īs'tă, īs'tŭd, *that*, and ĭs, ĕ'ă, ĭd, *he*, *she*, *it*, used; and more rárely, īp'sĕ, īp'să, īp'sŭm, *himsélf*, *hersélf*, *itsélf:* álso, the rélative, quī, *who;* and some few óthers. Again, the prónouns ĕ'gŏ, *I*, and tū, *thou* or *you*, with their plúrals nōs, *we*, and vōs, *ye* or *you*, are térmed prímitives, becaúse from them are deríved the posséssives mĕ'ŭs, *mine*, tŭ'ŭs, *thine*, nōs'tĕr, *ours*, vēs'tĕr, *yours:*—sŭ'ī, *of himsélf*, is álso a prímitive prónoun, the posséssive sŭ'ŭs, *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, or *their own*, béing deríved from it. The last, námely *sŭ'ī*, and its derívative *sŭ'ŭs*, are stýled reflex, becaúse, poínting álways refléctively to the chief noun precéding them, they are in a mánner recíprocals of one anóther. With *ĕ'gŏ*, *tū*, and *sŭ'ī*, through their séveral cáses, are óften found the like cáses of *īp'sĕ*, *īp'să*, *īp'sŭm*, agreéing in génder and in númber, with the pérson understoód in those prímitive and símple prónouns.

[65] These three prónouns take *-mĕt*, áfter them, in all their cáses, whenéver a speáker, or wríter, inténds to mark more than órdinary emphasis: and, in the nóminative case (síngular) of *tū*, the sýllable *-tĕ-* is óften insérted betweén the prónoun and the adjúnctive, *-mĕt:*—thus, vī'dī ĕ'gŏmĕt, *I*, *my own self*, *saw;* fēcīs'sēs tū'tĕmĕt, *thou*, *thy own self*, *woúldest have done* (*it*). In so far, howéver, as regárds the sécond pérson, tū'tĕ is óftener úsed, perháps, than tū'tĕmĕt. In the accúsative síngular, tē is sómetimes doúbled; as tē'tē, *thy idéntical self;* and in like mánner, both in a síngular and plúral sense, we fréquently meet with sē'sē, *him véry self* or *them own selves*. Fínally, in the áblative case, both síngular and plúral, these three prónouns, in cómmon with the rélative, are fóllowed by the preposítion *cŭm* in composítion: as

| SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | É'gŏ, | *I*, | N. | Nōs, | *we*, |
| G. | Mĕ'ī, | *of me*, | G. | Nōs'trūm, *vèl* -ī,[67] | *of us*, |
| D. | Mĭ'hĭ,[66] | *to me*, | D. | Nō'bīs, | *to us*, |
| A. | Mē, | *me*, | A. | Nōs, | *us*, |
| V. | —— | —— | V. | —— | —— |
| A. | Mē, | *from me*. | A. | Nō'bīs, | *from us*. |

| SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Tū, | *thou*, | N. | Vōs, | *ye* or *you*, |
| G. | Tŭ'ī, | *of thee*, | G. | Vēs'trūm, *vèl* ī, | *of you*, |
| D. | Tĭ'bĭ, | *to thee*, | D. | Vō'bīs, | *to you*, |
| A. | Tē, | *thee*, | A. | Vōs, | *you*, |
| V. | Tū, | *O thou*, | V. | Vōs, | *O ye* or *you*, |
| A. | Tē, | *with thee*. | A. | Vō'bīs, | *with you*. |

Sŭ'ī, *of himsélf*, *of hersélf*, *of itsélf*, *of themsélves*, has no nóminative or vócative case, and is thus declíned :—

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | —— | | hersélf, itsélf, themsélves. |
| G. | Sŭ'ī, | *of himsélf*, | |
| D. | Sĭ'bĭ, | *to himsélf*, | |
| A. | Sē, | *himsélf*, | |
| V. | —— | | |
| A. | Sē, | *by himsélf*. | |

Il'lĕ, *he*, īl'lă, *she*, and īs'tĕ, *that*, are thus declined :—

SINGULAR.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Īl'lĕ, | īl'lă, | īl'lŭd, |
| G. | Īl'līŭs, *vèl* īllī'ŭs, *of all génders*, | | |
| D. | Īl'lī, *of all génders*, | | |

mē'cŭm, *with me ;* sē'cŭm, *with* or *by himsélf or themsélves ;* vōbīs'cŭm, *with you.*

66 The dátive mĭ'hĭ, *to me*, is óften contrácted by the póets, and sómetime by the prose wríters, ínto mî ; like nĭ'hĭl, *nóthing*, ínto nîl, *nought*.

67 The génitive plúral of ĕ'gŏ, was oríginally nōstrō'rŭm, when the pérson allúded to was másculine ; and nōstrā'rŭm, when that pérson was of the féminine génder. But in prócess of time, this génitive becáme nōstrūm, by sýncopē : and occásionally nōstrī.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | Īl'lŭm, | īl'lăm, | īl'lŭd, |
| V | —— | —— | —— |
| A. | Il'lō, | īl'lā, | īl'lō. |

PLURAL.

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Īl'lī,[68] | īl'læ, | īl'lă, |
| G. | Īllō'rŭm, | īllā'rŭm, | īllō'rŭm, |
| D. | Il'līs, *of all génders*, | | |
| A. | Īl'lōs, | īl'lās, | īl'lă, |
| V. | —— | —— | —— |
| A. | Īl'līs, *of all génders.* | | |

In like mánner, álso, is declíned īp'sĕ, *he himsélf;* excépt, that the nóminative and accúsative cáses, síngular, have *pĭ'sŭm* in the neúter génder.

Is, *he*, *she*, or *that*, and quī, *who,* are thus declíned :—

SINGULAR.

| | *Mãsc.* | *Fém.* | *Neút.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Ĭs, | ĕ'ă, | ĭd, |
| G. | Ē'jŭs, *of all génders*, | | |
| D. | Ĕ'ī, *of all génders*, | | |
| A. | Ĕ'ŭm, | ĕ'ăm, | ĭd, |
| V. | —— | —— | —— |
| A. | Ĕ'ō, | ĕ'ā, | ĕ'ō. |

PLURAL.

| | *Mãsc.* | *Fém.* | *Neút.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Ĭ'ī, | ĕ'æ, | ĕ'ă, |
| G. | Ĕō'rŭm, | ĕā'rŭm, | ĕo'rŭm, |
| D. | Ĭ'īs *vèl* ĕ'īs *vèl* eīs *vèl* îs,[69] | | |
| A. | Ĕ'ōs, | ĕ'ās, | ĕ'ă, |
| V. | —— | —— | —— |
| A. | Ĭ'īs *vèl* ĕ'īs *vèl* eīs *vèl* îs. | | |

In like mánner also is declíned its cómpound ĭ'dĕm, *the same;* as, *Nóminative,* ĭ'dĕm, ĕ'ădĕm, ĭ'dĕm; *Génitive,* ējŭs'dĕm ; *Dátive,* ĕī'dĕm, &c.[70]

---

[68] For *īl'lī*, and *īl'līs,* we sometimes meet with *ōl'lī*, and *ōl'līs,* agreéably to the more áncient mode of spélling. Like those cáses of *īl'lĕ* were the dátive and áblative cáses síngular of *hĭc*, *ĭs*, and *quī* :—námely, *hoīc*, *ĕ'oī*, and *quoī*, for the másculine and neúter génders, and *haīc*, *ĕ'aī*, and *quaī*, for the féminine génder. The ádverb *ĕc'cĕ*, or ráther a frágment of that ádverb, énters ínto composítion with *īll'ĕ* in the másculine and féminine génders of the accúsative case both in the síngular and plúral númber :—as, *ĕl'lŭm*, *ĕl'lăm*, *ĕl'lōs*, *ĕl'lās*.

[69] With the ádverb *ĕc'cĕ*, the prónoun *ĭs* énters ínto composítion exáctly in the same way, and to the same extént as *īl'lĕ:* hence we have *ĕc'cŭm*, *ĕc'căm*, *ĕc'cōs*, and *ĕc'cās*, but nóthing fúrther.

[70] This prónoun is véry évidently a cómpound of *ĭs*, with the adjúnctive sýllable *-dĕm*, contrácted by sýncopë ínto *ī'dĕm* for the másculine, and *ĭ'dĕm* for the neúter génder. In the accúsative case síngular and génitive case plúral it has *ĕŭn'dĕm*, *ĕān'dĕm*, and *ĕōrūn'dĕm*, *ĕārūn'dĕm*, the létter *m* béing chánged ínto *n* for the sake of the sound.

SINGULAR.

| | Másculine. | Féminine. | Neúter. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Quī, | quǣ, | quŏd, |
| G. | Cū′jŭs, *of all génders,* | | |
| D. | Cuī, *of all génders,* | | |
| A. | Quĕm, | quăm, | quŏd, |
| V. | —— | —— | —— |
| A. | Quō, | quā, | quō, |
| | *vèl* quî, *of all génders.*[71] | | |

PLURAL.

| | Másculine. | Féminine. | Neúter. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Quī, | quǣ, | quǣ, |
| G. | Quō′rŭm, | quā′rŭm, | quō′rŭm, |
| D. | Quĭ′bŭs *vèl* quĕ′īs *vèl* queīs *vèl* quîs, | | |
| A. | Quōs | quās, | quǣ, |
| V. | —— | —— | —— |
| A. | Quĭ′bŭs *vèl* quĕ′īs *vèl* queīs *vèl* quîs. | | |

In like mánner álso are declíned its cómpounds,[72] quī′-lăm, *a cértain one;* quī′vīs, quī′lĭbĕt, *ány one you please;* quīcŭn′quĕ, *whosoéver.*

Quĭs, quǣ, quĭd or quŏd, *who?* or *what?* is declíned like quī, *who:*—as are álso *ă′lĭquĭs*, and óther cómpounds of *quĭs:*[73] these for the most part make the féminine génder of the nóminative case síngular, and the neúter of the nóminative and accúsative cáses plúral, in *-quă.*[74]

---

[71] Althoúgh the áblative *quî* occúrs of all génders, yet it is úsed óftener, perháps, in the neúter than in eíther the másculine or féminine génder. In both the síngular, and plúral númber, the rélative, whenéver it is góverned by the prepositíon *cŭm* expréssed, may be fóllowed or precéded by that word at óption: thus we may say, *cŭm quō, cŭm quĭbŭs* or *quō′cŭm, quā′cŭm, quī′cŭm, quĭbŭs′cŭm;* but the látter form is more élegant.

[72] In évery cómpound (withoút excéption) of the rélative prónoun quī, *who*, the rélative stands first:—but in those of the interrógative quĭs, *who* or *what?* the interrógative is sómetimes first and sómetimes last.

[73] *Quĭs′quăm* has óften *quĭc′quăm*, for *quĭd′quăm*, in the neúter génder; and *quĕn′quăm*, for *quĕm-quăm*, in the accúsative síngular, másculine génder: but the féminine *quăm′quăm* is not found. The cómpounds of *quī,* álso change *m* ínto *n* befóre *d*: thus we óften find *quĕn′dăm, quăn′dăm,—quōrŭn′dăm, quārŭn′dăm, &c.* for *quĕm′dăm, quăm′dăm,—quōrŭm′dăm, quārŭm′dăm, &c.*

[74] This observátion applíes ónly to such cómpounds of *quĭs*, as términ-

Quĭs'quĭs, *whosoéver*, is thus declíned :—

| | *Másculine.* | *Féminine.* | *Neúter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Quĭs'quĭs, | ——— | quĭd'quĭd *vèl* quĭc'quĭd. |
| G. | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| D. | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| A. | ——— | ——— | quĭd'quĭd *vèl* quĭc'quĭd, |
| V. | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| A. | Quō'quō, | quā'quā, | quō'quō. |

*Mĕ'ŭs*, *tŭ'ŭs*, *sŭ'ŭs*, are declíned like *bŏ'nŭs*, excépt ónly that *mĕ'ŭs* makes mī[75] in the vócative case síngular, másculine; and *tŭ'ŭs*, *sŭ'ŭs*, with mány óther prónouns, have no vócative case.[76]

*Nōs'trās*, *vēs'trās*, and *cū'jās*, are declíned, Nóminative, *nōs'trās*, Génitive, *nōstrā'tĭs*, like *fē'līx*.[77]

---

## OF A VERB.

A Verb is the chief word in évery séntence, and exprésses éither the *áction* or *béing* of a thing.

---

nate in that prónoun: for those which begín with it, as *quĭs'năm*, have *quæ* and not *quă*.

[75] To the áblative case síngular, féminine génder (and sómetimes, too, though rárely, in the másculine génder,) of *mĕ'ŭs*, *tŭ'ŭs*, *sŭ'ŭs*, *nōs'tĕr*, and *vēs'tĕr*, is ádded (for the sake of émphasis) the terminátion *-ptĕ* :— as, *mĕāp'tĕ*, *tŭāp'tĕ*, *sŭāp'tĕ*, *nōstrāp'tĕ*, *vēstrāp'tĕ* : álso, *mĕōp'tĕ*, *tŭōp'tĕ*, &c. but séldom.

[76] All nouns and prónouns with which the vócative *tū* cánnot be coúpled, so as to make sense, that is, all nouns and prónouns which cánnot be rátionally addréssed, "*O thou*," seem, of necéssity, to want the vócative case :—as, nē'mō, *nobody*, nūl'lŭs, *no one*, quŏt, *how mány*, ĕ'gŏ, *I*, sŭ'ī, *of himsélf*, hīc, *this one.*

[77] It may be remárked, that to *hīc*, and ány of its cáses énding in *o* or in *s*, there is óften ádded the sýllable *-cĕ* ; as, *hīc'cĕ*, *hōc'cĕ*, *hūjūs'cĕ*, *hīs'cĕ* : and occásionally *-cĭnĕ*, to ány case énding in *c*. This prónoun is álso compoúnded with *ĭl'lĕ* and with *ĭs'tĕ* ; as, *ĭl'līc*, *ĭl'læc*, *ĭl'lōc*, and, *ĭst'hīc*, *ĭst'hæc*, *ĭst'hōc*, vèl *ĭst'hūc*. This last is fréquently wrítten withoút the *h*. And with the génitive *hū'jŭs*, and líkewise with *ē'jŭs* and *cū'jŭs*, is óftentimes read the génitive of *mŏ'dŭs*, adjúnctively : as, hūjūs'mŏdī, *on this wise* or *of this mánner* : ējūs'mŏdī, *of that mánner* ; cūjūs'mŏdī, *of which sort*, or, interrógatively, *of what mánner* or *on what wise?* And as *hū'jŭs* takes *-cĕ* áfter it, (as has been said abóve) so *ē'jŭs* and *cū'jŭs* have sómetimes the same adjúnctive : as, ējūs'cĕ, *of*

Of Verbs there are two Voices:—

I. The Ac′tive, énding in *-ŏ;* as ă′mŏ, *I love.*
II. The Pássive, énding in *-ŏr;* as ă′mŏr, *I am lóved.*

Of Verbs énding in *-ŏ*, some are áctives tránsitive: as, vīn′cŏ, *I cónquer;* and these, símply by chánging *ŏ* ínto *-ŏr*, becóme verbs pássive; as, vīn′cŏr, *I am cónquered.* Some are námed neúters, and íntransitives; as, gaū′dĕŏ, *I am glad:* and these are néver made pássives.

Some verbs énding in *-ŏr*, are cálled depónents,—and have an áctive significátion:—as, lŏ′quŏr, *I speak.* And some few are neúters:—as, glō′rĭŏr, *I boast.*[78]

*Note* I. That verbs neúter énding in *-ŏr*, and verbs depónent, are declíned like verbs pássive,—but with gérunds and súpines like verbs áctive.

II. A verb is cálled tránsitive when the áction pásses on to the noun fóllowing:—as, vīn′cŏ tē, *I cónquer thee;* vĕ′nĕrŏr Dĕ′ŭm, *I wórship God.*

III. A verb is cálled íntransitive, or neúter, when the áction does not pass on, or requíre a fóllowing noun: as, cūr′rŏ, *I run;* glō′rĭŏr, *I boast.*

IV. Verbs that have dífferent pérsons are cálled verbs pérsonal:—as, ĕ′gŏ ă′mŏ, *I love;* tū ă′mās, *thou lóvest.*

And such as have not dífferent pérsons are cálled verbs ímpersonal:—as, tæ′dĕt, *it irks;* ŏpŏr′tĕt, *it behóves.*

---

*that*, póintingly: cūjūs′cĕ, *of whose:* or *of what?* Betweén the génitive síngular álso of those prónouns, and that of *mŏ′dŭs*, this frágment of *ĕc′cĕ* is óften introdúced: as, hūjūscĕ′mŏdī, *of this véry sort.*

78 *Incéptive Verbs* are such as índicate that a begínning has been made, and they are fórmed from the sécond pérson síngular of the présent of the indícative of some símple verb of kíndred meáning, by the addítion of *-cŏ:*—hence they all end in *-scŏ;* as călēs′cŏ, *I wax hot*, from că′lĕŏ, că′lēs, *I am hot.*

*Frequéntative Verbs* are such as implý fréquency or repetítion of that which is the súbject of the verb:—as, clā′mĭtŏ, *I exclaím fréquently*, from clā′mŏ, *I exclaím;* cūr′sŏ and cūr′sĭtŏ, *I run óften*, from cūr′rŏ, *I run;* jāc′tŏ and jāc′tĭtŏ, *I fling óften*, from jă′cĭŏ, *I cast.* All frequéntative verbs in *-ĭtŏ* are fórmed from verbs of the first conjugátion, by chánging the final *-ū* of the last súpine ínto *-ĭtŏ.*

*Desíderative Verbs* expréss some wish or desíre,—and are all of the fourth cónjugation; béing fórmed by the convérsion of *-ū* of the last súpine of verbs ínto *-ŭ′rĭŏ;* as, ēsŭ′rĭŏ, *I desíre to eat*, from ē′sū, *to be eáten.*

## OF MOODS.

There are five moods; the indícative, the impérative, the poténtial, the subjúnctive, and the infínitive.

The indícative mood eíther declåres a thing pósitively, as ĕ′gŏ, ă′mō, *I love;* else it asks a quéstion, as ă′mās tū? *Dost thou love?*

The impérative mood commánds or entreáts: as, vĕ′nī hūc, *come hither;* pār′cĕ mĭ′hĭ, *spare me.*

It is álso known in En′glish by the sign *let;* as ĕā′mŭs, *let us go.*

The poténtial mood implíes "*pówer*" or "*dúty;*" and in En′glish is cómmonly known by these signs, *may, can, might, would, could, should,* or *ought:*—as, ă′mēm, *I may love;* ămāvīs′sēm, *I might have lóved;* and the like.

The subjúnctive mood in Látin díffers from the poténtial, ónly in that it is subjoíned to anóther verb góing befóre it in the same séntence; and has álways some conjúnction, or indéfinite word, joíned to it: as, ĕ′rām mĭ′sĕr cŭm ămā′rēm, *I was míserable when I lóved,* that is, *when I was-in-love;* nĕ′scĭō quā′lĭs sĭt, *I know not what sort of man he is.*

The infínitive mood hath neíther númber, pérson, nor nóminative case; and is (cómmonly) known by the sign *to;* as, ămā′rĕ, *to love.*

## OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three gérunds, énding in *-dī, -dŏ, -dŭm,* and which have an áctive signification:—as, ămān′dī, *of lóving;* ămān′dŏ, *in lóving;* ămān′dŭm, *lóving.*

The Súpines of verbs are two:—

The one énding in *-ŭm,* which sígnifies áctively:—as, ĕ′ō ămā′tŭm, *I go to love.*

The óther énding in *-ū,* and háving for the most part a pássive signification:—as, dīffĭ′cĭlĭs ămā′tū, *hard or difficult to be lóved.*

## OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

In Verbs there are five ténses, or times, expréssing an áction or affirmátion: viz. the présent, the preterímperfect, the preterpérfect, the preterplúperfect, and the fúture.

I. The présent tense speaks of a thing présent, or now dóing :—as, ă′mō̆, *I love* or *am lóving.*

II. The preterímperfect tense speaks of a thing which was dóing at some time past, and not then términated or énded : as, ămā′bām, *I did love* or *was lóving.*

III. The preterpérfect tense speaks of a thing alreády done and past :—as, ămā′vī, *I lóved* or *have lóved.*

IV. The preterplúperfect tense reférs to a thing done at some time past, and términated or énded befóre sómething else spóken of :—as, ămā′vĕrām ān′tĕ tūnc tēm′pŏrĭs, *I had lóved befóre that time.*

V. The fúture tense speaks of a thing to be done hereáfter : as, ămā′bō̆, *I shall love ;* ămā′bĭs, *thou wilt love.*

## OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two númbers, the síngular and the plúral : and three pérsons in each númber ;—as,

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ĕ′gŏ ă′mō̆, | *I love,* | Nōs ămā′mŭs, | *we love,* |
| Tū ă′mās, | *thou lóvest,* | Vōs ămā′tĭs, | *ye love,* |
| Il′lĕ, ă′măt, | *he loves,* | Īl′lī ă′mānt, | *they love.* |

*Note.* All nouns are of the third pérson, excépt ĕ′gŏ, *I*, nōs, *we*, tū, *thou* or *you*, and vōs, *you* or *ye :* but nouns of the vócative case are próperly of the sécond pérson, becaúse *tū* or *vōs* (accórding as the noun is síngular or plúral,) must nécessarily be understoód.

---

## OF THE VERB, ĒS′SĔ, *TO BE.*

Befóre óther verbs can be declíned, it is nécessary to learn the verb ēs′sĕ, *to be ;* which is váried as fóllows :—

Sŭm, ĕs, fŭ′ī, ēs′sĕ, fŭtū′rŭs, *to be.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*am.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Sŭm, | *I am,* |
| | ĕs, | *thou art,* |
| | ēst, | *he is,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | sŭ′mŭs, | *we are,* |
| | ēs′tĭs, | *ye are,* |
| | sūnt, | *they are.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ′rām, | *I was,* |
| | ĕ′rās, | *thou wast,* |
| | ĕ′răt, | *he was,* |
| *Plúral.* | ĕrā′mŭs, | *we were,* |
| | ĕrā′tĭs, | *ye were,* |
| | ĕ′rānt, | *they were.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fŭ′ī, | *I have been,* |
| | fŭīs′tī, | *thou hast been,* |
| | fŭ′ĭt, | *he has been,* |
| *Plúral.* | fŭ′ĭmŭs, | *we have been,* |
| | fŭīs′tĭs, | *ye have been,* |
| | fŭē′rūnt *vèl* fŭē′rĕ, | *they have been.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*had.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fŭ′ĕrām, | *I had been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrās, | *thou hadst been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrăt, | *he had been,* |
| *Plúral.* | fŭĕrā′mŭs, | *we had been,* |
| | fŭĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrānt, | *they had been.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ′rō, | *I shall be,*[78] |
| | ĕ′rĭs, | *thou wilt be,* |
| | ĕ′rĭt, | *he will be,* |

---

[78] Though the sign of the fúture tense be "*shall* or *will,*" yet the fórmer is génerally úsed with the first pérson only; the látter, with the sécond and third pérsons: for the expréssion "*I will be,*" means ráther, "*I am willing to be,*" than "*I shall be;*" and in like mánner, by "*you shall be,*" we ríghtly understánd "*you will be compélled to be.*" Yet mány speákers confoúnd "*shall*" and "*will*" with each othér, and this not unfréquently to the útter pervérsion of the sense. But there are ínstances in which, with the first pérson, "*will*" is préferable to "*shall:*" and óthers in which, with the sécond and third pérsons, "*shall*" is more éligible than "*will.*"

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | ĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we shall be,* |
| | ĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye will be,* |
| | ĕ'rŭnt, | *they will be.* |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Sīs, ĕs, ēs'tŏ, | *be thou,* |
| | sĭt, ēs'tŏ, | *let him be,* |
| *Plúral.* | sī'mŭs, | *let us be,* |
| | sī'tĭs, ēs'tĕ, ēstō'tĕ, | *be ye,* |
| | sīnt, sŭn'tŏ, | *let them be.* |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can,* or *should.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Sīm, | *I may be,*[79] |
| | sīs, | *thou máyest be,* |
| | sĭt, | *he may be,* |
| *Plúral.* | sī'mŭs, | *we may be,* |
| | sī'tĭs, | *ye may be,* |
| | sīnt, | *they may be.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ēs'sēm, *vèl* fŏ'rēm, | *I might be,* |
| | ēs'sēs, *vèl* fŏ'rēs, | *thou míghtest be,* |
| | ēs'sĕt, *vèl* fŏ'rĕt, | *he might be.* |
| *Plúral.* | ēssē'mŭs, *vèl* fŏrē'mŭs, | *we might be,* |
| | ēssē'tĭs, *vèl* fŏrē'tĭs, | *ye might be,* |
| | ēs'sēnt, *vèl* fŏ'rēnt, | *they might be.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fŭ'ĕrĭm, | *I may have been,* |
| | fŭ'ĕrĭs, | *thou máyest have been,* |
| | fŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he may have been,* |

[79] Here, want of room prevénts us from gíving with the séveral pérsons of the dífferent ténses, all the signs belónging to those ténses ; but cómmon sense will suggést, that they may (and ought to) be táken with each pérson, síngular and plúral:—thus, for the présent tense of the poténtial mood, *I may, can,* or *should be*, *thou máyest, canst,* or *shóuldest be* ; *he may, can,* or *should be* ; and so forth : agaín, for the preterímperfect, *I might* or *could be* ; *thou mightest* or *cóuldest be* ; *he might* or *could be* ; and so on.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | fŭĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may have been,* |
| | fŭĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may have been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrīnt, | *they may have been.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | Fŭīs′sēm, | *I might have been,* |
| | fŭīs′sēs, | *thou mightest have been,* |
| | fŭīs′sĕt, | *he might have been,* |
| *Plúral.* | fŭīssē′mŭs, | *we might have been,* |
| | fŭīssē′tĭs, | *ye might have been,* |
| | fŭīs′sēnt, | *they might have been.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | Fŭ′ĕrŏ, | *I shall have been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrīs, | *thou wilt have been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrĭt, | *he will have been,* |
| *Plúral.* | fŭĕrĭ′mŭs, | *we shall have been,* |
| | fŭĕrĭ′tĭs, | *ye will have been,* |
| | fŭ′ĕrīnt, | *they will have been.* |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.
Ēs′sĕ, *to be.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Fŭīs′sĕ, *to have been.*

Fúture Tense.
Fŏ′rĕ *vèl* Fŭtū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, *to be aboút to be.*

Párticiple of the fúture in *-rŭs.*
Fŭtū′rŭs, *aboút to be.*

## DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

Verbs have four conjugátions, both in the áctive and pássive voice.

The first conjugátion of Verbs áctive hath *a* long befóre *-rĕ* of the infínitive mood ; as ămā′rĕ, *to love.*

The sécond conjugátion hath *e* long befóre -*rĕ* of the infíni tive mood; as mŏnē′rĕ, *to advíse.*

The third conjugátion hath *e* short before -*rĕ* of the infíni tive mood; as rĕ′gĕrĕ, *to rule.*

The fourth conjugátion hath *i* long befóre -*rĕ* of the infíni tive mood; as aūdī′rĕ, *to hear.*

VERBS AC′TIVE in -*ō* are declíned áfter these exámples.

1. Ă′mō, ă′mās, ămā′vī, ămā′rĕ, ămān′dī, ămān′dō, ămān′dŭm, ămā′tŭm, ămā′tū, ă′māns, ămātū′rŭs, *to love.*

2. Mŏ′nĕō, mŏ′nēs, mŏ′nŭī, mŏnē′rĕ, mŏnēn′dī, mŏnēn′dō mŏnēn′dŭm, mŏ′nĭtŭm, mŏ′nĭtū, mŏ′nēns, mŏnĭtū′rŭs, *to advise*

3. Rĕ′gō, rĕ′gĭs, rēx′ī, rĕ′gĕrĕ, rĕgēn′dī, rĕgēn′dō, rĕgēn′dŭm, rēc′tŭm, rēc′tū, rĕ′gēns, rēctū′rŭs, *to rule.*

4. Aū′dĭō, aū′dīs, aūdī′vī, aūdī′rĕ, aūdĭēn′dī, aūdĭēn′dō, aūdĭēn′dŭm, aūdī′tŭm, aūdī′tū, aū′dĭēns, aūdītū′rŭs, *to hear.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—Ă′mō, *I love.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I do love* or *am loving.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă′-mō, | *I love,* |
| | ă′-mās, | *thou lóvest,* |
| | ă′-măt, | *he loves,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mā′mŭs, | *we love,* |
| | ă-mā′tĭs, | *ye love,* |
| | ă′-mānt, | *they love.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was lóving* or *did love.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă-mā′bām, | *I did love,* |
| | ă-mā′bās, | *thou didst love,* |
| | ă-mā′băt, | *he did love,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mābā′mŭs, | *we did love,* |
| | ă-mābā′tĭs, | *ye did love,* |
| | ă-mā′bānt, | *they did love.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I lóved* or *have lóved.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā′-vī, | *I lóved,* |
| | ămā-vĭs′tī, | *thou lóvedst,* |
| | ămā′-vĭt, | *he lóved,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | ămā'-vĭmŭs, | *we lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ămā-vĭs'tĭs, | *ye lóved,* |
| | ămā-vē'rūnt *vĕl* -vērĕ, | *they lóved.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had lóved.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Ămā'-vĕrām, | *I had lóved,* |
| *Síngular.* | ămā'-vĕrās, | *thou hadst lóved,* |
| | ămā'-vĕrăt, | *he had lóved,* |
| | ămā-vĕrā'mŭs, | *we had lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ămā-vĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had lóved,* |
| | ămā'vĕrānt, | *they had lóved.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will love.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Ă-mā'bŏ, | *I shall love,* |
| *Síngular.* | ă-mā'bĭs, | *thou wilt love,* |
| | ă-mā'bĭt, | *he will love,* |
| | ă-mā bĭmŭs, | *we shall love,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mā'bĭtĭs, | *ye will love,* |
| | ă-mā'būnt, | *they will love.* |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă'-mā, ă-mā'tŏ, | *love thou,* |
| | ă'-mĕt, ă-mā'tŏ, | *let him* or *her love,* |
| | ă-mē'mŭs, | *let us love,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mā'tĕ, ă-mātō'tĕ, | *love ye,* |
| | ă'-mēnt, ă-mān'tŏ, | *let them love.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Ă'-mēm. | *I may love,* |
| *Síngular.* | ă -mēs, | *thou máyest love,* |
| | ă'-mĕt, | *he may love,* |
| | ă-mē'mŭs, | *we may love,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mē'tĭs, | *ye may love,* |
| | ă'-mēnt, | *they may love.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Ă-mā'rēm, | *I might love,* |
| *Síngular.* | ă-mā'rēs, | *thou mightest love,* |
| | ă-mā'rĕt, | *he might love,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | ă-mārē'mŭs,<br>ă-mārē'tĭs,<br>ă-mā'rēnt, | *we might love,*<br>*ye might love,*<br>*they might love.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may have, should have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'-vĕrĭm,<br>ămā'-vĕrĭs,<br>ămā'-vĕrĭt, | *I may have lóved,*<br>*thou máyest have lóved,*<br>*he may have lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | Ămā-vĕ'rĭmŭs,<br>ămā-vĕ'rĭtĭs,<br>ămā'-vĕrĭnt, | *we may have lóved,*<br>*ye may have lóved,*<br>*they may have lóved.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might have, would have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā-vĭs'sēm,<br>ămā-vĭs'sēs,<br>ămā-vĭs'sĕt, | *I might have lóved,*<br>*thou míghtest have lóved,*<br>*he might have lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ămā-vĭssē'mŭs,<br>ămā-vĭssē'tĭs,<br>ămā-vĭs'sēnt, | *we might have lóved,*<br>*ye might have lóved,*<br>*they might have lóved.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'-vĕrō,<br>ămā'-vĕrĭs,<br>ămā'-vĕrĭt, | *I shall have lóved,*<br>*thou wilt have lóved,*<br>*he will have lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ămā-vĕrī'mŭs,<br>ămā-vĕrĭtĭs,<br>ămā'-vĕrĭnt, | *we shall have lóved,*<br>*ye will have lóved,*<br>*they will have lóved.* |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Ă-mā'rĕ, *to love.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Amā-vĭs'sĕ, *to have lóved.*

Fúture Tense.

Ămā-tū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be aboút to love.*

GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| A-măn'dī, | *of lóving,* |
| ă-măn'dŏ, | *in lóving,* |
| ă-măn'dŭm, | *lóving.* |

SUPINES.

Ămā'-tŭm, *to love.* Ămā'-tū, *to be lóved.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Présent,* Ă-māns, *lóving.*
*Fúture,* Ămā-tū-rŭs, *abóut to love.*

*Observátion.* In Verbs séveral ténses are fórmed of the preterpérfect tense of the Indícative Mood: as, of *ămā'-vī*, are fórmed :—

1. The plúperfect of the same mood, . . . . *ămā'-vĕrăm,*
2. The pérfect of the poténtial mood, . . . . *ămā'-vĕrĭm,*
3. The plúperfect of the same mood, . . . . *ămā-vĭs'sĕm,*
4. The fúture tense of the same mood, . . . *ămā'-vĕrŏ,*
5. The préterite of the infínitive mood, . . . *ămā-vĭs'sĕ.*[80]

---

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—Mŏ'nĕō, *I advíse.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.— *I do advíse* or *am advísing.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ'-nĕō, | *I advíse,* |
| | mŏ'-nēs, | *thou advísest,* |
| | mŏ'-nĕt, | *he* or *she advíses,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nē'mŭs, | *we advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē'tĭs, | *ye advíse,* |
| | mŏ'-nĕnt, | *they advíse.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did advíse* or *was advísing.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē'băm, | *I did advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē'bās, | *thou didst advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē'băt, | *he did advíse,* |

[80] From *-ŏ* of the présent, come *-băm, -bŏ, -ăm, -ĕm* and *-ns*: from *-ŭm* are deríved *-ū* and *-rŭs*: from *-rĕ*, comes *-rĕm*, and *-ā, -ē, -ĕ*, or *-ī* of the sécond pérson síngular of the impérative. The gérund takes its rise from *-ns*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nēbā′mŭs, | *we did advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nēbā′tĭs, | *ye did advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′bānt, | *they did advíse.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I advísed* or *have advísed.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ′nŭ-ī, | *I advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-īs tī, | *thou advísedst,* |
| | mŏ′nŭ-ĭt, | *he advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏnŭ′-ĭmŭs, | *we advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-īs′tĭs, | *ye advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-ē′rūnt *vèl* -ē′rĕ, | *they advísed.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had advísed.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏnŭ′-ĕrām, | *I had advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrās, | *thou hadst advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrăt, | *he had advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏnŭ-ĕrā′mŭs, | *we had advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-ĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrānt, | *they had advísed.* |

5. Future Tense.—*I shall* or *will advíse.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē′bŏ, | *I shall advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′bĭs, | *thou wilt advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′bĭt, | *he will advíse,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nē′bĭmŭs, | *we shall advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′bĭtĭs, | *ye will advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′būnt, | *they will advíse.* |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ′-nē, mŏ-nē′tŏ, | *advíse thou,* |
| | mŏ′-nĕăt, mŏ-nē′tŏ, | *let him advíse,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nĕā′mŭs, | *let us advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′tĕ, mŏ-nētŏ′tĕ, | *advíse ye,* |
| | mŏ′-nĕānt, mŏ-nēn′tŏ, | *let them advíse.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ′-nĕām, | *I may advíse,* |
| | mŏ′-nĕās, | *thou máyest advíse,* |
| | mŏ′-nĕăt, | *he may advíse,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nĕā′mŭs, | *we may advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nĕā′tĭs, | *ye may advíse,* |
| | mŏ′-nĕānt, | *they may advíse.* |

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē′rēm, | *I might advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′rēs, | *thou míghtest advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′rĕt, | *he might advíse,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nērē′mŭs, | *we might advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nērē′tĭs, | *ye might advíse,* |
| | mŏ-nē′rēnt, | *they might advíse.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may have, should have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭm, | *I may have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭs, | *thon máyest have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭt, | *he may have advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏnŭ-ĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may have advísed.* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭnt, | *they may have advísed.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *could have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏnŭ-īs′sēm, | *I might have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-īs′sēs, | *thou míghtest have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-īs′sĕt, | *he might have advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏnŭ-īssē′mŭs, | *we might have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-īssē′tĭs, | *ye might have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-īs′sēnt, | *they might have advísed.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏnŭ′-ĕrō, | *I shall have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrīs, | *thou wilt have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrĭt, | *he will have advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏnŭ-ĕrī′mŭs, | *we shall have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ-ĕrī′tĭs, | *ye will have advísed,* |
| | mŏnŭ′-ĕrīnt, | *they will have advísed.* |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Mŏ-nē′rĕ, *to advíse.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.
Mŏnŭ-īs'sĕ, *to have advísed.*

Future Tense.
Mŏnĭ-tū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be about to advíse.*

GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Mŏ-nĕn'dī, | *of advísing,* |
| mŏ-nĕn'dŏ, | *in advísing,* |
| mŏ-nĕn'dŭm, | *advísing.* |

SUPINES.

Mŏ'nĭ-tŭm, *to advíse.* Mŏ'nĭ-tū, *to be advísed.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Présent,* Mŏ'-nēns, *advísing.*
*Fúture,* Mŏnĭ-tū'rŭs, *aboút to advíse.*

---

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕ'gŏ, *I rule.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do rule* or *am rúling.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ'-gŏ, | *I rule,* |
| | rĕ'-gĭs, | *thou rúlest,* |
| | rĕ'-gĭt, | *he rules,* |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ'-gĭmŭs, | *we rule,* |
| | rĕ'-gĭtĭs, | *ye rule,* |
| | rĕ'-gūnt, | *they rule.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was rúling* or *did rule.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ-gē'bām, | *I was rúling,* |
| | rĕ-gē'bās, | *thou wast rúling,* |
| | rĕ-gē'băt, | *he was rúling,* |
| *Plural.* | rĕ-gēbā'mŭs, | *we were rúling,* |
| | rĕ-gēbā'tĭs, | *ye were rúling,* |
| | rĕ-gē'bānt, | *they were rúling.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I rúled* or *have rúled.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēx'-ī, | *I rúled,* |
| | rēx-īs'tī, | *thou rúledst.* |
| | rēx'-ĭt, | *he rúled,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | rēx′-ĭmŭs, | *we rúled,* |
| | rēx-īs′tĭs, | *ye rúled,* |
| | rēx-ē′rūnt *vèl* -ē′rĕ, | *they rúled.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had rúled.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēx′-ĕrām, | *I had rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrās, | *thou hadst rúled,* |
| | rēx′ĕrăt, | *he had rúled,* |
| *Plúral.* | rēx-ĕrā′mŭs, | *we had rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrānt, | *they had rúled.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will rúle.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-gām, | *I shall rúle,* |
| | rĕ′-gēs, | *thou wilt rúle,* |
| | rĕ′-gĕt, | *he will rúle,* |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gē′mŭs, | *we shall rule,* |
| | rĕ-gē′tĭs, | *ye will rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gēnt, | *they will rule.* |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-gĕ, rĕ′-gĭtŏ, | *rule thou,* |
| | rĕ′-găt, rĕ′-gĭtŏ, | *let him rule,* |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gā′mŭs, | *let us rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gĭtĕ, rĕ-gĭtō′tĕ, | *rule ye,* |
| | rĕ′-gānt, rĕ-gūn′tŏ, | *let them rule-* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-gām, | *I may rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gās, | *thou máyest rule,* |
| | rĕ-găt, | *he may rule,* |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gā′mŭs, | *we may rule,* |
| | rĕ-gā′tĭs, | *ye may rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gānt, | *they may rule,* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-gĕrēm, | *I might rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gĕrēs, | *thou mightest rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gĕrĕt, | *he might rule,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gĕrē′mŭs, | *we might rule,* |
| | rĕ-gĕrē′tĭs, | *ye might rule,* |
| | rĕ′-gĕrēnt, | *they might rule.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may have, should have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēx′-ĕrĭm, | *I may have rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrĭs, | *thou máyest have rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrĭt, | *he may have rúled,* |
| *Plúral.* | rēx-ĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may have rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may have rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrĭnt, | *they may have rúled.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might have, would have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēx-ĭs′sēm, | *I might have rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĭs′sēs, | *thou míghtest have rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĭs′sĕt, | *he might have rúled,* |
| *Plural.* | rēx-ĭssē′mŭs, | *we might have rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĭssē′tĭs, | *ye might have rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĭs′sēnt, | *they might have rúled.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēx′-ĕrŏ, | *I shall have rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrĭs, | *thou wilt have ruled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrĭt, | *he will have rúled,* |
| *Plúral.* | rēx-ĕrĭ′mŭs, | *we shall have rúled,* |
| | rēx-ĕrĭ′tĭs, | *ye will have rúled,* |
| | rēx′-ĕrĭnt, | *they will have rúled.* |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Rĕ′-gĕrĕ, *to rule.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Rēx-ĭs′sĕ, *to have ruled.*

Fúture Tense.

Rēc-tū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Rĕ-gēn′dī, | *of rúling,* |
| rĕ-gēn′dō, | *in rúling,* |
| rĕ-gēn′dŭm, | *rúling.* |

SUPINES.

Rēc′-tŭm, *to rule.* Rēc′-tū, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Présent,* | Rĕ′-gēns, | *rúling,* |
| *Fúture,* | Rēc-tū′rŭs, | *aboút to rule.* |

---

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Aū′dĭō, *I hear.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do hear* or *am heáring.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū′-dĭō, | *I hear,* |
| | aū′-dīs, | *thou heárest,* |
| | aū′-dĭt, | *he hears,* |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dī′mŭs, | *we hear,* |
| | aū-dī′tĭs, | *ye hear,* |
| | aū′-dĭūnt, | *they hear.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was heáring* or *did hear.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dĭē′bām, | *I did hear,* |
| | aū-dĭē′bās, | *thou didst hear,* |
| | aū-dĭē′băt, | *he did hear,* |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭēbā′mŭs, | *we did hear,* |
| | aū-dĭēbā′tĭs, | *ye did hear,* |
| | aū-dĭē′bānt, | *they did hear.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I heard* or *have heard.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī′-vī, | *I heard,* |
| | aūdī-vīs′tī, | *thou heárdest,* |
| | aūdī′-vĭt, | *he heard,* |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī′-vĭmŭs, | *we heard,* |
| | aūdī-vīs′tĭs, | *ye heard,* |
| | aūdī-vē′rūnt *vèl* -vē′rĕ, | *they heard.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had heard.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī'-vĕrām, | *I had heard,* |
| | aūdī'-vĕrās, | *thou hadst heard,* |
| | aūdī'-vĕrăt, | *he had heard,* |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī-vĕrā'mŭs, | *we hȧd heard,* |
| | aūdī-vĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had heard,* |
| | aūdī'-vĕrānt, | *they had heard.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will hear.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū'-dĭām, | *I shall hear,* |
| | aū'-dĭēs, | *thou wilt hear,* |
| | aū'-dĭĕt, | *he will hear,* |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭē'mŭs, | *we shall hear,* |
| | aū-dĭē'tĭs, | *ye will hear,* |
| | aū'-dĭēnt, | *they will hear.* |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū'-dī, aū-dī'tŏ, | *hear thou,* |
| | aū'-dĭăt, aū-dī'tŏ, | *let him hear,* |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭā'mŭs, | *let us hear,* |
| | aū-dī'tĕ, aū-dītō'tĕ, | *hear ye,* |
| | aū'-dĭānt, aū-dĭūn'tŏ, | *let them hear.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū'-dĭām, | *I may hear,* |
| | aū'-dĭās, | *thou máyest hear,* |
| | aū'-dĭăt, | *he may hear,* |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭā'mŭs, | *we may hear,* |
| | aū-dĭā'tĭs, | *ye may hear,* |
| | aū'-dĭānt, | *they may hear.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might, could.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dī'rēm, | *I might hear,* |
| | aū-dī'rēs, | *thou míghtest hear,* |
| | aū-dī'rĕt, | *he might hear,* |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dīrē'mŭs, | *we might hear,* |
| | aū-dīrē'tĭs, | *ye might hear,* |
| | aū-dī'rēnt, | *they might hear.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense —*may have, should have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | Aūdī′-vĕrĭm, | *I may have heard,* |
| | aūdī′-vĕrĭs, | *thou máyest have heard,* |
| | aūdī′-vĕrĭt, | *he may have heard,* |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī-vĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may have heard,* |
| | aūdī-vĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may have heard,* |
| | aūdī′-vĕrīnt, | *they may have heard.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī-vīs′sēm, | *I might have heard,* |
| | aūdī-vīs′sēs, | *thou míghtest have heard,* |
| | aūdī-vīs′sĕt, | *he might have heard,* |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī-vīssē′mŭs, | *we might have heard,* |
| | aūdī-vīssē′tĭs, | *ye might have heard,* |
| | aūdī-vīs′sēnt, | *they might have heard,* |

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī′-vĕrŏ, | *I shall have heard,* |
| | aūdī′-vĕrīs, | *thou wilt have heard,* |
| | aūdī′-vĕrĭt, | *he will have heard,* |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī-vĕrī′mŭs, | *we shall have heard,* |
| | aūdī-vĕrī′tĭs, | *ye will have heard,* |
| | aūdī′-vĕrīnt, | *they will have heard.* |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Aū-dī′rĕ, *to hear.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Aūdī-vīs′sĕ, *to have heard.*

Fúture Tense.

Aūdī-tū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, *to be aboút to hear.*

### GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Aū-dīēn′dī, | *of heáring,* |
| aū-dīēn′dŏ, | *in heáring,* |
| aū-dīēn′dŭm, | *heáring.* |

SUPINES.

Aūdī′-tŭm, *to hear.*  Aūdī′-tū, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Présent,* Aū′-dĭēns, *heáring,*
*Fúture,* Aūdī-tū′rŭs, *aboút to hear.*

---

## DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *-ŏr* are thus declined:

1. Ă′mŏr, ămā′rĭs *vèl* ămā′rĕ, ămā′tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, ămā′rī, ămā′tŭs, ămān′dŭs, *to be lóved.*

2. Mŏ′nĕŏr, mŏnē′rĭs *vèl* mŏnē′rĕ, mŏ′nĭtŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, mŏnē′rī, mŏ′nĭtŭs, mŏnēn′dŭs, *to be advised.*

3. Rĕ′gŏr, rĕ′gĕrĭs *vèl* rĕ′gĕrĕ, rēc′tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, rĕ′gī, rēc′tŭs, rĕgēn′dŭs, *to be rúled.*

4. Aū′dĭŏr, aūdī′rĭs *vèl* aūdī′rĕ, aūdī′tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, aūdī′rī, aūdī′tŭs, aūdĭēn′dŭs, *to be heard.*

---

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—Ămŏr, *I am lóved.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă′-mŏr, | *I am lóved,* |
| | ă-mā′rĭs *vèl* ă-mā′rĕ, | *thou art lóved,* |
| | ă-mā′tŭr, | *he is lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mā′mŭr, | *we are lóved,* |
| | ă-mā′mĭnī, | *ye are lóved,* |
| | ă-mān′tŭr, | *they are lóved.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | ă-mā′băr, | *I was lóved,* |
| | ă-mābā′rĭs *vèl* ă-mābā′rĕ, | *thou wast lóved,* |
| | ă-mābā′tŭr, | *he was lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mābā′mŭr, | *we were lóved,* |
| | ă-mābā′mĭnī, | *ye were lóved,* |
| | ă-mābān′tŭr, | *they were lóved.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *have been.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'-tŭs sŭm, | *I have been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tŭs ĕs, | *thou hast been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tŭs ēst, | *he has been lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ămā'-tī sŭ'mŭs, | *we have been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tī ēs'tĭs, | *ye have been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tī sūnt, | *they have been lóved.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *had been.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'-tŭs ĕ'rām, | *I had been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tŭs ĕ'rās, | *thou hadst been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tŭs ĕ'răt, | *he had been lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ămā'-tī ĕrā'mŭs, | *we had been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tī ĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had been lóved,* |
| | ămā'-tī ĕ'rānt, | *they had been lóved.* |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă-mā'bŏr, | *I shall be lóved,* |
| | ă-mā'bĕrĭs *vèl* ă-mā'bĕrĕ, | *thou wilt be lóved,* |
| | ă-mā'bĭtŭr, | *he will be lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mā'bĭmŭr, | *we shall be lóved,* |
| | ă-mābĭ'mĭnī, | *ye will be lóved,* |
| | ă-mābūn'tŭr, | *they will be lóved.* |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă-mā'rĕ, ămā'tŏr, | *be thou lóved,* |
| | ă-mē'tŭr, ă-mā'tŏr, | *let him be lóved,* |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mē'mŭr, | *let us be lóved,* |
| | ă-mā'mĭnī, ă-mā'mĭnŏr, | *be ye lóved,* |
| | ă-mēn'tŭr, ă-mān'tŏr, | *let them be lóved.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă'-mĕr, | *I may* | *be lóved.* |
| | ă-mē'rĭs *vèl* ă-mē'rĕ, | *thou máyest* | |
| | ă-mē'tŭr, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mē'mŭr, | *we may* | |
| | ă-mē'mĭnī, | *ye may* | |
| | ă-mēn'tŭr, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ă-mā'rĕr, | *I might* | *be lóved.* |
| | ă-mārē'rĭs *vèl* ă-mārē'rĕ, | *thou mightest* | |
| | ă-mārē'tŭr, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | ă-mārē'mŭr, | *we might* | |
| | ă-mārē'mĭnī, | *ye might* | |
| | ă-mārēn'tŭr, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vèl* fŭ'ĕrĭm, *may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'-tŭs sīm, | *I may* | *have been lóved.* |
| | ămā'-tŭs sīs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | ămā'-tŭs sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | ămā'-tī sī'mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | ămā'-tī sī'tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | ămā'-tī sīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vèl* fŭīs'sēm, *might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'-tŭs ēs'sēm, | *I might* | *have been lóved.* |
| | ămā'-tŭs ēs'sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | ămā'-tŭs ēs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | ămā'-tī ēssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | ăm '-tī ēssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | ămā'-tī ēs'sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vèl* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ămā'tŭs ĕ'rŏ, | *I shall* | *have been lóved.* |
| | ămā' tŭs ĕ'rĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | ămā' tŭs ĕ'rĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | ămā'-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | ămā'-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | ămā'-tī ĕ'rūnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Ă-mā'rī, *to be loved.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Ămā-tŭm ēs'sĕ *vèl* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been lóved.*

Fúture Tense.

Ămā'-tŭm ī'rī, *to be aboút to be lóved.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Past,* Ă-mā'tŭs, *lóved* or *háving been lóved.*
*Fúture,* Ă-mān'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be lóved.*

---

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—Mŏ'nĕŏr, *I am advísed.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.— *am.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ'-nĕŏr, | *I am advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nē'rĭs *vèl* mŏ-nē'rĕ, | *thou art advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nē'tŭr, | *he is advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nē'mŭr, | *we are advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nē'mĭnī, | *ye are advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nēn'tŭr, | *they are advísed.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē'băr, | *I was advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nēbā'rĭs *vèl* mŏ-nēbā'rĕ, | *thou wast advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nēbā'tŭr, | *he was advísed,* |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nēbā'mŭr, | *we were advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nēbā'mĭnī, | *ye were advísed,* |
| | mŏ-nēbān'tŭr, | *they were advísed.* |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs sŭm, | *I have* | *been advísed.* |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕs, | *thou hast* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēst, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ'nĭ-tī sŭ'mŭs, | *we have* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ēs'tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī sūnt, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *had been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rām, | *I had* | *been advísed.* |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'răt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rā'mŭs, | *we had,* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had,* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rānt, | *they had,* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē′bŏr, | *I shall* | *be advised.* |
| | mŏ-nē′bĕrĭs *vèl* -nē′bĕrĕ, | *thou wilt* | |
| | mŏ-nē′bĭtŭr, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nē′bĭmŭr, | *we shall* | |
| | mŏ-nēbĭ′mĭnī, | *ye will* | |
| | mŏ-nēbŭn′tŭr, | *they will* | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē′rĕ, mŏ-nē′tŏr, | *be thou* | *advised.* |
| | mŏ-nĕā′tŭr, mŏ-nē′tŏr, | *let him be* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nĕā′mŭr, | *let us be* | |
| | mŏ-nē′mĭnī, mŏ-nē′mĭnŏr, | *be ye* | |
| | mŏ-nĕān′tŭr, mŏ-nēn′tŏr, | *let them be* | |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nĕăr, | *I may* | *be advised.* |
| | mŏ-nĕā′rĭs *vèl* mŏ-nĕā′rĕ, | *thou máyest* | |
| | mŏ-nĕā′tŭr, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nĕā′mŭr, | *we may* | |
| | mŏ-nĕā′mĭnī, | *ye may* | |
| | mŏ-nĕān′tŭr, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ-nē′rĕr, | *I might* | *be advised.* |
| | mŏ-nē′rē′rĭs *vèl* nērē′rĕ, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | mŏ-nērē′tŭr, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ-nērē′mŭr, | *we might* | |
| | mŏ-nērē′mĭnī, | *ye might* | |
| | mŏ-nērēn′tŭr, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vèl* fŭ′ĕrĭm, *may* or *should have been*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ′nĭ-tŭs sīm, | *I may* | *have been advised.* |
| | mŏ′nĭ-tŭs sīs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | mŏ′nĭ-tŭs sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ′nĭ-tī sī′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | mŏ′nĭ-tī sītĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | mŏ′nĭ-tī sĭnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vèl* fŭīs'sēm, *might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēs'sēm, | *I might* | *have been advísed.* |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēs'sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ēs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ'nĭ-tī ēssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ēssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ēs'sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vèl* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rŏ, | *I shall* | *have been advísed,* |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tŭs ĕ'rĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | mŏ'nĭ-tī ĕ'rūnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Mŏ-nē'rī, *to be advísed.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Mŏ'nĭ-tŭm ēs'sĕ *vèl* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been advísed.*

Fúture Tense.

Mŏ'nĭ-tŭm ī'rī, *to be abóut to be advísed.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Présent*, Mŏ'nĭ-tŭs, *advísed* or *háving been advísed.*

*Fúture*, Mŏ-nēn'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be advísed.*

---

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕ'gŏr, *I am rúled.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*am.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ'-gŏr, | *I am rúled,* |
| | rĕ'-gĕrĭs *vèl* rĕ'-gĕrĕ, | *thou art rúled,* |
| | rĕ'-gĭtŭr, | *he is rúled,* |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ'-gĭmŭr, | *we are rúled,* |
| | rĕ-gĭ'mĭnī, | *ye are rúled,* |
| | rĕ-gūn'tŭr, | *they are rúled.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ-gē'băr, | *I was* | *ruled.* |
| | rĕ-gēbā'rĭs *vèl* rĕ-gēbā'rĕ, | *thou wast* | |
| | rĕ-gēbā'tŭr, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gēbā'mŭr, | *we were* | |
| | rĕ-gēbā'mĭnī, | *ye were* | |
| | rĕ-gēbān'tŭr, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēc'-tŭs sŭm, | *I have* | *been ruled.* |
| | rēc'-tŭs ĕs, | *thou hast* | |
| | rēc'-tŭs ēst, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | rēc'-tī sŭ'mŭs, | *we have* | |
| | rēc'-tī ēs'tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | rēc'-tī sŭnt, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *had been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rām, | *I had* | *been ruled.* |
| | rēc'-tŭs ĕ'rās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | rēc'-tŭs ĕ'răt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | rēc'-tī ĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | rēc'-tī ĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | rēc'-tī ĕ'rānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ'-găr, | *I shall* | *be ruled.* |
| | rĕ-gē'rĭs *vèl* rĕ-gē'rĕ,[81] | *thou wilt* | |
| | rĕ-gē'tŭr, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gē'mŭr, | *we shall* | |
| | rĕ-gē'mĭnī, | *ye will* | |
| | rĕ-gēn'tŭr, | *they will* | |

[81] Here we have '*e*' long befóre *-rĕ* and *-rĭs*, in the third conjugátion. In the same tense of the sécond conjugátion we have *ĕ* short befóre *-rĕ* and *-rĭs*. This I méntion with allúsion to an alterátion which I have made in the E'ton text, respécting '*e*' befóre *-rĕ* and *-rĭs*, page 44, abóve. Of the óther conjugátions it is not nécessary here to speak.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-gĕrĕ, rĕ′-gĭtŏr, | *be thou* | *riled.* |
| | rĕ-gā′tŭr, rĕ′-gĭtŏr, | *let him be* | |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gā′mŭr, | *let us be* | |
| | rĕ-gĭ′mĭnī, rĕ-gĭ′mĭnŏr, | *be ye* | |
| | rĕ-gān′tŭr, rĕ-gūn′tŏr, | *let them be* | |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-găr, | *I may be* | *riled.* |
| | rĕ-gā′rĭs *vĕl* rĕ-gā′rĕ, | *thou máyest be* | |
| | rĕ-gā′tŭr, | *he may be* | |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gā′mŭr, | *we may be* | |
| | rĕ-gā′mĭnī, | *ye may be* | |
| | rĕ-gān′tŭr, | *they may be* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rĕ′-gĕrĕr, | *I might* | *be riled.* |
| | rĕ-gĕrē′rĭs *vĕl* rĕ-gĕrē′rĕ, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | rĕ-gĕrē′tŭr, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | rĕ-gĕrē′mŭr, | *we might* | |
| | rĕ-gĕrē′mĭnī, | *ye might* | |
| | rĕ-gĕrĕn′tŭr, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sĭm *vĕl* fŭ′ĕrĭm, *may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēc′-tŭs sĭm, | *I may* | *have been riled.* |
| | rēc′-tŭs sĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | rēc′-tŭs sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | rēc′-tī sĭ′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | rēc′-tī sĭ′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | rēc′-tī sĭnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕs′sĕm *vĕl* fŭĭs′sĕm, *might or would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Rēc′-tŭs ĕs′sĕm, | *I might* | *have been riled.* |
| | rēc′-tŭs ĕs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | rēc′-tŭs ĕs′sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | rēc′-tī ĕssē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | rēc′-tī ĕssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | rēc′-tī ĕs′sĕnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vèl* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular* | Rĕc'-tŭs ĕ'rŏ, | *I shall* | *have been rúled.* |
| | rĕc'-tŭs ĕ'rĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | rĕc'-tŭs ĕ rĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | rĕc'-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | rĕc'-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | rĕc'-tī ĕ'rūnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Rĕ'-gī, *to be rúled,*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Rĕc'-tŭm ēs'sĕ *vèl* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been rúled.*

Fúture Tense.

Rĕc'-tŭm ī'rī, *to be abóut to be rúled.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Past,* Rĕc'-tŭs, *rúled* or *háving been rúled.*
*Fúture,* Rĕ-gĕn'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be rúled.*

---

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Aŭ'dĭŏr, *I am heard.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*am.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dĭŏr, | *I am* | *heard.* |
| | aū-dī'rĭs *vèl* aū-dī'rĕ, | *thou art* | |
| | aū-dī'tŭr, | *he is* | |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dī'mŭr | *we are* | |
| | aū-dī'mĭnī, | *ye are* | |
| | aū-dĭūn'tŭr, | *they are* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*was.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dĭē'băr, | *I was* | *heard.* |
| | aū-dĭēbā'rĭs *vèl* aū-dĭēbārĕ, | *thou wast* | |
| | aū-dĭēbā'tŭr, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭēbā'mŭr, | *we were* | |
| | aū-dĭēbā mĭnī, | *ye were* | |
| | aū-dĭēbān'tŭr, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ'ī, *have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī'-tŭs sŭm, | *I have* | *been heard.* |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ĕs, | *thou hast* | |
| | aūdī'tŭs ēst, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī'-tī sŭ'mŭs, | *we have* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ēs'tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | aūdī'tī sūnt, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *had been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rām, | *I had* | *been heard.* |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'răt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī'-tī ĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ĕ'rānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū'-dĭăr, | *I shall* | *be heard.* |
| | aū-dĭē'rĭs *vèl* aū-dĭē'rĕ, | *thou wilt* | |
| | aū-dĭē'tŭr, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭē'mŭr, | *we shall* | |
| | aū-dĭē'mĭnī, | *ye will* | |
| | aū-dĭēn'tŭr, | *they will* | |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dī'rĕ, aū-dī'tŏr, | *be thou* | *heard.* |
| | aū-dĭā'tŭr, aū-dī'tŏr, | *let him be* | |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭā'mŭr, | *let us be* | |
| | aū-dī'mĭnī, aū-dī'mĭnŏr, | *be ye* | |
| | aū-dĭān'tŭr, aū-dĭūn'tŏr, | *let them be* | |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū'-dĭăr, | *I may* | *be heard.* |
| | aū-dĭā-rĭs *vèl* aū-dĭā'rĕ, | *thou máyest* | |
| | aū-dĭā'tŭr, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dĭā'mŭr, | *we may* | |
| | aū-dĭā'mĭnī, | *ye may* | |
| | aū-dĭān'tŭr, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dī'rĕr, | *I might* | *be heard.* |
| | aū-dīrē'rĭs *vèl* aū-dīrē'rĕ, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | aū-dīrē'tŭr, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | aū-dīrē'mŭr, | *we might* | |
| | aū-dīrē'mĭnī, | *ye might* | |
| | aū-dīrēn'tŭr, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vèl* fŭ'ĕrĭm, *may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aū-dī'tŭs sīm, | *I may* | *have been heard.* |
| | aū-dī'tŭs sīs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | aū-dī'tŭs sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī'-tī sī'mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | aūdī'-tī sī'tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | aūdī'-tī sīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs'sēm *vèl* fŭīs'sēm, *might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī'-tŭs ēs'sēm, | *I might* | *have been heard.* |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ēs'sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ēs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī'-tī ēssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ēssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ēs'sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ'rŏ *vèl* fŭ'ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rŏ, | *I shall* | *have been heard.* |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | aūdī'-tŭs ĕ'rĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | aūdī'-tī ĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | aūdī'-tī ĕ'rūnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declined like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Aū-dī'rī, *to be heard.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Aūdī-tŭm ēs'sĕ *vél* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been heard.*

Fúture Tense.

Aūdī'tūm ī'rī, *to be aboút to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Past,* Aūdī'-tŭs, *heard* or *háving been heard,*
*Fúture,* Aū-dĭēn'dŭs, *that is to be,* or *that must be heard.*[82]

---

## DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

Cer'tain verbs déviate from the Géneral Rule, and are fórmed in the mánner fóllowing :—

1. Pōs'sŭm, pŏ'tēs, pŏ'tŭī, pōs'sĕ, pŏ'tēns, *to be áble.*

2. Vŏ'lō, vīs, vŏ'lŭī, vēl'lĕ, vŏlēn'dī, vŏlēn'dō, vŏlēn'dŭm, vŏ'lēns, *to be willing.*

3. Nŏ'lō, nōn'vīs, nō'lŭī, nōl'lĕ, nōlēn'dī, nōlēn'dō, nōlēn'dŭm, nō'lēns, *to be unwilling.*

4. Mā'lō, mā'vīs, mā'lŭī, māl'lĕ, mālēn'dī, mālēn'dō, mālēn'dŭm, mā'lēns, *to be more willing* or *to have ráther.*

---

[82] A *Verb Depónent* (as we read in the text, page 38, abóve) is declíned like a *Verb Pássive* of the same conjugátion as itsélf,—but with *Gérunds* and *Súpines* :—thus, mŏ'dĕrŏr, mŏdĕrā'rĭs, (*vèl* mŏdĕrā'rĕ), mŏdĕrā'tŭs sŭm (*vèl* fŭī), mŏdĕrā'rī,—mŏdĕrān'dī, mŏdĕrān'dō, mŏdĕrān'dŭm, mŏdĕrā'tŭm, mŏdĕrā'tū, mŏ'dĕrāns, mŏdĕrātū'rŭs, mŏdĕrā'tŭs, mŏdĕrān'dŭs, *to móderate* or *to mánage;* pōllĭ'cĕŏr, pōllĭcē'rĭs, (*vèl* pōllĭcē'rĕ), pōllĭcĭtŭs sŭm (*vèl* fŭ'ī), pōllĭcē'rī,—pōllĭcēn'dī, pōllĭcēn'dō, pōllĭcēn'dŭm, pōllĭ'cĭtŭm, pōllĭ'cĭtū, pō'llĭcēns, pōllĭcĭtū'rŭs, pōllĭ'cĭtŭs, pōllĭcēn'dŭs, *to prómise;* lŏ'quŏr, lŏ'quĕrĭs (*vèl* lŏ'quĕrĕ), lŏcū'tŭs sŭm (*vèl* fŭ'ī), lŏ'quī.—lŏquēn'dī, lŏquēn'dō, lŏquēn'dŭm, lŏcū'tŭm, lŏcū'tū, lŏ'quēns, lŏcūtū'rŭs, lŏcū'tŭs, lŏquēn'dŭs, *to speak;* lār'gĭŏr, lārgī'rĭs, (*vèl* lārgī'rĕ), lārgī'tŭs sŭm (*vèl* fŭ'ī), lārgī'rī,—lārgĭēn'dī, lārgĭēn'dō, lārgĭēndŭm, lārgī'tŭm, lārgī'tū lār'gĭēns, lārgītū'rŭs, lārgī'tŭs, lārgĭēn'dŭs, *to bestów freély.* And here it may be remárked, that the párticiple in *-ŭs* of *Depónent Verbs* has sómetimes a *pássive,* though more fréquently (and próperly) an *áctive* significátion : for exámple, in Vírgil we find ōblī'tă mĭ'hī căr'mĭnă, *songs forgótten by me.* Ec'logue IX. 53.

Lástly, in the ténses of pássive and of depónent verbs, declíned by help of the verb *sŭm,* the párticiple must álways be of the same génder and númber as the nóminative case to the verb :—for, althoúgh, for the sake of brévity, we say, ămā'tŭs sŭm, yet do we mean, *ămā'tŭs, ămā'tă, ămā'tŭm sŭm* vèl *fŭ'ī,* accórding as the nóminative is másculine, féminine, or neúter : and, in the plúral númber, ămā'tī, ămā'tæ, ămā'tă sŭ'mŭs *vèl* fŭ'ĭmŭs, *we have been lóved.*

5. Ĕ′dŏ, ĕ′dĭs (*vèl* ĕs), ĕ′dī, ĕ′dĕrĕ (*vèl* ēs′sĕ), ĕdēn′dī, ĕdēn′dō, ĕdēn′dŭm, ē′sŭm, ē′sū, ĕ′dēns, ēsū′rŭs, *to eat.*

6. Fĕ′rŏ, fērs, tŭ′lī, fĕr′rĕ, fĕrēn′dī, fĕrēn′dŏ, fĕrēndŭm, lā′tŭm, lā′tū, fĕ′rēns, lātū′rŭs, *to bear* or *súffer.*

7. Fī′ŏ, fīs, fāc′tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, fī′ĕrī, fāc′tŭs, făcĭēn′dŭs, *to be made* or *done.*

8. Fĕ′rŏr, fĕr′rĭs *vèl* fĕr′rĕ, lā′tŭs sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, fĕr′rī, lā′tŭs, fĕrēn′dŭs, *to be borne* or *súffered.*

---

## POSSUM, *I am áble.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am áble.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pōs′sŭm,[83] | *I am* | *áble.* |
| | pŏ′tĕs, | *thou art* | |
| | pŏ′tēst, | *he is* | |
| *Plúral.* | pōs′sŭmŭs, | *we are* | |
| | pŏtēs′tĭs, | *ye are* | |
| | pōs′sūnt, | *they are* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was áble.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏ′tĕrām | *I was* | *áble.* |
| | pŏ′tĕrās, | *thou wast* | |
| | pŏ′tĕrăt, | *he was* | |
| *Plural.* | pŏtĕrā′mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | pŏtĕrā′tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | pŏ′tĕrānt, | *they were* | |

---

[83] *Pōs′sŭm* is a cómpound of the ádjective pŏ′tĭs, *áble,* with sŭm, *I am,* contrácted ínto one word ; the létters *t* and *i* béing dropped. The óther cómpounds of *sŭm,* are :—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| āb′sŭm, | *I am ábsent* or *awáy,* | ōb′sŭm, | *I am agaínst* or *I hurt,* |
| ād′sŭm, | *I am présent* or *at hand,* | præ′sŭm, | *I am óver* or *chief,* |
| dĕ′sŭm, | *I am wánting* or *I fail,* | prō′sŭm, | *I bénefit* or *prófit,* |
| īn′sŭm, | *I am in* or *withín,* | sūb′sŭm, | *I am únder* or *belów,* |
| īntĕr′sŭm, | *I am in the midst of,* | sŭpĕr′sŭm, | *I aboúnd* or *I remaín.* |

These are, in all their ténses, declíned like the verb ēs′sĕ, *to be,* excépt prō′sŭm, *I do good to* or *I bénefit,* which álways takes the létter *d* betwíxt *pro* and the ténses of *ēs′sĕ,* begínning with a vówel : as, prō′dĕs, *thou prófitest* or *avaílest,* prō′dēst, *he avaíls,* prō′dĕrām, *I avaíled,* prōdēssĕ, *to avaíl.* The verb *in′sŭm* is said to want the préterite, and cónsequently the ténses derívéd from it.

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been áble.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏ′tŭī, | *I have* | *been áble.* |
| | pŏtŭĭs′tī, | *thou hast* | |
| | pŏ′tŭĭt, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | pŏtŭ′ĭmŭs, | *we have* | |
| | pŏtŭĭs′tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | pŏtŭē′rūnt *vel* ē′rĕ, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense —*I had been áble.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏtŭ′ĕrām, | *I had* | *been áble.* |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | pŏtŭĕrā′mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | pŏtŭĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall be áble.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏ′tĕrō, | *I shall* | *be áble.* |
| | pŏ′tĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | pŏ′tĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | pŏtĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | pŏtĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | pŏ′tĕrūnt, | *they will* | |

*Observe. Pōs′sŭm,* in cómmon with *vŏ′lō* and *mā′lō*, is néver úsed in the Impérative Mood :—and *pŏ′tēns* rárely occúrs as a párticiple.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should* or *would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pōs′sīm, | *I may* | *be áble.* |
| | pōs′sīs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | pōs′sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | pōssī′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | pōssī′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | pōs′sīnt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pōs′sēm, | *I might* | *be áble.* |
| | pōs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | pōs′sĕt, | *he might* | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | pōssē′mŭs, | *we might* | *be áble.* |
| | pōssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | pōs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏtŭ′ĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have been áble.* |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | pŏtŭĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | pŏtŭĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏtŭīs′sēm, | *I might* | *have been áble.* |
| | pŏtŭīs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | pŏtŭīs′sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | pŏtŭīssē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | pŏtŭīssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | pŏtŭīs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Pŏtŭ′ĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *have been áble.* |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | pŏtŭĕrī′mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | pŏtŭĕrī′tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | pŏtŭ′ĕrīnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Pōs′sĕ, *to be able.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Pŏtŭīs′sĕ, *to have been able.*

*Note. Pōs′sŭm* wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood: and has no gérunds or súpines.

### PARTICIPLE.

*Présent,* Pŏ′tēns, *béing áble.*

As *Pōs′sŭm* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

## VOLO, *I am willing.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏ′lŏ, | *I am* | *willing.* |
| | vīs, | *thou art* | |
| | vūlt, | *he is* | |
| *Plúral.* | vŏ′lŭmŭs, | *we are* | |
| | vūl′tĭs, | *ye are* | |
| | vŏ′lŭnt, | *they are* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏlē′bām, | *I was* | *willing.* |
| | vŏlē′bās, | *thou wast* | |
| | vŏlē′băt, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | vŏlēbā′mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | vŏlēbā′tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | vŏlē′bānt, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏ′lŭī, | *I have* | *been willing.* |
| | vŏlŭīs′tī, | *thou hast* | |
| | vŏ′lŭĭt, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | vŏlŭ′ĭmŭs, | *we have* | |
| | vŏlŭīs′tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | vŏlŭē′rūnt *vel* -ē′rĕ, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏlŭ′ĕrām, | *I had* | *been willing.* |
| | vŏlŭ′ĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | vŏlŭ′ĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | vŏlŭĕrā′mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | vŏlŭĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | vŏlŭ′ĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will be willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏ′lām, | *I shall* | *be willing.* |
| | vŏ′lēs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | vŏ′lĕt, | *he will* | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | vŏlē'mŭs, | *we shall* | *be willing.* |
| | vŏlē'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | vŏ'lēnt, | *they will* | |

*Observe. Vŏ'lŏ* has no Impérative Mood.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should* or *would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vĕ'līm, | *I may* | *be willing.* |
| | vĕ'līs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | vĕ'lĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | vĕlī'mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | vĕlī'tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | vĕ'līnt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vēl lēm, | *I might* | *be willing.* |
| | vēl'lēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | vēl'lĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral* | vēllē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | vēllē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | vēl'lēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏlŭ'ĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have been willing.* |
| | vŏlŭ'ĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | vŏlŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | vŏlŭĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | vŏlŭĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | vŏlŭ'ĕrīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Vŏlŭīs'sēm, | *I might* | *have been willing.* |
| | vŏlŭīs'sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | vŏlŭīs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | vŏlŭīssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | vŏlŭīssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | vŏlŭīs sēnt, | *they might.* | |

5. Future Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | Vŏlŭ'ĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *been willing* |
| | vŏlŭ'ĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | vŏlŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plural.* | vŏlŭĕrī'mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | vŏlŭĕrī'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | vŏlŭ'ĕrĭnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Vĕl'lĕ, *to be wílling.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Vŏlŭĭs'sĕ, *to have been wílling.*

*Note. Vŏ'lŏ* wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood, as it has no súpine.

GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Vŏlĕn'dī, | *of béing wílling,* |
| vŏlĕn'dō, | *in béing wílling,* |
| vŏlĕn'dŭm, | *béing wílling,* |

PARTICIPLE.

*Présent,* Vŏ'lĕns, *wílling* or *béing wílling.*

As *Vŏ'lŏ* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

---

## NOLO, *I am unwílling.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am unwílling.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | Nō'lŏ,[83] | *I am* | *unwilling* |
| | nōn'vīs, | *thou art* | |
| | nōn'vūlt, | *he is* | |
| *Plural.* | nō'lŭmŭs, | *we are* | |
| | nōnvūl'tĭs, | *ye are* | |
| | nō'lūnt, | *they are* | |

[83] This verb is a cómpound of nōn, *not,* with the precéding verb vŏ'lŏ, *I will.*

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was unwílling.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nōlē′bām, | *I was* | *unwílling.* |
| | nōlē′bās, | *thou wast* | |
| | nōlē′băt, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlēbā′mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | nōlēbā′tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | nōlē′bānt, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been unwílling.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nō′lŭī, | *I have* | *been unwílling.* |
| | nōlŭīs′tī, | *thou hast* | |
| | nō′lŭĭt, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlŭ′ĭmŭs, | *we have* | |
| | nōlŭīs′tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | nōlŭē′rŭnt *vel* -ē′rĕ, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been unwílling.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nōlŭ′ĕrām, | *I had* | *been unwílling.* |
| | nōlŭ′ĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | nōlŭ′ĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlŭĕrā′mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | nōlŭĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | nōlŭ′ĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will be unwílling.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nō′lām, | *I shall* | *be unwílling.* |
| | nō′lēs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | nō′lĕt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlē′mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | nōlē′tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | nō′lēnt, | *they will* | |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first* or *third Pérson*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nō′lī, nōlī′tō, | *be thou unwílling.* |
| | ——— | ——— |
| *Plúral.* | ——— | ——— |
| | nōlī′tĕ, nōlītō′tĕ, | *be ye unwílling.* |
| | ——— | ——— |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nō'līm, | *I may* | *be unwilling.* |
| | nō'līs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | nō'lĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlī'mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | nōlī'tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | nō'līnt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nōl'lēm, | *I might* | *be unwilling.* |
| | nōl'lēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | nōl'lĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōllē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | nōllē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | nōl'lēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nōlŭ'ĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have been unwilling.* |
| | nōlŭ'ĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | nōlŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlŭĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | nōlŭĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | nōlŭ'ĕrīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nōlŭīs'sēm, | *I might* | *have been unwilling.* |
| | nōlŭīs'sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | nōlŭīs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlŭīssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | nōlŭīssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | nōlŭīs'sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Nōlŭ'ĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *have been unwilling.* |
| | nōlŭ'ĕrīs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | nōlŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | nōlŭĕrī'mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | nōlŭĕrī'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | nōlŭ'ĕrīnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Nōl′lĕ, *to be unwílling.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Nōlŭīs′sĕ, *to have been unwílling.*

*Note. Nō′lŏ* wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood, as it has no súpine.

GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Nōlēn′dī, | *of béing unwílling.* |
| nōlēn′dŏ, | *in béing unwílling.* |
| nōlēn′dŭm, | *béing unwílling.* |

PARTICIPLE.

*Present,* Nō′lēns, *unwílling* or *béing unwílling.*

As *Nō′lŏ* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

---

## MALO, *I am more wílling.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am more wílling* or *I would have ráther.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mā′lŏ,[85] | *I am* | *more wílling.* |
| | mā′vīs, | *thou art* | |
| | mā′vūlt, | *he is* | |
| *Plúral.* | mā′lŭmŭs, | *we are* | |
| | māvūl′tĭs, | *ye are* | |
| | mā′lūnt, | *they are* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was more wílling.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mālē′bām, | *I was* | *more wílling.* |
| | mālē′bās, | *thou wast* | |
| | mālē′băt, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālēbā′mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | mālēbā′tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | mālē′bānt, | *they were* | |

---

85 This verb is a cómpound of the ádverb mă′gīs, *more,* with the símple irrégular verb, vŏ′lŏ, *I will* or *am wílling.*

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I have been more willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mā'lŭī, | *I have* | *been more willing.* |
| | mālŭīs'tī, | *thou hast* | |
| | mā'lŭĭt, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālŭ'īmŭs, | *we have* | |
| | mālŭīs'tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | mālŭē'rūnt *vel* -ē'rĕ, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had been more willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mālŭ'ĕrām, | *I had* | *been more willing.* |
| | mālŭ'ĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | mālŭ'ĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālŭĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | mālŭĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | mālŭ'ĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will be more willing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mālām, | *I shall* | *be more willing.* |
| | mā'lēs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | mā'lĕt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālē'mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | mālē'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | mā'lēnt, | *they will* | |

*Observe. Mā'lŏ* has no Impérative Mood.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mā'līm, | *I may* | *be more willing.* |
| | mā'līs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | mā'lĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālī'mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | mālī'tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | mā'līnt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Māl'lēm, | *I might* | *be more willing.* |
| | māl'lēs, | *thou mightest* | |
| | māl'lĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | māllē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | māllē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | māl'lēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mālŭ ĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have been more willing.* |
| | mālŭ'ĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | mālŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālŭĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | mālŭĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | mālŭ'ĕrĭnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mālŭīs'sēm, | *I might* | *have been more willing.* |
| | mālŭīs'sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | mālŭīs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālŭīssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | mālŭīssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | mālŭīssēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Mālŭ'ĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *have been more willing.* |
| | mālŭ'ĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | mālŭ'ĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | mālŭĕrī'mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | mālŭĕrī'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | mālŭ'ĕrĭnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Māl'lĕ *to be more willing* or *to have ráther.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Mālŭīs'sĕ, *to have been more wílling* or *to have had ráther.*

*Note. Mā'lŏ* wants the fúture tense of the Infínitive Mood, as it has no súpine.

### GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Mālēn'dī, | *of béing more wílling.* |
| mālēn'dŏ, | *in béing more wílling.* |
| mālēn'dŭm, | *béing more wílling.* |

### PARTICIPLE.

*Présent*, Mā'lēns, *more wílling* or *béing more wílling.*

As *Mā'lŏ* has no súpine, it has no fúture párticiple.

## EDO, *I eat.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I do eat* or *am eáting.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ'dŏ, | *I eat,* |
| | ĕ'dĭs *vèl* ēs, | *thou eátest,* |
| | ĕ'dĭt *vèl* ēst, | *he eats,* |
| *Plúral.* | ĕ'dĭmŭs, | *we eat,* |
| | ĕ'dĭtĭs *vèl* ēs'tĭs, | *ye eat,* |
| | ĕ'dūnt, | *they eat.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did eat* or *was eáting.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕdē'bām, | *I was* | *eáting.* |
| | ĕdē'bās, | *thou wast* | |
| | ĕdē'băt, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | ĕdēbā'mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | ĕdēbā'tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | ĕdē'bānt, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I ate* or *have eáten.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ē'dī, | *I ate,* |
| | ēdīs'tī, | *thou átest,* |
| | ē'dĭt, | *he ate,* |
| *Plúral.* | ē'dĭmŭs, | *we ate,* |
| | ēdīs'tĭs, | *ye ate,* |
| | ēdē'rūnt *vèl* ēdē'rĕ, | *they ate* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had eáten.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ē'dĕrām, | *I had* | *eáten.* |
| | ē'dĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | ē'dĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | ēdĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | ēdĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | ē'dĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will eat.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ'dām, | *I shall* | *eat.* |
| | ĕ'dēs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | ĕ'dĕt, | *he will* | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | ĕdē′mŭs, | *we shall* | *eat.* |
| | ĕdē′tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | ĕ′dēnt, | *they will* | |

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ′dĕ, ĕ′dĭtō *vèl* ĕs, ēs′tō,[86] | *eat thou,* |
| | ĕ′dăt, ĕdĭtō *vèl* ēs′tō, | *let him eat,* |
| *Plúral.* | ĕdā′mŭs, | *let us eat,* |
| | ĕ′dĭtĕ, ĕdĭtō′tĕ *vèl* ēs′tĕ, ēstō′tĕ, | *eat ye,* |
| | ĕ′dānt, ĕdūn′tō, | *let them eat.* |

### POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ′dām, | *I may* | *eat.* |
| | ĕ′dās, | *thou máyest* | |
| | ĕ′dăt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | ĕdā′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | ĕdā′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | ĕ′dānt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ′dĕrēm *vèl* ēs′sēm, | *I might* | *eat.* |
| | ĕ′dĕrēs *vèl* ēs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | ĕ′dĕrĕt *vèl* ēs′sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | ĕdĕrē′mŭs *vèl* ēssē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | ĕdĕrē′tĭs *vèl* ēssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | ĕdĕ′rēnt *vèl* ēs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ē′dĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have eaten.* |
| | ē′dĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | ē′dĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | ēdĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | ēdĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | ē′dĕrĭnt, | *they may* | |

[86] This verb has some of its parts the same with those of the verb ĕs′sĕ, *to be.*

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ēdīs'sēm, | *I might* | *have eáten.* |
| | ēdīs'sēs, | *thou mightest* | |
| | ēdīs'sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | ēdīssē'mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | ēdīssē'tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | ēdīs'sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ē'dĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *have been.* |
| | ē'dĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | ē'dĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | ēdĕrī'mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | ēdĕrī'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | ē'dĕrīnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Ĕ'dĕrĕ *vèl* ēs'sĕ, *to eat.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Ēdīs'sĕ, *to have eáten.*

Fúture Tense.

Ēsū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be aboút to eat.*

### GERUNDS.

Ĕdēn'dī, *of eáting,*
ĕdēn'dŏ, *in eáting,*
ĕdēn'dŭm, *eáting.*

### SUPINES.

Ē'sŭm, *to eat.* Ē'sū, *to be eáten.*

### PARTICIPLES.

*Présent,* Ĕ'dēns, *eáting.*
*Fúture,* Ēsū'rŭs, *aboút to eat.*

## FERO, *I bear* or *suffer.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do bear* or *am beáring.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕ'rŏ, | *I bear,* | |
| | fērs, | *thou beárest,* | |
| | fērt, | *he bears,* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we bear,* | |
| | fēr'tĭs, | *ye bear,* | |
| | fĕ'rūnt, | *they bear.* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did bear* or *was beáring.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕrē'bām, | *I was* | *beáring.* |
| | fĕrē'bās, | *thou wast* | |
| | fĕrē'băt, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrēbā'mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | fĕrēbā'tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | fĕrē'bānt, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I bare, bore,* or *have borne.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Tŭ'lī, | *I bare,* | |
| | tŭlīs'tī, | *thou bárest,* | |
| | tŭ'lĭt, | *he bare,* | |
| *Plúral.* | tŭ'lĭmŭs, | *we bare,* | |
| | tŭlīs'tĭs, | *ye bare,* | |
| | tŭlē'rūnt *vèl* tŭlē'rĕ, | *they bare.* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had borne.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Tŭ'lĕrām, | *I had* | *borne.* |
| | tŭ'lĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | tŭ'lĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | tŭlĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | tŭlĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | tŭ'lĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will bear.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕ'rām, | *I shall* | *bear.* |
| | fĕ'rēs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | fĕ'rĕt, | *he will* | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | fĕrē′mŭs, | *we shall* | *bear.* |
| | fĕrē′tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | fĕ′rēnt, | *they will* | |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕr, fēr′tŏ, | *bear thou,* |
| | fĕ′răt, fēr′tŏ, | *let him bear,* |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrā′mŭs, | *let us bear,* |
| | fēr′tĕ, fērtŏ′tĕ, | *bear ye,* |
| | fĕ′rānt, fĕrūn′tŏ, | *let them bear.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕ′rām, | *I may* | *bear.* |
| | fĕ′rās, | *thou máyest* | |
| | fĕ′răt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrā′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | fĕrā′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | fĕ′rānt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fēr′rēm, | *I might* | *bear.* |
| | fēr′rēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | fēr′rĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | fērrē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | fērrē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | fēr′rēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Tŭ′lĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have borne.* |
| | tŭ′lĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | tŭ′lĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | tŭlĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | tŭlĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | tŭ′lĕrĭnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Tŭlĭs′sēm, | *I might* | *have borne.* |
| | tŭlĭs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | tŭlĭs′sĕt, | *he might* | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | tŭlīssē′mŭs, | *we might* | *have borne.* |
| | tŭlīssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | tŭlīs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Tŭ′lĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *have borne.* |
| | tŭ′lĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | tŭ′lĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | tŭlĕrī′mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | tŭlĕrī′tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | tŭ′lĕrīnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Potential.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Fĕr′rĕ, *to bear* or *súffer.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Tŭlīs′sĕ, *to have borne* or *súffered.*

Fúture Tense.

Lātū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, *to be abóut to bear* or *súffer.*

### GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Fĕrēn′dī, | *of beáring,* |
| fĕrēn′dŏ, | *in beáring,* |
| fĕrēn′dŭm, | *beáring.* |

### SUPINES.

Lā′tŭm, *to bear.* Lā′tū, *to be borne.*

### PARTICIPLES.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Présent,* | Fĕ′rēns, | *beáring* or *súffering.* |
| *Fúture,* | Lātū′rŭs, | *abóut to bear* or *súffer* |

---

FIO, *I becóme* or *am made.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do becóme* or *am made.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fī′ŏ, | *I becóme,* |
| | fīs, | *thou becómest,* |
| | fĭt, | *he becómes,* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | fī'mŭs, | *we becóme,* | |
| | fī'tĭs, | *ye becóme,* | |
| | fī'ŭnt, | *they becóme.* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did becóme* or *was made.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fīē'bām, | *I did* | *becóme.* |
| | fīē'bās, | *thou didst* | |
| | fīē'băt, | *he did* | |
| *Plúral.* | fīēbā'mŭs, | *we did* | |
| | fīēbā'tĭs, | *ye did* | |
| | fīē'bānt, | *they did* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭī, *I becáme, I am becóme,* or *I have been made.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fāc'tŭs sŭm, | *I have* | *been made.* |
| | fāc'tŭs ĕs, | *thou hast* | |
| | fāc'tŭs ēst, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | fāc'tī sŭ'mŭs, | *we have* | |
| | fāc'tī ēs'tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | fāc'tī sūnt, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ'rām *vèl* fŭ'ĕrām, *I had becóme* or *I had been made.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fāc'tŭs ĕ'rām, | *I had* | *becóme.* |
| | fāc'tŭs ĕ'rās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | fāc'tŭs ĕ'răt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | fāc'tī ĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | fāc'tī ĕrā'tĭs, | *ye hád* | |
| | fāc'tī ĕ'rānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will becóme.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fī'ām, | *I shall* | *becóme.* |
| | fī'ēs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | fī'ĕt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | fīē'mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | fīē'tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | fī'ēnt, | *they will* | |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fī, fī'tŏ, | *becóme thou,* |
| | fī'ăt, fī'tŏ, | *let him becóme,* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | fīā′mŭs, | *let us becóme.* |
| | fī′tĕ, fītō′tĕ, | *becóme ye,* |
| | fī′ānt, fīūn′tō, | *let them becóme.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fī′ām, | *I may* | *becóme.* |
| | fī′ās, | *thou máyest* | |
| | fī′ăt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | fīā′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | fīā′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | fī′ānt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fī′ĕrēm, | *I might* | *becóme.* |
| | fī′ĕrēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | fī′ĕrĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | fīĕrē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | fīĕrē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | fī′ĕrēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vèl* fŭ′ĕrĭm, *may have* or *should have been made* or *have becóme.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fāc′tŭs sīm, | *I may* | *have becóme.* |
| | fāc′tŭs sīs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | fāc′tŭs sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | fāc′tī sī′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | fāc′tī sī′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | fāc′tī sīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs′sēm *vèl* fŭīs′sēm, *might* or *would have becóme,* or *been made* or *done.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fāc′tŭs ēs′sēm, | *I might* | *have becóme.* |
| | fāc′tŭs ēs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | fāc′tŭs ēs′sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | fāc′tī ēssē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | fāc′tī ēssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | fāc′tī ēs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ′rŏ *vèl* fŭ′ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have becóme,* or *been made* or *done.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fāc′tŭs ĕ′rŏ, | *I shall* | *have becóme.* |
| | fāc′tŭs ĕ′rĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | fāc′tŭs ĕ′rĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | fāc′tī ĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | fāc′tī ĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | fāc′tī ĕ′rūnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Fī′ĕrī, *to be made* or *done,* or *to becóme.*

### Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Fāc′tŭm ēs′sĕ *vèl* fŭīs′sĕ, *to have been made* or *done,* or *to have becóme.*

### Fúture Tense.

Fāc′tŭm ī′rī, *to be abóut to be made* or *done,* or *to be abóut to becóme.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Past,* Fāc′-tŭs, *made, done,* or *becóme.*
*Fúture,* Fă-cĭēn′dŭs,* *that is to* or *that must becóme;* or, *that is to be* or *that must be made* or *done.*

---

## FEROR, *I am borne.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I am borne* or *súffered.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕ′rŏr, | *I am* | *borne.* |
| | fēr′rĭs *vèl* fēr′rĕ, | *thou art* | |
| | fēr′tŭr, | *he is* | |

* Sómetimes this párticiple, as álso the gérunds of *fă′cĭŏ,* have the vówel *u* in place of *e* in the third sýllable: as *făcĭūn′dŭs, făcĭūn dă, făcĭūn′dŭm, făcĭūn′dī, făcĭūn′dō;* but this mánner of wríting is more áncient.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | fĕ′rĭmŭr, | *we are* | *borne.* |
| | fĕrĭ′mĭnī, | *ye are* | |
| | fĕrūn′tŭr, | *they are* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I was borne.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕrē′băr, | *I was* | *borne.* |
| | fĕrēbā′rĭs *vèl* -bā′rĕ, | *thou wast* | |
| | fĕrēbā′tŭr, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrēbā′mŭr, | *we were* | |
| | fĕrēbā′mĭnī, | *ye were* | |
| | fĕrēbān′tŭr, | *they were* | |

3 Preterpérfect Tense.—sŭm *vèl* fŭ′ī, *I have been borne.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Lā′tŭs sŭm, | *I have* | *been borne.* |
| | lā′tŭs ĕs, | *thou hast* | |
| | lā′tŭs ēst, | *he has* | |
| *Plúral.* | lā′tī sŭ′mŭs, | *we have* | |
| | lā′tī ēs′tĭs, | *ye have* | |
| | lā′tī sūnt, | *they have* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ĕ′rām *vèl* fŭ′ĕrām, *I had been borne.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Lā′tŭs ĕ′rām, | *I had* | *been borne.* |
| | lā′tŭs ĕ′rās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | lā′tŭs ĕ′răt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | lā′tī ĕrā′mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | lā′tī ĕrā′tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | lā′tī ĕ′rānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will be borne.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕ′răr, | *I shall* | *be borne.* |
| | fĕrē′rĭs *vèl* fĕrē′rĕ, | *thou wilt* | |
| | fĕrē′tŭr, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrē′mŭr, | *we shall* | |
| | fĕrē′mĭnī, | *ye will* | |
| | fĕrēn′tŭr, | *they will* | |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fēr′rĕ, fēr′tŏr, | *be thou* | *borne.* |
| | fĕrā′tŭr, fēr′tŏr, | *let him be* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrā′mŭr, | *let us be* | |
| | fĕrĭ′mĭnī, fĕrĭ′mĭnŏr, | *be ye* | |
| | fĕrān′tŭr, fĕrūntŏr, | *let them be* | |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕ′răr, | *I may* | *be borne.* |
| | fĕ′rā′rĭs *vèl* fĕrā′rĕ | *thou máyest* | |
| | fĕrā′tŭr, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrā′mŭr, | *we may* | |
| | fĕrā′mĭnī, | *ye may* | |
| | fĕrān′tŭr, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Fĕr′rĕr, | *I might* | *be borne.* |
| | fĕrrē′rĭs *vèl* fĕrrē′rĕ, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | fĕrrē′tŭr, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | fĕrrē′mŭr, | *we might* | |
| | fĕrrē′mĭnī, | *ye might* | |
| | fĕrrēn′tŭr, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—sīm *vèl* fŭ′ĕrĭm, *may* or *should have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Lā′tŭs sīm, | *I may* | *have been borne.* |
| | lā′tŭs sīs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | lā′tŭs sĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | lā′tī sī′mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | lā′tī sī′tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | lā′tī sīnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—ēs′sēm *vèl* fŭīs′sēm, *might* or *would have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Lā′tŭs ēs′sēm, | *I might* | *have been borne.* |
| | lā′tŭs ēs′sēs, | *thou mightest* | |
| | lā′tŭs ēs′sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | lā′tī ēssē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | lā′tī ēssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | lā′tī ēs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—ĕ′rŏ *vèl* fŭ′ĕrŏ, *shall* or *will have been.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Lā′tŭs ĕ′rŏ, | *I shall* | *have been borne.* |
| | lā′tŭs ĕ′rĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | lā′tŭs ĕ′rĭt, | *he will* | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Plúral.* | lā'tī ĕ'rĭmŭs, | *we shall* | *have been borne.* |
| | lā'tī ĕ'rĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | lā'tī ĕ'rŭnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declined like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Fĕr'rī, *to be borne.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Lā'tŭm ĕs'sĕ *vĕl* fŭīs'sĕ, *to have been borne.*

Future Tense.

Lā'tŭm ī'rī, *to be about to be borne.*

### PARTICIPLES.

*Past.* Lā'tŭs, *borne* or *háving been borne*

*Fúture,* Fĕrĕn'dŭs, *that is to be* or *that must be borne.*

---

## EO, *I go.*

Ĕō, *I go*, is álso a Verb Irrégular, but, in mány of its ténses, it resémbles verbs of the Fourth Conjugátion: it is declíned as fóllows:—

Ĕō, īs, ī'vī, ī'rĕ, ĕūn'dī, ĕūn'dō, ĕūn'dŭm, ĭ'tŭm, ĭ'tū, ĭ'ēns, ĭtū'rŭs, *to go.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I do go* or *am góing.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ'ō, | *I go,* |
| | īs, | *thou góest,* |
| | ĭt, | *he goes,* |
| *Plúral.* | ī'mŭs, | *we go,* |
| | ī'tĭs, | *ye go,* |
| | ĕ'ūnt, | *they go.* |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*I did go* or *was góing.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ī'bām, | *I was* | *góing.* |
| | ī'bās, | *thou wast* | |
| | ī'băt, | *he was* | |
| *Plúral.* | ībā'mŭs, | *we were* | |
| | ībā'tĭs, | *ye were* | |
| | ī'bānt, | *they were* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*I went* or *have gone.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | I'vī, | *I went,* |
| | īvīs'tī, | *thou wéntest,* |
| | ī'vĭt, | *he went.* |
| *Plúral.* | ī'vĭmŭs, | *we went,* |
| | īvīs'tĭs, | *ye went,* |
| | īvē'rūnt *vèl* īvē'rĕ, | *they went.* |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*I had gone.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ī'vĕrām, | *I had* | *gone.* |
| | ī'vĕrās, | *thou hadst* | |
| | ī'vĕrăt, | *he had* | |
| *Plúral.* | īvĕrā'mŭs, | *we had* | |
| | īvĕrā'tĭs, | *ye had* | |
| | ī'vĕrānt, | *they had* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will go.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ī'bŏ, | *I shall* | *go.* |
| | ī'bĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | ī'bĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | ī'bĭmŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | ī'bĭtĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | ī'būnt, | *they will* | |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*No first Pérson.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | I, ī'tŏ, | *go thou,* |
| | ĕ'ăt, ī'tŏ, | *let him go,* |
| *Plúral.* | ĕā'mŭs, | *let us go,* |
| | ī'tĕ, ītŏ'tĕ, | *go ye,* |
| | ĕ'ānt, ĕūn tŏ, | *let them go.* |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*may, can, should, would.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ĕ'ām, | *I may* | *go.* |
| | ĕ'ās, | *thou máyest* | |
| | ĕ'ăt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | ĕā'mŭs, | *we may* | |
| | ĕā'tĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | ĕ'ānt, | *they may* | |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.—*might* or *could.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ī′rēm, | *I might* | *go.* |
| | ī′rēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | ī′rĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | īrē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | īrē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | ī′rēnt, | *they might* | |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.—*may* or *should have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ī′vĕrĭm, | *I may* | *have gone.* |
| | ī′vĕrĭs, | *thou máyest* | |
| | ī′vĕrĭt, | *he may* | |
| *Plúral.* | īvĕ′rĭmŭs, | *we may* | |
| | īvĕ′rĭtĭs, | *ye may* | |
| | ī′vĕrĭnt, | *they may* | |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.—*might* or *would have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Īvīs′sēm, | *I might* | *have gone.* |
| | īvīs′sēs, | *thou míghtest* | |
| | īvīs′sĕt, | *he might* | |
| *Plúral.* | īvīssē′mŭs, | *we might* | |
| | īvīssē′tĭs, | *ye might* | |
| | īvīs′sēnt, | *they might* | |

5. Fúture Tense.—*shall* or *will have.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Síngular.* | Ī′vĕrŏ, | *I shall* | *have gone.* |
| | ī′vĕrĭs, | *thou wilt* | |
| | ī′vĕrĭt, | *he will* | |
| *Plúral.* | īvĕrī′mŭs, | *we shall* | |
| | īvĕrī′tĭs, | *ye will* | |
| | ī′vĕrĭnt, | *they will* | |

The Subjúnctive Mood is declíned like the Poténtial.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent and Preterímperfect Tense.

Ī′rĕ, *to go.*

Preterpérfect and Preterplúperfect Tense.

Īvīs′sĕ, *to have gone.*

Fúture Tense.

Ĭtū'rŭm ēs'sĕ, *to be abóut to go.*

GERUNDS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Eūn'dī, | *of góing,* |
| ĕūn'dŏ, | *in góing,* |
| ĕūn'dŭm, | *góing.* |

SUPINES.

Ĭ'tŭm, *to go.* Ĭ'tū, *to be gone.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Présent,* I'ēns, *góing.*

*Génitive.* ĕūn'tĭs, *of a pérson* or *thing góing.*

*Fúture.* Ĭtū'rŭs, *abóut to go.*

In like mánner are the cómpounds[87] of *ĕ'ŏ* declíned: as are

[87] The more cómmon cómpounds of *ĕ'ŏ* are the fóllowing, which, exclúsive of *quĕ'ŏ* and of *nĕ'quĕŏ*, and exclúsive (líkewise) of ăm'bĭŏ, *I envíron*, a verb oríginally a cómpound of *ĕ'ŏ*, but evéntually adópted amóng the régular verbs of the fourth conjugátion, amóunt to séventeen in númber :—

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. ăb'ĕŏ, | ăbī'vī, | ăb'ĭtŭm, | ăbī'rĕ, | *to go awáy,* |
| 2. ăd'ĕŏ, | ădī'vī, | ăd'ĭtŭm, | ădī'rĕ, | *to go únto,* |
| 3. āntĕ'ĕŏ, | āntĕī'vī, | āntĕ'ĭtŭm, | āntĕī'rĕ, | *to go befóre,* |
| 4. cīrcŭm'ĕŏ, | cīrcŭmī'vī, | cīrcŭm'ĭtŭm, | cīrcŭmī'rĕ, | *to go round,* |
| 5. cŏ'ĕŏ, | cŏī'vī, | cŏ'ĭtŭm, | cŏī'rĕ, | *to go togéther with,* |
| 6. ĕx'ĕŏ, | ĕxī'vī, | ĕx'ĭtŭm, | ĕxī'rĕ, | *to go out,* |
| 7. ĭn'ĕŏ, | ĭnī'vī, | ĭn'ĭtŭm, | ĭnī'rĕ, | *to go in,* |
| 8. īntĕr'ĕŏ, | īntĕrī'vī, | īntĕr'ĭtŭm, | īntĕrī'rĕ, | *to pérish,* |
| 9. īntrŏ'ĕŏ, | īntrŏī'vī, | īntrŏ'ĭtŭm, | īntrŏī'rĕ, | *to go ínto,* |
| 10. ŏb'ĕŏ, | ŏbī'vī, | ŏb'ĭtŭm, | ŏbī'rĕ, | *to go through with,* |
| 11. pĕr'ĕŏ, | pĕrī'vī, | pĕr'ĭtŭm, | pĕrī'rĕ, | *to pérish,* |
| 12. præ'ĕŏ, | præī'vī, | præ'ĭtŭm, | præī'rĕ, | *to precéde.* |
| 13. prætĕr'ĕŏ, | prætĕrī'vī, | prætĕr'ĭtŭm, | prætĕrī'rĕ, | *to pass by,* |
| 14. prō'dĕŏ, | prōdī'vī, | prŏ'dĭtŭm, | prōdī'rĕ, | *to go forth,* |
| 15. rĕ'dĕŏ, | rĕdī'vī, | rĕ'dĭtŭm, | rĕdī'rĕ, | *to retúrn,* |
| 16. sŭb'ĕŏ, | sŭbī'vī, | sŭb'ĭtŭm, | sŭbī'rĕ, | *to go únder,* |
| 17. trāns'ĕŏ, | trānsī'vī, | trāns'ĭtŭm, | trānsī'rĕ, | *to pass óver.* |

In all these verbs the pénult of the súpine (*ĕ'ŏ* being one of the excéptions to the Géneral Rule "Sŭpī'nŭm *dīssȳl'lăbŭm prĭŏ'rĕm hă'bĕt lŏn'gŭm,*") is short. See Prósody.

And here it is réquisite to obsérve, that in the Préterite of the Indícative, and the ténses deríved from it, the *v* is óftener drópped, than

álso quĕ'ŏ, *I am áble*, and nĕ'quĕŏ, *I am unáble;* but these last are not úsed in the Impérative Mood, and séldom or néver either in the Gérunds or Párticiples.[88]

---

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs that have ónly some partícular Ténses and Pérsons,[89] are cálled *Deféctive;* such are the fóllowing:—

### 1. Aī'ŏ,[90] *I say.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*I say.*

| *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Aī'ŏ, | ă'ĭs, | ă'ĭt, | —— | —— | aī'ūnt. |

retaíned, in *ĕ'ō* and all its cómpounds:—thus, for *ădī'vī, pĕrī'vī, &c.*, we more fréquently read and say *ăd'iī, pĕr'iī, &c.* This contrácted form is líkewise véry fréquent in óther verbs, though scárcely so fréquent as in *ĕ'ō* and its cómpounds.

Agaín, althoúgh *ĕ'ō* is próperly a neúter verb, yet, éven by the best wríters, was it úsed *pérsonally*, as well as *ímpersonally*, in the pássive voice:—thus in Cæ'sar we find "flū'mĕn pĕ'dĭbŭs trānsī'rī pŏ'tēst," *the ríver can be crŏssed on foot:* álso in Ci'cero we read "pĕrī'cŭlă ădĕūn'tŭr," *dángers are come únto:* and mány óther pássages of like kind might be quóted.

In *prō'dĕō* and *rĕ'dĕō* the létter *d* is insérted for the sake of distínctness of sound; and in *præ'ĕō,* the díphthong is óftener short than long.

[88] Vē'nĕō, *to be sold*, is cónjugated like *ĕ'ō,* excépt that it has no impérative, nor fúture infínitive, nor gérunds, súpines, or párticiples.

[89] The verb dă'rĕ, *to give,* wants the first pérson síngular of the présent of the indícative, and álso of the présent of the poténtial, pássive:—in like mánner, fā'rī, *to speak,* wants the same pérsons, of the like tense, of the same two moods. Again, the sécond pérson síngular of the impérative of scī'ŏ, *I know,* námely, *scī,* was séldom (or perháps néver) in use.—Amóng *Deféctive Verbs* some grammárians class such words as "sīs," for sī vīs, *if thou art wílling;* "sūl'tĭs" for sī vūl'tĭs, *if ye are wílling;* "sō'dēs," for sī aūdēs, *if thou dárest:*—álso, ĭn'fĭt, *he begíns,* or ráther, *it is begún;* dē'fĭt, *it is wánting;* and cōn'fĭt, *it is done;* with a few more which hárdly belóng to this tribe.

[90] In the verb *aī'ō* the first two létters are álways pronoúnced as one sýllable whenéver they are fóllowed by a vówel: but when a cónsonant fóllows the *i*, then the first létter is inváriably short; as, ă'ĭt, *he saith* or *says.*

Preterímperfect Tense.—*I said* or *did say.*

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Aīĕ'-bām, | -bās, | -băt, | -bā'mŭs, | -bā'tĭs, | -bānt. |

Preterpérfect Tense.—*thou saídest.*

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | ăī'stī, | —— | —— | ăīs'tĭs, | —— |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*say.*

| | *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | ă'ī *vel* aī, | —— | —— | —— | —— |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*thou máyest say.*

| | *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | aī'ās, | aī'ăt, | aīā'mŭs, | —— | aī'ānt. |

PARTICIPLE.

*Présent*, Aī'ēns, *sáying.*

---

2. Aŭ'sīm, *I dare.*

## INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*I dare* or *I may dare.*

| | *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Aŭ'sīm, | aŭ'sīs, | aŭ'sĭt, | —— | —— | aŭ'sīnt. |

---

3. Ă'vē, *hail.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.—*hail.*

| | *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | ă'vē, / ăvē'tō, | —— | —— | ăvē'tĕ, / ăvētō'tĕ. | —— |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.

Ăvē'rĕ, *to hail* or *to speed.*

4. Sāl′vĕ,[91] *God save you.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Fúture Tense.—*thou wilt be safe.*

| — | *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| — | sālvē′bĭs, | — | — | — | — |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

Présent Tense.—*be safe.*

| | *Síngular.* | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| — | sāl′ve, sālvē′tŏ, | — | sālvē′tĕ, sālvētŏ′tĕ, | — |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.

Sālvē′rĕ, *to be safe and sound.*

---

5 Cĕ′dŏ, *tell me.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*tell me.*

| — | *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| — | cĕ′dŏ, | — | — | cĕ′dĭtĕ, | — |

---

6. Fāx′ĭm for Fă′cĭăm or Fē′cĕrĭm, *I may do it.*

## INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL MOOD.

Preterpérfect Tense.—*I may do it.*

| *Síngular.* | | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Fāx′ĭm, | fāx′ĭs, | fāx′ĭt, | fāx′ĭmŭs, | fāx′ĭtĭs, | fāx′ĭnt. |

Fúture Tense.—*I shall* or *will do it.*

| *Síngular.* | | | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Fāx′ŏ, | fāx′ĭs, | fāx′ĭt, | fāxī′mŭs, | fāxī′tĭs, | fāx′ĭnt. |

---

[91] With this verb séveral grammárians coúple the like parts of the verb vă′lĕō, *I am áble,* in the sense of "*adieú*" or "*fárewell.*"

7. Quæ′sŏ,[92] *I pray.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*I pray.*

| *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Quæ′sŏ, | quæ′sĭs, | quæ′sĭt, | quæ′sŭmŭs, | —— | —— |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.

Quæ′sĕrĕ, *to beg* or *to beseéch.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Présent,* Quæ′sēns, *beseéching.*

---

8. Īn′quĭŏ *vèl* Īn′quām, *I say.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*I say.*

| *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| In′quĭŏ, *vèl* Īn′quām, | īn′quĭs, | īn′quĭt, | īn′quĭmŭs, | —— | īn quĭūnt |

Preterímperfect Tense.—*I said* or *did say.*

| *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | —— | īnquĭē′băt, | —— | —— | īnquĭē′bānt. |

Preterpérfect Tense.—*saidest thou.*

| *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | īnquīs′tī, | —— | —— | —— | —— |

Fúture Tense.—*thou wilt say.*

| *Síngular.* | | | *Plúral.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| —— | īn′quĭēs, | īn′quĭĕt, | —— | —— | —— |

---

[92] This verb quæ′sŏ seems to have been the oríginal form of quæ′rŏ, *I seek.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Présent Tense.—*say thou.*

| | *Singular.* | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| — | { īn'quĕ, īn'quĭtō, } | { īn'quĭăt, īn'quĭtō, } — | — | — |

**PARTICIPLE.**

*Présent*, Īn'quĭēns, *sáying.*[93]

Nō'vī, *I know* or *I have known*, ō'dī,[94] *I hate* or *I have háted*, cœ'pī, *I begín* or *I have begún*, and mĕ'mĭnī, *I do remémber* or *I have remémbered*, are líkewise Verbs Deféctive; as they have ónly the Preterpérfect Tense of the Indícative Mood, with the Ténses fórmed therefróm :—thus,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nō'vī, | *I know* or *I knew,* | Ō'dī, | *I hate* or *I háted,* |
| Nō'vĕrăm, | *I had known.* | Ō'dĕrăm, | *I had háted.* |
| Nō'vĕrĭm, | *I may have known.* | Ō'dĕrĭm, | *I may have háted.* |
| Nōvĭs'sĕm, | *I might have known.* | Ōdĭs'sĕm, | *I would have háted.* |
| Nō'vĕrō, | *I shall have known.* | Ō'dĕrō, | *I shall have háted.* |
| Nōvĭs'se, | *to have known.* | Ōdĭs'sĕ, | *to have háted.* |

In like mánner do *cœ'pī*, and *mĕ'mĭnī*, form their ténses :—and it is to be obsérved that these four verbs have not ónly the first pérson, but álso all the óther pérsons of those Tenses: *mĕ'mĭnī* has moreóver the sécond pérson of the Impérative Mood, both síngular and plúral :—as,

mĕmēntō, *rémember thou.* || mĕmēntō'tĕ, *rémember ye.*[95]

[93] To these some add fŏ'rēm, *I might be*, and the infínitive fŏ'rĕ, *to be.*

[94] The two verbs *ō'dī* and *cœ'pī* have the past párticiples ō'sŭs, *háted*, and cœp'tŭs, *begún;* the two párticiples *ēxō'sŭs* and *pĕrō'sŭs* are álso in use.

[95] To these *Deféctive Verbs* might be joíned ŏ'vās, *thou exúltest*, ŏ'văt, *he exúlts*, ŏ'vāns, *exúlting:* álso, ă'păgĕ, *awáy with thee*, ăpă'gĭtĕ, *get ye hence.* And here it may be nóticed that the four fóllowing verbs, fă'cĭō, *I do*, dī'cō, *I say*, dū'cō, I *lead*, and fĕ'rō, *I bring* or *I bear*, lose the létter *e*, by the fígure apócopē, in the sécond pérson síngular of the impérative, áctive ; máking *făc, dīc, dūc, fĕr*, insteád of *fă'cĕ, dī'cĕ, dū'cĕ, fĕ'rĕ.* But when *fă'cĭō* is compoúnded with a preposítion it chánges the first vówel of the présent into *i*, and forms its impérative régularly : as, pĕrfĭ'cĭō, *I perfórm ;* pĕr'fĭcĕ, *perfórm thou.*

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs that are úsed, exclúsively, in the third pérson síngular, withoút a nóminative in Latin (but of which the nóminative in En'glish is "*It*" indéfinitely táken,) are cálled *Verbs Impérsonal,* as, dēlēc'tăt, *it delíghteth*, dĕ'cĕt, *it becómeth*, pūgnā'tŭr, *it is fought*, vĭdē'tŭr,[95] *it seems.*

Impérsonal Verbs have all the moods and ténses which Pérsonal Verbs have, with the excéption, perháps, of the impérative: thus,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Dēlēc'tăt, | *it delíghts,* | Vĭdē'tŭr, | *it seems,* |
| Dēlēctā'băt, | *it did delíght,* | Vĭdēbā'tŭr, | *it did seem,* |
| Dēlēctā'vĭt, | *it delíghted,* | Vī'sŭm ēst, | *it seémed,* |
| Dēlēctā'vĕrăt, | *it had delíghted,* | Vī'sŭm ĕ'răt, | *it had seémed,* |
| Dēlēctā'bĭt, | *it will delíght,* | Vĭdē'bĭtŭr, | *it will seem,* |
| Dēlēc'tĕt, | *it may delíght,* | Vĭdĕā'tŭr, | *it may seem,* |
| Dēlēctā'rĕt, | *it might delíght,* | Vĭdērē'tŭr, | *it might seem,* |
| and so forth. | | and so forth. | |

[95] Verbs which are séldom, or néver, found except in the third pérson síngular of one or more of the ténses of the áctive voice are, strictly, *Verbs Impérsonal*:—but mány verbs which are régular in all the pérsons of the áctive voice, are óften assúmed *impérsonally* in the pássive. The verbs próperly términed *Impérsonals* are the fóllowing:—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| dĕ'cĕt, *it becómes,* | mĭ'sĕrĕt, *it píties,* | pœ'nĭtĕt, *it repénts,* |
| lĭ'bĕt, *it pleáses,* | ŏpŏr'tĕt, *it behóves,* | pŭ'dĕt, *it ashámes,* and |
| lĭ'cĕt, *it is láwful,* | pĭ'gĕt, *it irks,* | tæ'dĕt, *it weáries.* |

To which some grammárians add mány more, as, cōn'fĭt, *it is done,* dĕ'fĭt, *it is wánting,* ĭn'fĭt, *he begíns* or ráther *it is begún,* lĭ'quĕt, *it appeárs*; with verbs expréssive of the occúrrences of náture; thus, plŭ'ĭt, *it rains,* nĭn'gĭt, *it snows,* grăn'dĭnăt, *it hails,* gĕ'lăt, *it freézes,* rĕ'gĕlăt, *it thaws,* tŏ'năt, *it thúnders,* fŭl'mĭnăt, *it líghtens,* vēsperā'scĭt, *it begíns to draw tówards évening*: and a múltitude besídes.

Some verbs not strictly impérsonal, are neverthelés óften úsed impérsonally. Of these we shall give, as a spécimen, one or two of each conjugátion:—

1st Conjugation. Jŭ'văt, *it delíghts;* cōn'stăt, *it is agreéd on;* vă'căt, *there is leísure;* spēc'tăt, *it concérns*, cĕrtā'tŭr, *it is contended;* pōtā'tŭr, *it is drunk; &c.*

2nd Conjugation. Dĕ'bĕt, *it ought;* plă'cĕt, *it pleáses;* ăt'tĭnĕt, *it pertaíns;* făvē'tŭr, *fávour is shown;* vĭdē'tŭr, *it appeárs* or *seems; &c.*

3rd Conjugation. Sŭf'fĭcĭt, *it suffíceth;* ĭn'cĭpĭt, *it begíns;* dĕ'sĭnĭt, *it términates* or *gives óver;* crē'dĭtŭr, *it is trústed;* mĭt'tĭtŭr, *it is sent; &c.*

4th Conjugation. Ē'vĕnĭt, *it comes to pass;* cōn'vĕnĭt, *it is meet;* ēx'pĕdĭt, *it is expédient;* sēntī'tŭr, *it is perceíved;* ăpĕrī'tŭr, *it is opened, &c.*

## OF A PARTICIPLE[97].

A PARTICIPLE is a part of speech derived from a Verb, and has share with a Noun Ad′jective, in número, génder, case, and declénsion; and share with a Verb, in tense and signification.

There are four distínct sorts or kinds of PARTICIPLES:

1. One of the présent tense, which in En′glish ends álways in *-ing;* and in Látin álways in *-āns* or in *-ēns:* as, *lóving* ă′māns; *teáching*, dŏ′cēns.

2. One of the fúture, in *-rŭs*, which implíes a líkelihood or desígn of dóing a thing: as, ămātū′rŭs,[98] *abóut to love.*

3. One of the preterpérfect tense, which has génerally a pássive significátion, and in En′glish ends (for the most part) in *-d*, *-t*, or *-n:*—as, lēc′tŭs, *read;* dōc′tŭs, *taught;* vīsŭs, *seen*[99].

---

IRREGULAR VERBS, Prō′dēst, *it prófits;* rē′fērt, *it concérns;* īn′tĕrēst, *it ínterests;* sŭ′pĕrēst, *it remains;* ădī′tŭr, *it is come únto;* ăbĕūndŭm ēst, *it is to be* or *must be gone awáy.*

97 A Párticiple owes its name to the circumstance of partícipating or partáking of *Génder* and *Declénsion* in cómmon with AD′JECTIVES, and of *Time* and *Significátion* in cómmon with VERBS. Some párticiples of the présent and past ténses admít éven of compárison:—thus, ă′māns, *lóving*, ămān′tĭŏr, *more loving*, ămāntīs′sĭmŭs, *most lóving:* dōc′tŭs, *taught* or *leárned*, dōc′tĭŏr, *more taught* or *more leárned*, dōctīs′sĭmŭs, *the most taught* or *véry leárned.* But as in this sense the idéa of tense or time is not stríctly blénded with the significátion, séveral grammárians rejéct the name of *Párticiples* in such ínstances, and adópt that of *Partícipials.* Párticiples admítting of degreés of compárison are génerally the source or órigin of ádverbs; which, in like manner, admít of compárison:—thus, from ă′māns, *lóving*, are derívéd ămān′tĕr, *lóvingly:* ămă′ntĭŭs, *more lóvingly*, ămāntīs′sĭmē, *most lóvingly:* and símilarly from dōc′tŭs, *leárned*, come the ádverbs dōc′tē, *leárnedly*, dōc′tĭŭs, *more leárnedly*, dōctīs′sĭmē, *most leárnedly.*

98 With the verb SŬM this párticiple is fréquently úsed (and with élegance) insteád of the fúture of the indícative of verbs, espécially if *Púrpose* or *Inténtion* be sígnified; and with *sīm* it is élegantly employed for the présent, or fúture, and, with *ēs′sēm*, for the plupérfect, of the poténtial mood: thus, prŏfĕc′tūrŭs sŭm, *I will go*, that is, *I am abóut to go;* nōn dŭ′bĭtŏ quīn sĭt făctū′rŭs, *I doubt not but he may* (or *will*) *do it;* nōn dŭbĭtā′vī quīn ēs′sĕt vēntū′rŭs, *I doubted not but he would come:* ráther than "*quīn fă′cĭăt, quīn fă′cĕrĕt, quīn fē′cĕrĭt; quīn vĕ′nīrĕt, quīn vēnīssĕt, quīn vēnĕrĭt.*" All verbs which have no súpines, want of course this párticiple, which is derívéd from the súpine in *-ū*.

99 In Látin the párticiple of the past tense ends inváriably in *-ŭs*, precéded for the most part by *t*, not unfréquently by *s*, sómetimes by *x*, and in one ínstance, námely, mŏr′tŭŭs, *dead*, by the vówel ŭ.

4. One of the fúture, in *-dŭs*, which has álso a pássive signification, and exprésses a fúture áction; as, ămān′dŭs, *that is tò be*, or *that must be lóved*, else, *that is deserving* or *wórthy of béing lóved.*[100]

*Note.* All párticiples are declíned like nouns ádjective: those of threc terminátions, like *bŏ′nŭs*, and those of one termination, like *fē′līx.*

## OF AN ADVERB.[101]

An Ad′verb is a part of speech joíned to verbs, ádjectives, and súbstantives, to increáse or dimínish their significátion: as, he speaks *well;* they write *bádly.*

## OF A CONJUNCTION.[102]

A Conjunc′tion is a part of speech that joins words and séntences togéther; as, my fáther *and* móther.

---

[100] The párticiple in *-dŭs* is véry séldom, or perháps néver, úsed in a sense púrely denóting *Futúrity;* for, its ímport is that of Necéssity, Dúty, or Mérit, ráther than that of bare and ábsolute *Futúrity.* Thus, *dī′cō lĭ′tĕrās ā mē scrīp′tŭm ī′rī*, and *dī′cō lĭ′tĕrās ā mē scrībĕn′dās ĕs′sĕ*, are véry dífferent indeéd in meáning,—the fórmer sígnifying, *I say that a létter will be wrítten by me:* but the látter, *I say that a létter must be wrítten by me*, or, *that I am oblíged to write a létter.*

[101] An ádverb, as the name impórts, is a part of speech ádded to a verb to expréss *Quántity, Quálity, Mánner, Time, Or′der*, or *Place.* And not ónly to verbs, but álso to nouns, prónouns, párticiples, and éven to óther ádverbs are these óften adjoíned. Of ádverbs some are deríved from súbstantives, as pār′tīm, *pártly*, mĕ′rĭtō, *desérvedly:*—and some are abbreviátions of nouns combíned with prónouns or prepositions; as, hŏ′dĭē, *to-day*, for hōc dĭ′ē, *on this day;* ăd′mŏdŭm, *véry*, for ăd mŏ′dŭm, *únto meásure:*—óthers are deríved from ádjectives; as, āltē, *lóftily* or *deéply*, from āl′tŭs, *high* or *deep;* brĕ′vĭtĕr, *briéfly*, from brĕ′vĭs, *short;* vŏlĕn′tĕr, *wíllingly*, from vŏ′lēns, *wílling.* These génerally admít of compárison, if the ádjectives or párticiples (whence they are deríved) can be compáred; and their compárative and supérlative degreés of compárison are álways análogous to those of the ádjectives or párticiples from which they spring: as, bĕ′nĕ, *well*, mĕ′lĭŭs, *bétter*, ŏp′tĭmē, *best*, from bŏ′nŭs, *good;* pŏtĕn′tĕr, *pówerfully*, pŏtĕn′tĭŭs, *more pówerfully*, pŏtĕntĭs′sĭmē, *most pówerfully*, from pŏ′tēns, *áble.* In mány ínstances the neúter génder of ádjectives or of párticiples, is usúrped advérbially: as, dūl′cĕ, *sweétly*, plūs, *more*, trānsvēr′să, *askéw* or *leéringly.* And a few ádverbs are deríved from verbs: as, scī′lĭcĕt, *námely*, for scī′ās lĭ′cĕt, *it is permítted thou know.*

[102] The line of distínction betweén ádverbs and conjúnctions is óften so indetérminate, that it is dífficult in some ínstances to distínguish betweén

## OF A PREPOSITION.

A Preposi'tion is a part of speech most cómmonly set befóre a Noun;[103] as, ān'tĕ mĕrī'dĭēm, *befóre noon-dáy;* ăd dēx'trăm, *to* or *on the right hand:*—or else is jóined in composítion to Nouns, Verbs, Párticiples, and Ad'verbs; as, pĕrār'dŭŭs, *véry árduous*, prǣ'stō, *I stand befóre*, or *I excél*, īndōc'tŭs, *unleárned*, dē'sŭpĕr, *from abóve.*

These Prepositions have an accúsative case áfter them.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ăd, | *to, at*, or *for*, | Jūx'tā, | *beside* or *nigh to*, |
| Ādvēr'sŭm, Ādvēr'sŭs, | *against*, | Ŏb,[105] | *for* or *because of*, |
| Ān'tĕ, | *befóre*, | Pĕ'nĕs, | *in the pówer of*, |
| Ă'pŭd, | *at, with*, or *near*, | Pĕr, | *by* or *through*, |
| Cīr'cā, Cīr'cŭm, Cīr'cĭtĕr, | *abóut*, | Pō'nĕ, | *behínd*, |
| Cĭs, Cĭ'trā,[104] | *on this side*, | Pōst, | *áfter* or *since*, |
| Cōn'trā, | *against*, | Prǣ'tĕr, | *beside*, or *excépt*, |
| Ē'rgā, | *tówards*, | Prŏ'pĕ, | *nigh*, or *near to*, |
| Ēx'trā, | *withóut*, | Prōp'tĕr, | *for* or *because of*, |
| In'frā, | *beneáth*, | Sĕcūn'dŭm, | *accórding to*, |
| Īn'tĕr, | *betweén* or *amóng*, | Sĕ'cŭs, | *by* or *alóng*, |
| Īn'trā, | *withín.* | Sŭ'prā, | *abóve*, |
| | | Trāns, | *acróss*, |
| | | Vēr'sŭs, | *tówards*, |
| | | Ūl'trā, | *beyónd*, |
| | | Ūs'quĕ, | *as far as.* |

*Observe.* *Vēr'sŭs* is set áfter its case; as, Lōndī'nŭm vēr'sŭs, *tówards Lóndon.*

Likewise *pĕ'nĕs* and *ūs'quĕ* may be so pláced.

---

those two Parts of Speech, and to assígn to each its right place. It éven not unfréquently háppens, indeéd, that the same words are at one time *Ad'verbs*, and at anóther, *Conjúnctions;* and that words which mány grammárians call *Conjúnctions*, óthers call *Ad'verbs.*

[103] I have táken the líberty of enlárging this pórtion of the E'ton text, becaúse (to me) it appeáred to be by much too brief, and at the same time véry váguely wórded.

[104] *Ci'trā* in the láter prose wríters has sómetimes the signification of *withoút*, e. g. "Phī'dĭās ĭn ē'bŏrĕ lōn'gē cĭ'trā ǣ'mŭlŭm trā'dĭtŭr." *Phídias is said to have been quite withoút rival in cárving ivóry.*

[105] In composítion *ŏb* signífies *agáinst;* thus, pō'nō, *I set*, ōppō'nō, *I set agáinst.*

The Prepositions following have an ablative case:—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ā, ăb, ābs,[106] | *from* or *by*, | Pă'lăm, | *openly*, |
| Ābs'quĕ, | *without*, | Præ, | *before* or *in front*, *on account of*, |
| Cō'răm, | *in presence of*, | Prō,[109] | *for*, or *instead of*, |
| Cŭm,[107] | *with*, | Sĭ'nĕ, | *without*, |
| Dē, | *of* or *concerning*, | Tĕ'nŭs, | *up to* or *as far as*. |
| Ē, ēx,[108] | *from* or *out of*, | | |

*Observe. Tĕ'nŭs* is set after its case; as, pōr'tā tĕ'nŭs, *as far as the gate*:—and, in the plural number, the noun is commonly put in the genitive case: as, aū'rĭŭm tĕ'nŭs, *up to the ears*.

The Prepositions following serve to both cases, that is, to the accusative and also to the ablative.

Clăm, *unknown to;* as, clăm pă'trĕm *vel* pă'trĕ, *unknown to my father*, or *without my father's knowledge*.

Ĭn,[110] for *into*, signifying *motion towards*, has an accusative case; as ĕ'ō ĭn ūr'bĕm, *I go into the city*.

Ĭn, for *in* only, or signifying either *motion* or *rest*, *in a place*, serves to the ablative case; as, ĭn tē spēs ēst, *in thee is my hope*.

Sŭb,[111] *under*, as, sŭb nōc'tĕm, *a little before night:* sŭb jū'dĭcĕ līs ēst, *the strife or matter is before the judge*.

---

[106] *Ā* is used only before consonants; *ăb* before vowels; *ābs* before *c*, *q*, and *t*.

[107] In composition *cŭm* is for the most part changed into *cōn-*, as cōnsĭ'mĭlĭs, *very like;* cōnjūn'gō, *I conjoin:* but if the word, with whic this preposition is compounded, begin with the letter *l*, then *cōn-* becomes *cōl-*, as cōllū'dō, *I sport with:* or if the word begin with *b*, *p*, or *m*, then *cōn-* is made *cŏm-*, as cōm'bĭbō, *I drink together with*, cōmplō'rō, *I bewail together with:*—or, if the word begin with a vowel, the final consonant of the preposition is, in general, dropped; as, cŏăcēr'vō, *I amass together with;* cŏ'ĕmō, *I buy together with:* but the verb ĕ'dō, *I eat*, retains the *m*, as, cŏm'ĕdō, *I eat up*.

[108] *Ē* is prefixed only to consonants, *ēx* both to consonants and vowels.

[109] *Prō* in composition usually implies "*forward* or *forth:*" as prōmŏ'vĕō, *I move forward;* prōdū'cō, *I lead forth*. And, here, it should be observed, that although, as a monosyllable, the preposition *prō* be long, yet in composition it is frequently short. In some words, indeed, it seems to be habitually short; in others, habitually long; and in others, common.

[110] In composition with adjectives the preposition *ĭn* generally signifies *not;* as īnfīr'mŭs, *not strong*, that is, *infirm* or *feeble;* ĭn'ūtĭlĭs, *not useful*, that is, *useless:*—but in composition with verbs it usually retains its primitive meaning; as, īn'vŏlō, *I fly in*.

[111] The preposition *sŭb* in compound words generally weakens or di-

Sūb'tĕr, *beneáth*, as, sūb'tĕr tĕr'răm, *únder the earth:* sūb'tĕr ă'quā, *únder the wáter.*

Sŭ'pĕr, *óver*, as, sŭ'pĕr lă'pĭdĕm, *upón a stone:* sŭ'pĕr vĭ'rĭdī frōn'dĕ, *upón the green leaf.*[112]

## OF AN INTERJECTION.

An Interjéction is a part of speech[113] which betókens a súdden emótion of mind; be it grief, joy, or óther pássion.

---

## THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

There are three Cóncords, or Agreements, in Látin:

1. Betweén the nóminative case and the verb.

---

minishes the significátion of ány símple word with which it is joíned: thus, sūbrī'dĕō, *I laugh a líttle*, or *I smile:*—but in some ínstances it retaíns its oríginal meáning: as sūbscrībō, *I write únder* or *I subscríbe.*

[112] Befóre dismíssing the súbject of prepositíons it may be right to nótice, that there are four sýllables óften found in composítion with words, but which néver occúr by themsélves:—these are cálled *Inséparable Prepositíons,* and are, ăm-, *round aboút*, dī- *vèl* dĭs-, *asúnder*, rĕ-, *agaín*, and sē-, *asíde* or *apárt:* to which some add vē-, *pósitively not*, and cōn, *togéther*, for cŭm, *with.*

[113] Interjéctions expréss compéndiously a whole séntence in one word, —represénting, instantly, to the mind of a heárer, some súdden emótion of soul as respécts the útterer. A shriek, for exámple, is a nátural sound cómmon to all lánguages,—and expréssive of súdden dread:—a groan is, líkewise, a nátural sound expréssive of deep súffering: a sigh betókens heáviness of heart, whéther occásioned by grief, or by desíre, or by anxíety. Yet, as no one of these three can be regárded as an articulate sound, they do not fall (próperly) únder the head of *Interjéctions*, grammátically so cálled: though séveral of the acknówledged interjéctions have véry líttle artículate in them; thus, 'st, *hush*, hā, hā, hē, *sounds of laúghing.*

Interjections are úsually divíded ínto those of joy, as, ē'vāx, ĭ'ō, *hey! brave!*—of grief, as, ah, heī, heū, ē'heū, *ha! woe! alás!* of wonder, as, vāh, pā'pæ, *strange!* of praise, as, eū, eū'gĕ, *well done!*—of surprise, as, ă'tăt, *a, ahá?*—of calling, as, hō, ē'hō, *ho, ho! there!* —of attention, as, hêm, *hah!*—of exclaiming, as, ōh! prōh! *O! ah!* of imprecation, as væ, *woe on it!*—of derision, as huī, *awáy! sílly* with séveral óthers.

And not unfréquently are Nouns úsed for Interjéctions:—thus, mă'lŭm, *with a míschief!* mĭ'sĕrŭm, *O wrétched!* pāx, *sílence! hush!* īnfăn'dŭm, *O fy for shame!* nĕ'fās, *O the víllany!* In some instances too the same interjéction denótes one pássion at one time, and anóther pássion at anóther:—as, vāh, *O joy, O sórrow,* or *O wónder.*—An interjéction díffers from an ádverb, in that it can be put indepéndent of ány óther word whatéver, and be a pérfect séntence (if we may so speak) in itsélf.

2. Betweén the súbstantive and the ádjective.
3. Betweén the antecédent and the rélative.

## THE FIRST CONCORD

A VERB agreés with its nóminative case in númber, and in pérson.

In órder to find out the nóminative case, ask the quéstion *who?* or *what?* with the verb; and the word that ánswers to the quéstion is the nóminative case to the verb; as, *who reads? who regárds not?*

*The* máster *reads, but* ye *regárd not.*
Præcēp′tŏr lĕ′gĭt, vōs vē′rō nēglĭ′gĭtĭs.

Sómetimes an infínitive mood, or a séntence, is the nóminative case to a verb; and sómetimes, the súbstantive to an ádjective; and in this evént the ádjective or the rélative must be in the neúter génder: as,

Dīlū′cŭlō sūr′gĕrĕ sălūbĕr′rĭmŭm ēst.
*To rise betímes in the mórning is most whólesome.*
Ĭn tēm′pŏrĕ vē′nī, quŏd ōm′nĭŭm ēst prī′mŭm.
*I came in seáson, which is the chief thing of all.*

Two or more nóminative cáses síngular requíre a verb plúral, which must agreé with the nóminative case of the most wórthy pérson.

Now, the first pérson is more wórthy than the sécond, and the sécond more wórthy than the third: as,

Ĕ′gŏ ĕt tū sŭ′mŭs ĭn tū′tō.
*I and thou are in sáfety.*
Tū ĕt pă′tĕr pĕrīclĭtā′mĭnī.
*Thou and thy fáther are in jeópardy.*

The súbstantive which comes next áfter the verb, and ánswers únto the quéstion *whom?* or *what?* made by the verb, shall cómmonly be the accúsative case,—excépt the verb by some partícular Rule, requíre anóther case áfter it: as,

Sī cŭ′pĭs plăcē′rĕ măgīs′trō, ū′tĕrĕ dīlĭgēn′tĭā.
*If you desíre to please the máster, use díligence.*

*Obsèrve.* In this Exámple, *măgīs′trō* is the dátive, and *dīlĭgēn′tĭā* the áblative case, accórding to the Rules of Látin Sýntax or The Constrúction of Látin Grámmar.

## THE SECOND CONCORD.

When you have an ádjective, ask this quéstion, *who* or *what?* with the ádjective; and the word which ánswers to the quéstion shall be the súbstantive to the ádjective.

The ádjective, whéther it be a noun, prónoun, or párticiple, agreés with its súbstantive in génder, númber, and case: as,

Ămī′cūs cēr′tŭs īn rē īncēr′tā cēr′nĭtūr.
*A sure friend is discérned in a doúbtful affaír.*

*Observátion 1st.* The másculine génder is more wórthy than the féminine, and the féminine (in things ánimate,) more wórthy than the neúter. But, agaín, in things withoút life, the neúter génder is the most wórthy: as,

Laūs ĕt īmpĕ′rĭūm quǣ pĕtīīs′tī.
*The praise and domínion which thou soúghtest.*

And in such evént, though the súbstantives or antecédents be of the másculine or féminine génder, and none of them of the neúter, yet may the ádjective, or rélative, be put in the neúter génder: as,

Ār′cŭs ĕt că′lămī sūnt bŏ′nă.
*The bow and árrows are good.*

Ār′cŭs ĕt că′lămī quǣ frēgīs′tī.
*The bow and árrows which thou brókest.*

*Observátion 2nd.* Two (or more) súbstantives síngular will have an ádjective plúral; which ádjective shall agreé with the súbstantive of the most wórthy génder: as,

Rēx ĕt rēgī′nă sūnt bĕā′tī.
*The king and queen are háppy.*

*Observátion 3rd.* When, in En′glish, the word "*thing*" is put with an ádjective, you may in Látin leave out the súbstantive "*nĕgō′tĭŭm,*" and put the ádjective in the neúter génder: as, mūl′tă mē īmpĕdĭē′rūnt, *mány things have híndered me.*

## THE THIRD CONCORD.

When you have a rélative, ask this quéstion, *who?* or *what?* with the verb; and the word that ánswers únto the quéstion shall be the antecédent to the rélative.

The rélative agreés with its antecédent in génder, númber and pérson: as,

Vĭr să′pĭt quī paū′că lŏ′quĭtŭr.
*The* man *is wise* who *speaks few words.*

*Observátion* 1*st.* If the rélative cleárly refér to two antecédents, or to more, then it must be of the plúral númber:—as, tū mŭl′tŭm dŏr′mīs, ĕt sæ′pĕ pō′tās, quæ ām′bŏ sūnt cŏr′pŏrī ĭnĭmī′că, *thou sleépest much, and drínkest óften,*—both which *things are injúrious to the bódy.*

*Observátion* 2*nd.* When the En′glish word "that" can be túrned ínto "*who*" or "*which,*" it is a rélative; ótherwise it is a conjúnction, expréssed in Látin by *quŏd*, or *ŭt:* and, in máking Latin, the conjúnction may be put awáy, by túrning the nóminative case to the verb ínto the accúsative, and the verb ínto the infínitive mood: as, gaū′dĕō quŏd tū bĕ′nĕ vă′lēs *or* gaū′dĕō tē bĕ′nĕ vălē′rĕ, *I am glad* that *you are well.*

---

*Páradigm (or Géneral Táble) of Régular Verbs, shówing the Terminátion of the first and sécond Pérsons síngular of the séveral Ténses of the dífferent Moods:—álso the Infínitives, Párticiples, and Súpines.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.

| | ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *C.* 1. | -ō[114], | -ās, | -ŏr, | -ā′rĭs, |
| 2. | -ĕō, | -ēs, | -ĕŏr, | -ē′rĭs, |
| 3. | -ŏ, | -ĭs, | -ŏr, | -ĕrĭs, |
| 4. | -ĭō, | -īs, | -ĭŏr, | -ī′rĭs. |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *C.* 1. | -ā′bām, | -ā′bās, | -ā′băr, | -ābā′rĭs, |
| 2. & 3 | -ē′bām, | -ē′bās, | -ē′băr, | -ēbā′rĭs, |
| 4. | -ĭē′bām, | -ĭē′bās, | -ĭē′băr, | -ĭēbā′rĭs. |

[114] There are betweén thírty and fórty verbs of the first conjugátion, which términate in *-ĭō*,—and from fifteén to twénty símple verbs (besídes their númerous cómpounds) of the third conjugátion, which términate símilarly: these all retaín the létter *i* in the impérfect and fúture ténses of the indícative mood, and in the présent of the poténtial, both áctive and pássive; álso in the présent párticiple, the gérunds, and fúture párticiple in *-dŭs.*

| ACTIVE. | 3. Preterpérfect Tense. | | PASSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1,2,3,4. -ī, | -īs′tī, | -ŭs sŭm, | -ŭs ĕs. |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1,2,3,4. -ĕrām, | -ĕrās, | -ŭs ĕ′rām, | -ŭs ĕ′rās. |

5. Fúture Tense.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1. | -ā′bŏ, | -ā′bĭs, | -ā′bŏr, | -ā′bĕrĭs, |
| 2. | -ēbŏ, | -ē′bĭs, | -ē′bŏr, | -ē′bĕrĭs, |
| 3. | -ām, | -ēs, | -ăr, | -ē′rĭs, |
| 4. | -ĭām, | -ĭēs, | -ĭăr. | -ĭē′rĭs. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1. | —— | -ā, | —— | -ā′rĕ, |
| 2 | —— | -ē, | —— | -ē′rĕ, |
| 3. | —— | -ĕ, | —— | -ĕrĕ, |
| 4 | —— | -ī. | —— | -ī′rĕ. |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Présent Tense.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1. | -ēm, | -ēs, | -ĕr, | -ēr′īs, |
| 2. | -ĕām, | -ĕās, | -ĕăr, | -ēā′rĭs, |
| 3. | -ām, | -ās, | -ăr, | -ā′rĭs, |
| 4 | -ĭām, | -ĭās, | -ĭăr, | -ĭā′rĭs. |

2. Preterímperfect Tense.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1. | -ā′rēm, | -ā′rēs, | -ā′rĕr, | -ārē′rĭs, |
| 2. | -ē′rēm, | -ē′rēs, | -ē′rĕr, | -ērē′rĭs, |
| 3. | -ĕrēm, | -ĕrēs, | -ĕrĕr, | -ĕrē′rĭs, |
| 4. | -ī′rēm, | -ī′rēs, | -ī′rĕr, | -īrē′rĭs. |

3. Preterpérfect Tense.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1,2,3,4. -ĕrĭm, | -ĕrĭs, | -ŭs sīm, | -ŭs sīs. |

4. Preterplúperfect Tense.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1,2,3,4. -īs′sēm, | -īs′ses. | -ŭs ēs′sēm, | -ŭs ēs′sēs. |

5. Fúture Tense.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1,2,3,4. ŏ, | -ĕrīs, | -ŭs ĕ′rŏ, | -ŭs ĕ′rĭs. |

| ACTIVE. | INFINITIVE MOOD. | PASSIVE. |
|---|---|---|
| C. 1. | -ā′rĕ, -īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ā′rī, -ŭm ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī, |
| 2. | -ē′rĕ, -īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ē′rī, -ŭm. ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī, |
| 3. | -ĕrĕ, -īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ī, -ŭm ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī, |
| 4. | -ī′rĕ, īs′sĕ, -ū′rŭm ēs′sĕ, | -ī′rī, -ŭm ēs′sĕ, -ŭm ī′rī. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | *Présent.* | *Fúture.* | *Past.* | *Future.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C. 1. | -āns, | -rŭs, | -ŭs, | -dŭs, |
| 2. | -ēns, | -rŭs, | -ŭs, | -dŭs; |
| 3. | -ēns, | -rŭs, | -ŭs, | -dŭs, |
| 4 | -ĭēns, | -rŭs, | -ŭs, | -dŭs, |

SUPINES.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| C. 1,2,3,4. | -ŭm, | -ū. |

END OF THE ACCIDENCE.

# RULES

FOR THE

# GENDERS OF NOUNS.

☞ These Rules being in Hexámeter verse, and Látin verse requíring such fínal sýllables as have eíther a *vówel*, or a *díphthong*, or *m* for terminátional létter, to be elíded, or at least to be véry spáringly pronoúnced when the fól-lowing word begíns with a vówel or a díphthong, all the sýllables which, in scánning, are cut off by the fígures *Synalœ́pha* and *Ecthlípsis*, are here prínted in a smáller type than the rest of the text. Now respécting fínal *m* befóre an inítial vowel, or an inítial díphthong, it is to be remárked, that the *m* ítself is not drópped, but that the vowel before it is sílent, or neárly sílent; while the fínal *m* is so pronoúnced as to seem (to a heárer) to begín the word which fóllows it. Thus, in the third line belów, "*flŭvĭṓrūm ; ūt*, Tī́brīs," ought to be pronoúnced as if wrítten "*flŭ́vĭōr ; mūt*, Tī́brīs."

*** In these verses, as was méntioned indeéd at the end of the Préface, all short fínal sýllables énding in a cónsonant are márked long (*by posítion*) befóre an inítial cónsonant; but sýllables léngthened by *cæsúra* are márked short, with an ásterisk áfter them. And note, a dágger set áfter ány partícular short sýllable denótes that though the sýllable is *short in itsélf*, yet it is *long by posítion* in the verse.

*Obsérve.* All Rules in verse are best commítted to mémory by scánning them on the fíngers in leárning them, and áfterwards (for the first week at least) by repeáting them in this mánner when leárned : for thus the toil of leárning them is greátly dimínished, and the reténtion of them will be more lásting.

## PROPER NAMES.

### 1. Másculine.

*Prōp'rĭă quǣ mắrĭbūs trĭbŭūn'tūr mās'cŭlă dī́cās :*
*ūt sūnt Dīvṓrūm ;* Mārs, Bāc'chŭs, Ăpōl'lŏ : *vĭrṓrŭm ;*
*ūt*, Că'tŏ, Vīrgĭ́lĭūs : *flŭvĭṓrum ; ūt*, Tīb'rĭs, Ŏrōn'tēs : [1]
*mēn'sĭum ; ŭt*, Octṓbēr : *vēntōrum ; ūt*, Lībs, Nŏ́tŭs, Aūs'tĕr.

[1] To the names of rívers might be ádded those of moúntains, as béing, for the most part, másculine : such are, Hĕ́lĭcōn, Āt'lās, Pē'lĭŏn, Jū'ră, Cĭthæ̆'rōn. But to this Rule there are excéptions in regárd both of the one and the óther : for, the names of séveral rívers in -ă, not increásing in the génitive case, are féminine, conformably to the First Spécial Rule for the Génders of Nouns. Thus, Āl'bŭlă, *the áncient name of the Tíber* Mā'trŏnă, *the Marne*, Sē'quănă, *the Seine*, with some óthers, are féminine : and of moúntains, álso, mány take their génder from the términátion : thus Æ̅'tnă, Æ̅'tnæ̅, *mount Ætna*, Ōs'să, Ōs'sæ̅, *Os'sa*, Œ̅'tă, Œ̅'tæ̅, *Œ'ta*, Āl'pēs, Āl'pĭŭm, *the Alps*, are féminine ; and Sōrāc'tĕ Sōrāc'tĭs, *mount Soráctē*, neúter.

### 2. Féminine.

*Prōp'rĭă fœmĭ'nĕūm rĕfĕrēn'tĭă nŏ'mĭnă sĕx'ŭm, fœmĭ'nĕō gĕ'nĕrī trĭbŭūn'tŭr: sī'vĕ Dĕă'rŭm sūnt; ŭt* Jū'nŏ, Vĕ'nūs: *mŭlĭĕ'brĭa; ŭt,* Ăn'nă, Phĭlŏ'tĭs: *ŭr'bĭum; ŭt,* Ē'lĭs, Opūs: *rĕgĭō'num; ŭt,* Græ'cĭă, Pĕr'sĭs; *ĭn'sŭlæ ĭ'tēm nŏ'mēn; ceū* Crē'tă, Brĭtān'nĭă, Cўp'rūs.[3] *Ēxcĭpĭēn'dă tă'mēn quæ'dām sūnt ŭr'bĭum; ŭt, ĭs'tă*[4] *mās'cŭlă:* Sūl'mo, Ăgrăgās: *quæ'dām neūtrā'lĭa;* ŭt, Ărgŏs, Tī'būr, Prænēs'te;[5] *ēt gĕ'nŭs* Ăn'xūr *quōd dăt ŭtrūm'quĕ.*

## NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

### 1. Féminine Génder.

*Āppēllātī'va ăr'bŏrum ĕ'rūnt mŭlĭĕ'brĭa; ŭt,* āl'nŭs, cūprēs'sŭs, cēd'rŭs. *Mās* spī'nŭs, *mās* ŏlĕās'tĕr:[6] *ēt sūnt neū'tră,* sī'lĕr, sūbĕr, thūs, rō'bŭr, ăcĕr'*quĕ.*

### 2. E'picene Nouns.

*Sūnt ĕ'tĭām Vŏlŭcrūm; ceū* pās'sĕr, hĭrūn'dŏ; *Fĕrā'rŭm; ŭt,* tīg'rĭs, vūl'pēs: *ēt Pĭs'cĭum; ŭt,* ōs'trĕă, cē'tŭs, *dĭc'ta ĕpĭcœ'nă:*[7] *quĭ'bŭs vōx īp'să gĕ'nŭs fĕ'rĕt āp'tŭm.*

---

[2] The names of some few cоúntries, as Pōn'tŭs, *a région bórdering upón the Eúxine sea,* are, by their terminátion, másculine; in confórmity to the *Spécial* ráther than to the *Géneral Rule.*

[3] Althoúgh the names of most íslands be féminine, yet Āl'bĭŏn, *the ísland of Great Brítain,* which (like Pē'lĭŏn, méntioned in the first note abóve) ought, by its terminátion, to be neúter, is more próperly másculine.

[4] The names of most towns énding in *-o,* and all plúral names of cíties in *-i,* are másculine: as, Hīp'pŏ, *a town of Af'rica,* Phĭlĭp'pī, *a cíty of Macedónia,* Gă'bĭī, *a cíty of the Vólsci,* Părĭ'sĭī, *Páris, the metrópolis of France.*

[5] Séveral óther excéptions might be ádded, partícularly of names of the sécond declénsion énding in -ŏn, as Ăbȳ'dŏn, *a cíty on the Héllespont,* but which was more fréquently wrítten Ăbȳ'dŏs, of the féminine génder. Some grammárians, howéver, class all próper names in *-ŏn,* únder the head of nouns in *-ŭm.*

[6] To these másculines add pălĭū'rŭs, *búckthorn,* rhām'nŭs, *rheinberry bush,* and vĕ'prēs, *a bríer;* which, though shrubs ráther than trees, come as próperly únder this Rule, as mȳr'tŭs, *a mýrtle,* and mány óthers. Cŭprēs'sŭs, *a cýpress,* lă'rīx, *a larch,* lō'tŭs, *the lote-tree,* and rŭ'bŭs, *a brámble,* with a few more, are occásionally másculine, and may thérefore be said to be of doúbtful génder.

[7] In some ánimals the dífference of sex is not immédiately óbvious; neíther, indeéd, for the géneral púrposes of lánguage, is it nécessary to ascertaín it. In Látin, the names of ánimals of this descríption are cálled *Nouns E'picene,* of which the génder (like that of the names of

### 3. Neúter Génder.

*Ăt'tămĕn ēx cūnc'tīs sūp'rā, rĕlĭquīs'quĕ, nŏtān'dŭm,*
*ōm'nĕ quŏd ēx'ĭt ĭn* -ŭm,† *seū Græ'cūm, sī'vĕ Lătī'nŭm,*
*ĕs'sĕ gĕ'nus neū'trūm:*[3] *sīc ĭnvărĭā'bĭlĕ nŏ'mĕn.*

## FIRST SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS NOT INCREASING ARE FEMININE.

*Nŏ'mēn nōn crēs'cēns gĕnĭtī'vō ; ceū* că'rŏ cār'nĭs,
cāp'ră că'præ, nū'bēs nū'bīs ; *gĕ'nŭs ēst mŭlĭē'brĕ.*

### 1. Nouns Másculine excépted.

*Mās'cŭlă nŏ'mĭna ĭn* -ă* *dīcūn'tūr mūl'tă vĭrō'rŭm :*
*ŭt,* scrī'ba, ās'sĕclă, scūr'ra, *ēt* rā'bŭlă, līx'ă, lănīs'tă.
*Mās'cŭlă, Græcō'rūm quōt dēclīnā'tĭŏ prī'mă*
*fūn'dĭt ĭn* -ās, *ĕt ĭn* -ēs ;[9] *ĕt ăb ĭl'līs quōt pĕr* ă *fī'ūnt:*
*ŭt* să'trăpās să'trăpa, āthlē'tēs āthlē'tă.[10] *Lĕgūn'tŭr*
*mās'cŭla ī'tēm,* vēr'rēs, nātā'lĭs, ăquā'lĭs: *ăb ās'sĕ*
*nā'ta; ŭt,* cēntūs'sīs : *cōnjūn'gĕ* lĭē'nĭs, *ĕt* ōr'bĭs,
cāl'lĭs, caū'lĭs, fōl'lĭs, cōl'lĭs, mēn'sĭs, *ĕt* ēn'sĭs,
fūs'tĭs, fū'nĭs, cēn'chrīs, pā'nĭs, crī'nĭs, *ĕt* īg'nĭs ;
cās'sĭs, fās'cĭs, tōr'rĭs, sēn'tĭs, pīs'cĭs, *ĕt* ūn'guĭs ;
*ēt* vēr'mĭs, vēc'tĭs, pōs'tĭs : sŏcĭē'tŭr *ĕt* āx'ĭs.[11]

---

inánimate things) is régulated by the terminátion. Thus, by the Spécial Rule for the énding, pās'sĕr, *a spárrow*, cōr'vŭs, *a ráven*, cē'tŭs, *a whale*, are másculine ; whilst vūl'pēs, *a fox*, fē'lĭs, *a cat*, ă'quĭlă, *an eágle*, are féminine ; althoúgh each inclúdes both the male and fémale. The names howéver of séveral ánimals, in which the dífference of sex is not álways ínstantly appárent, are to be excépted : such, for exámple, as tāl'pă, *a mole*, dā'mă, *a deer*, pēr'dīx, *a pártridge*, lī'māx, *a snail*, of doúbtful génder : vēr'mĭs, *a worm*, lĕ'ō, *a líon*, mūs, *a mouse*, dēl'phīn, *a dólphin*, másculine : că'nĭs, *a dog* or *bitch*, bōs, *a cow* or *ox*, sūs, *a hog*, cómmon of two génders, that is, both másculine and féminine.

[8] Though this Rule holds good in most ínstances, yet the names of wómen, as Glȳcē'rĭŭm, *Glýcery*, must be excépted :—to these, álso, may be ádded, the names of ships, and of gems.

[9] As tĭā'rās, *a túrban or sash for the head ;* ăcī'nācēs, *a scýmitar* or *faúlchion*. In Greek, both these nouns are of the first declénsion ; but in Látin, the fórmer is of the first declénsion, and the látter of the third.

[10] To these excéptions in -ă, add nĕ'pă, *a scórpion ;* álso, the próper name Ā'drĭă or Hā'drĭă, *the Adriátic sea or gulf :* as béing of the más-culine génder.

[11] In like mánner must be excépted cŭ'cŭmĭs, *a cúcumber*, mŏlā'rĭs, *a mill-stone*, ōr'chĭs, *a sort of herb, álso a fish ;* with some óthers.

*Măs'cŭla ĭn* -ĕr;† *ceū,* vēn'tĕr; *ĭn* -ŏs,† *vĕl* -ŭs; *ūt,* lŏ'gŏs, ān'nŭs.
*Fœmĭ'nĕi āt gĕ'nĕrīs sūnt,* mā'tĕr, hŭ'mūs, dŏ'mŭs, āl'vŭs, *ēt* cŏ'lŭs, *ēt quār'tœ prō frūc'tū* fī'cŭs, ăcūs'*quĕ,* pōr'tĭcŭs, *āt'quĕ* trĭ'būs, sōc'rūs, nŭ'rŭs, *ēt* mă'nŭs, ī'dūs: *hūc* ă'nŭs *āddēn'da ēst, hūc mȳs'tĭcă* vān'nŭs *Ĭāc'chī.*
*Hīs jūn'gās* -ŏs *ĭn* -ŭs† *vērtēn'tĭă Grœ'că:* păpȳ'rŭs, āntĭ'dŏtūs, cōs'tūs, dīphthōn'gūs, bȳs'sŭs, ăbȳs'sŭs, crȳstāl'lūs, sȳ'nŏdūs, sāpphī'rŭs, ĕrē'mŭs, *ĕt* Ārc'tŭs: *cūm mūl'tīs ă'lĭīs, quœ nūnc pērscrī'bĕrĕ lōn'gum ēst.*[12]

2. Nouns Neúter excépted.

*Neūtrūm nŏ'mĕn ĭn* -ĕ,* *sī gĭg'nĭt* -ĭs; *ūt* mă'rĕ, rē'tĕ: *ēt quŏt ĭn* -ŏn,† *pĕr* -ĭ[13] *flēx'ă lĕ'gās; ūt* bār'bĭtŏn, *ād'dĕ.* *Ēst neūtrum* hīppŏ'mănĕs† *gĕ'nŭs, ēt neū'trūm* căcŏē'thĕs:[14] *ēt* vī'rūs, pĕ'lăgūs:[15] *neūtrūm mŏ'dŏ, mās mŏdŏ,* vūl'gŭs.

3. Nouns of the Doúbtful Génder excépted.

*Īncēr'tī gĕ'nĕrīs sūnt* tāl'pa, *ēt* dā'mă, cănā'lĭs, *ēt* cȳ'tĭsūs, bă'lănūs, clū'nīs, fī'nīs, pĕnŭs, ām'nĭs, pām'pĭnŭs, *ēt* cōr'bīs, līn'tĕr, tōr'quīs, spĕ'cŭs, ān'guĭs, *prō mōr'bō* fī'cūs, fī'cī *dāns, āt'quĕ* phăsē'lŭs, lĕ'cȳthŭs, *āc* ă'tŏmūs, grōs'sūs, phă'rŭs, *ēt* părădī'sŭs.[16]

† The sýllables *-ĕr* and *-ŏs* in this line béing in themsélves short, althoúgh long by posítion in the verse, I have set a dágger to mark this círcumstance, that the leárner may not confoúnd them with *-ēr* and *-ōs* of the sécond Spécial Rule, from which they are quite dífferent in sound. Mány, howéver, make no distínction in the pronunciátion betweén *-ĕr* and *ēr*, nor betweén *-ŏs* and *-ōs!*

[12] Such as dĭălēc'tŭs, *a díalect* or *mánner of speech,* mĕ'thŏdŭs, *a méthod* or *mode,* pĕrī'ŏdŭs, *a périod* or *pérfect séntence.*

[13] Althoúgh the scánning of the verse befóre us requíres this *i* to be short, yet fínal *i*, of the génitive síngular of the sécond declénsion, is álways long. Such exámples as *ē* for *ĕ* in the precéding line, *ā* for *ă* in the first verse of the First Excéption to the First Spécial Rule, and *ĭ* for *ī* here, with mány óthers that might be námed, detráct greátly from the mérits of these Rules.

[14] Al'so, though occúrring less fréquently, nĕpēn'thĕs, *búgloss;* and pă'năcĕs, *all-heal,* a sort of herb, are neúter: and séveral óthers.

[15] The two nouns, sĕx'ŭs, *sex,* and spĕ'cŭs, *a den* or *lúrking-place,* are óften of the neúter génder: but the fórmer, espécially when of the fourth declénsion, is perháps more próperly másculine; and the látter, (as may be seen in the next excéption) is of doúbtful génder, béing sómetimes másculine, and sómetimes féminine, as well as neúter.

[16] To these may be ádded cār'băsŭs, *cámbric* or *lawn,* álso *sail-cloth,* which, in the síngular númber, is eíther féminine or másculine; and, in

4. Nouns of the Cómmon of two Géndere excépted.

*Cōmpŏ'sĭtum ā vĕr'bō dāns* -ă,* *cōmmū'nĕ dŭō'rum ēst:*
Grājŭ'gĕna *ā gīg'no*, āgrĭ'cŏla *ā cŏ'lo*, *ĭd* ād'vĕnă *mōn'strānt*
*ā vĕ'nĭo: ād'dĕ* sĕ'nēx, aūrī'ga, *ēt* vĕr'nă, sŏdā'lĭs,
vā'tēs, ēxtōr'rĭs, pătrŭē'lĭs, pēr-*quĕ*-dŭēl'lĭs,
āffī'nĭs, jŭ'vĕnĭs, tēs'tĭs, cī'vĭs, că'nĭs, hōs'tĭs.

## SECOND SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS INCREASING WITH THE ACUTE ACCENT ON THE PENULT OF THE GENITIVE CASE ARE FEMININE.

*Nō'mēn, crēscēn'tĭs pēnŭl'tĭmă sī gĕnĭtī'vī*
*sȳl'lăba ăcū'tă sŏ'nāt, vĕ'lŭt hæc*, pĭ'ĕtās pĭĕtā'tĭs,
vĭr'tūs vĭrtū'tĭs, *mōn'strānt, gĕ'nŭs ēst mŭlĭē'brĕ* [17]

1. Nouns Másculine excépted.

*Mās'cŭlă dīcūn'tŭr mŏnŏsȳl'lăbă nō'mĭnă quæ'dăm:*
sāl, sōl, rēn, *ēt* splēn, Cār, Sēr, vīr, vās vă'dĭs, ās, mās,
bēs, Crēs, præs, *ēt* pēs, glīs glī'rĭs *hă'bēns gĕnĭtī'vō;*
mōs, flōs, rōs, *ēt* Trōs, mūs, dēns, mōns, pōns, *sĭ'mŭl ēt* fōns;
sēps *prō sērpēn'te*, *ēt* grȳps, Thrāx, rēx, grēx grĕ'gĭs, *ēt* Phrȳx.[18]
*Mās'cŭlă sūnt ĕ'tĭām pŏlȳsȳl'lăba ĭn* -n; *ŭt*, Ăcārnān,
lī'chēn, *ēt* dēl'phīn:[19] *ĕt ĭn* -ō *sīgnān'tĭă cōr'pŭs;*
*ŭt*, lĕ'ŏ, cūrcŭ'lĭō: *sīc* sĕ'nĭŏ, tēr'nĭŏ, sēr'mŏ.

---

the plúral númber, neúter: pălūm'bēs, *a pígeon*, is líkewise a noun of doúbtful génder; in Vírgil, howéver, it is féminine, conséntingly with the First Spécial Rule.

[17] To this Rule, of course, belóng all nouns whereóf the pénult of the génitive case (increásing) is sharp; whéther the sýllable be long or short. Thus rēs, génitive, rĕ'ī, *a thing*, grūs, génitive, grŭ'ĭs, *a crane*, increáse sharp, (althoúgh the pénult of the génitive be short,) as well as dī'ēs, génitive, dĭē'ī, *a day*, or līs, génitive, lī'tĭs, *strife*, which have the pénult of the génitive case long.

[18] To these másculines add lār, *a fire-side or hóusehold god*, să'lār, *a trout*, vōl'vōx, *a worm cálled a vine frétter*, and some few óthers.

[19] The wórds lī'chēn, and dēl'phīn, are (próperly speáking) díssyllables, ráther than pólysyllables; but by "pŏlȳsȳl'lăbă," in the precéding verse we are to understánd *words of more than one sýllable.* Hence the Rule applíes to such díssyllables as gnō'mōn, *the stile of a dial*, pæ'ān, *a song or hymn* to Apóllo, as well as to the trísyllables āt'tăgēn, *a snipe*, and Ăcār'nān, *a man of Acarnánia.*

*Mās cŭla ĭn* -ēr, -ŏr, *ĕt* -ōs : *ceū*, crā'tēr, cōn'dĭtŏr, hē'rōs : *hīs*, tōr'rēns,[20] nēf'rēns, ŏ'rĭēns[21] *cōnjūn'gĕ*, clĭēns'*quĕ ; ăt'quĕ* bĭ'dēns *īnstrūmēn'tūm, cūm plū'rĭbŭs īn* -dēns : *ăd'dĕ* gĭ'gās, ĕ'lĕphās, ă'dămās, Gărămās'*quĕ*, tăpēs'*quĕ, ăt'quĕ* lĕ'bēs, *sīc ēt* māg'nēs,[22] *ūnūm'quĕ* mĕrī'dĭ-ēs *nō'mēn quīn'tæ : ēt quæ cōmpōnūn'tŭr, ăb ās'sĕ, ŭt* dō'drāns, sē'mīs :[23] *Jūngān'tūr mās'cŭlă*, Sām'nīs, hy̆'drōps, *ēt* thō'rāx : *jūn'gās quŏ'quĕ mās'cŭlă*, vēr'vēx, phœ'nīx, *ēt* bōm'by̆x *prō vērmĭ'cŭlo : Ăt'tămĕn ēx hīs sūnt mŭlĭē'brĕ gĕ'nŭs*, Sy̆'rēn, *nēc'nōn* sŏ'rŏr, ūx'ŏr.

## 2. Nouns Neúter excépted.

*Sūnt neūtrā'lĭa ĕt hæc mŏnŏsy̆l'lăbă nō'mĭnă ;* mēl, fĕl, lāc, fār, vēr, æs, cōr, vās, vā'sĭs, ŏs ōs'sĭs, *ĕt* ō'rĭs, rūs, thūs, jūs, crūs, pūs. *Ĕt ĭn* -āl *pŏly̆sy̆l'lăba, ĭn* -ār'*quĕ*,[24] *ŭt*, că'pĭtāl, lă'quĕār. *Neū'trum* ā'lēc, -lēx *mŭlĭē'brĕ.*

## 3. Nouns of the Doúbtful Génder excépted.

*Sūnt dŭ'bĭī gĕ'nĕrĭs*, scrōbs, sēr'pēns, būbŏ, rŭ'dēns, grūs, pēr'dīx, ly̆nx, lĭ'māx, stīrps *prō trūn'cō, pĕ'dĭs ēt* cālx : *ăd'dĕ* dĭ'ēs ; *nŭ'mĕrō tān'tūm mās ēs'tŏ sĕcūn'dō.*

## 4. Nouns of the Cómmon of two Génders excépted.

*Sūnt cōmmū'nĕ*, pă'rēns, aūctōr'*que*, īn'fāns, ădōlēs'cēns, dūx, īl'lēx, hæ'rēs, ēx'lēx : *ā frōn'tĕ crĕā'tă, ŭt*, bīf'rōns : cūs'tōs, bōs, fūr, sūs, *ăt'quĕ* săcēr'dōs.

---

[20] In like mánner of the másculine génder, cōn'flŭēns, *a méeting of two rivers*, prō'flŭēns, *a stream or cúrrent*, rĕ'flŭēns, *the réfluent tide ;* with séveral óther nouns resémbling the présent párticiple of verbs.

[21] At the same time, too, ōc'cĭdēns, *the west*, is to be excépted as másculine. This word (as well as ŏ'rĭēns) is próperly a présent párticiple ; the súbstantive sōl, *the sun*, béing understoód.

[22] To these might jústly be ádded séveral óther Greek nouns in *-ēs*, máking *-ē'tĭs* in the génitive case ; as, hēr'pēs, *a cutáneous erúption.*

[23] In sē'mīs, (which is a contráction for sē'mĭās ; as dō'drāns is, for dē'ēst quă'drāns,) the fínal sýllable is long by crásis. And here it may be seásonably nóticed that all the derívatives of ūn'cĭă, *an ounce*, as well as those of ās, *a pound*, are másculine ; as quīn'cūnx, *five oúnces*, sēp'tūnx, *séven oúnces.*

[24] This excéption applíes to díssyllables (as cāl'căr, *a spur*), as well as to pólysyllables próperly so cálled : but să'lăr, *a trout, or young sálmon*, (as we remárked in note 18 abóve) is másculine.

## THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS INCREASING GRAVE IN THE PENULT OF THE GENITIVE ARE MASCULINE.

*Nō′mĕn, crēscēn′tĭs pēnŭl′tĭmă sī gĕnĭtī′vī*
*sĭt gră′vĭs, ŭt* sān′guĭs *gĕnĭtī′vō* sān′guĭnĭs, *ēst mās.*

1. Nouns Féminine excépted.

*Fœmĭ′nĕī gĕ′nĕrĭs sĭt hўpērdīssўl′lăbŏn īn* -dō,
*quōd* -dĭnĭs, *āt′que īn* -gō, *quōd dāt* -gĭnĭs, *īn gĕnĭtī′vō:*
*īd tĭ′bĭ* dūlcē′dō *fă′cĭēns* dūlcē′dĭnĭs, *īd′quĕ*
*mōn′strāt* cōmpā′gō cōmpā′gĭnĭs: *ăd′jĭcĕ* vīr′gō,
grān′dŏ, fĭ′dēs, cōm′pēs, tĕ′gĕs, *ēt* sĕ′gĕs, ār′bŏr, hўēms′*quĕ:*
*sīc* chlă′mўs, *ēt* sīn′dōn, Gōr′gōn, ī′cōn, *ĕt* Āmā′zōn.[25]
*Græ′cŭla ĭn* -ăs,† *vĕl ĭn* -ĭs † *fīnī′ta; ŭt,* lām′păs,[26] ĭăs′pĭs,
cās′sĭs, cŭs′pĭs:[27] *ĭ′tēm* mŭ′lĭĕr, pĕ′cŭs *ēt* pĕ′cŭdĭs *dāns:*
*hīs* fōr′fēx, pēl′lēx, că′rēx, *sĭ′mŭl āt′quĕ* sŭpēl′lēx,
āppēn′dīx, hўs′trīx, cōxēn′dīx, *ăd′dĕ* fīlīx′*quĕ.*[28]

2. Nouns Neúter excépted.

*Ēst neŭtrā′lĕ gĕ′nŭs sīg′nāns rēm nōn ănĭmā′tăm*
*nō′mĕn ĭn* -a, *ŭt* prōblē′ma; -ĕn, *ŭt* ō′mĕn; -ăr, *ŭt* jŭ′băr;
ŭr † *dāns,*
*ŭt* jĕ′cŭr; -ŭs,† *ŭt* ŏ′nŭs; -pŭt, *ŭt* ōc′cĭpŭt. *Āt′tămĕn ēx hīs*
*mās′cŭlă sūnt* pēc′tĕn, fūr′fŭr. *Sūnt neŭ′tră,* cădā′vĕr,
vēr′bĕr, ĭ′tĕr, sŭ′bĕr, *prō fūn′gō* tū′bĕr, *ĕt* ū′bĕr,
gīn′gĭbĕr, *ēt* lă′sĕr, cĭ′cĕr *ēt* pĭ′pĕr, *āt′quĕ* păpā′vĕr,
*ēt* sĭ′sĕr: *hīs ăd′dās neŭ′tra,* æ′quōr, mār′mŏr, ădōr′*quĕ,*[29]
*āt′quĕ* pĕ′cŭs *quān′dō* pĕ′cŏrĭs *fă′cĭt īn gĕnĭtī′vō.*

---

[25] To these may líkewise be joíned ăē′dōn, *a níghtingale,* and hāl′cўōn, *a kíngfisher,* with a few óthers.

[26] This excéption exténds ónly to nouns in *-ăs,* máking *-ădĭs* (or *-ădŏs*) in the génitive case: for Greek nouns in *-ăs* máking *-ătĭs,* as bŭ′cĕrăs, bŭcĕ′rătĭs, *fénugreek,* are neúter; save ă′năs, *a duck,* which is of the cómmon génder.

[27] To this excéption, of course, belóng such words as pŏē′sĭs, pŏē′sĕŏs, *póësy or póëtry,* mĕtămōr′phŏsĭs, mĕtămōrphŏ′sĕŏs, *a transformátion:*— these, howéver, sómetimes take the Látin infléxion, and have símply *-ĭs,* in the génitive; falling, as to their génder, únder the First Spécial Rule.

[28] The fóllowing, líkewise, are féminine: fŭ′lĭx, *a coot,* lăgō′pūs, *the white pártridge,* lēn′dīx, *a mággot,* pŏ′lўthrĭx, *maídenhair,* tō′mēx, *a cord or rope,* and mĕr′gĕs, *a hándful:* to which some add băc′căr, *ploúghman's-nard,* but this noun is próperly neúter; sómetimes, howéver, it is wrítten băc′cărĭs in the nóminative case, and is then féminine.

[29] This noun increáses eíther long, or short, in the génitive case, or

### 3. Nouns of the Doúbtful Génder excépted.

*Sūnt dŭ′bĭī gĕ′nĕrĭs,* cār′dō, mār′gō, cĭ′nĭs, ō′bēx,
fōr′cēps, pū′mēx, īm′brēx, cōr′tēx, pūl′vĭs, ădēps′*quĕ:*
*ăd′dĕ* cŭ′lēx, nā′trīx, *ĕt* ŏ′nyx *cūm prŏ′lĕ,* sĭlēx′*quĕ;*[30]
*quām′vīs hæc mĕ′lĭūs vūlt măs′cŭlă dĭ′cĭĕr ū′sŭs.*

### 4. Nouns Cómmon excépted.

*Cōmmū′nĭs gĕ′nĕrĭs sūnt ĭs′tă;* vĭ′gĭl, pŭ′gĭl, ēx′ŭl,
præ′sŭl, hŏ′mō, nē′mō, mār′tȳr, Lĭ′gŭr, aŭ′gŭr, *ĕt* Ār′căs,
āntĭs′tēs, mĭ′lēs, pĕ′dēs, īntēr′prēs, cŏ′mĕs, hōspēs;
*sīc* ā′lēs, præ′sēs, prīn′cēps, aŭ′cēps, ĕ′quĕs, ōb′sĕs;[31]
*āt′que ă′lĭa ā vēr′bīs quæ nō′mĭnă mūl′tă crĕān′tŭr;*
*ūt,* cōn′jūx, jū′dēx, vīn′dēx, ŏ′pĭfēx, *ĕt* ărūs′pēx.[32]

---

## ADJECTIVES.

*Ādjēctī′va ū′nām dūntāx′ăt hăbēn′tĭă vō′cĕm;*
*ūt,* fē′līx, aū dāx, *rĕ′tĭnēnt gĕ′nŭs ōm′nĕ sŭb ū′nā:*
*sūb gĕ′mĭnā sī vō′cĕ că′dānt, vĕ′lŭt* ōm′nĭs, *ĕt* ōm′nĕ,
*vōx cōmmū′nĕ dŭ′ūm prĭ′ŏr ēst, vōx āl′tĕră neū′trŭm:*
*āt sī trēs vă′rĭānt vō′cēs;* să′cĕr *ūt,* să′cră, săc′rŭm;
*vōx prĭ′ma ēst mās, āl′tĕră fœ′mĭnă, tēr′tĭă neū′trŭm.*
*Āt sūnt quæ flēx′ū prŏ′pĕ sūbstāntī′vă vŏcā′rēs,*
*ādjēctī′vă tă′mēn nātū′rā ūsū′quĕ rĕpēr′tă:*
*tă′lĭă sūnt,* paŭ′pĕr, pū′bĕr, *cūm* dē′gĕnĕr, ū′bĕr,
*ēt* dī′vēs, lŏ′cŭplēs, sōs′pēs, cŏ′mĕs, *āt′quĕ* sŭpēr′stēs:
*cūm paŭ′cīs ă′lĭīs, quæ lēctĭō jūs′tă dŏcē′bĭt.*

---

ráther, perhaps, it álways increáses long, and cónsequently ought to have been clássed únder the Sécond Spécial Rule: ă′dŭs from which comes the génitive ă′dŏrĭs with short pénult, is of course neúter, fálling under the same excéption as ŏ′nŭs. The ádjective ădō′rĕŭs seems to owe derivátion to ă′dŏr, ădō′rĭs.

30 With these may be conjoíned rā′mēx, *a sort of abdóminal swélling* or *túmour,* rŭ′mēx, *sórrel,* vă′rīx, *a swoln vein,* and stȳ′răx, *a sort of gum;* though in the best aúthors they are génerally másculine.

31 To these may be ádded the Greek noun ă′năs, *a duck* or *drake,* as béing both másculine and féminine: álso, quă′drŭpēs, *a four-fóoted beast.*

32 Séveral vérbal nouns fálling únder this head, as to génder, end in -cēps, from că′pĭō, *I take,* as, mū′nĭcēps, *a búrgess;* in -cĕn, from că′nō, *I sing,* as, cōr′nĭcĕn, *a horn-blówer;* in -fēx, from fă′cĭō, *I make,* as, ār′tĭfēx, *an artíficer:* and in -spēx, from spĕ′cĭō, *I view,* as, aūs′pēx, *a divíner by birds:* with mány in -dēx, as īn′dēx, *an índicator.*

*Hæc prŏ'prĭūm quēn'dām sĭ'bĭ flĕx'um ādsīs'cĕrĕ gaū'dēnt:*
cāmpēs'tēr, vŏ'lŭcēr, cĕ'lĕbēr, cĕ'lĕr, *āt'quĕ* sălū'bĕr:
*jūn'gĕ* pĕdēs'tĕr, ĕquēs'tĕr, *ĕt* ā'cēr: *jūn'gĕ* pălūs'tĕr,
*āc* ă'lăcēr, sўlvēs'tĕr: *ăt hǣc tū sīc vărĭā'bĭs;*
*hīc* cĕ'lĕr, *hǣc* cĕ'lĕrĭs *neū'tro hōc* cĕ'lĕre: *aūt ă'lĭtēr sīc;*
*hīc āt'que hǣc* cĕ'lĕrĭs, *rūr'sum hōc* cĕ'lĕre *ēst tĭ'bĭ neū'trŭm.*

---

## OF HETEROCLITE OR IRREGULAR NOUNS.

*Quǣ* gĕ'nŭs *aūt* flēx'ūm *vă'rĭānt, quǣcūn'quĕ nŏvă'tō rĭ'tū* dēfĭ'cĭūnt sŭpĕrānt'*ve*, Hĕtĕrŏc'lĭtă *sūntŏ.*[33]

---

[33] *Irrégular Nouns* are of three different sorts or kinds: I. *Váriant.* II. *Redúndant.* III. *Deféctive.* And these three sorts admít each of séveral subdivísions: as, 1. *Váriant* in *Génder.* 2. *Váriant* in *Fléxion.* 3. *Váriant* in *Meáning.* Agaín, 1. *Redúndant* in *Terminátion.* 2. *Redúndant* in *Génder.* 3. *Redúndant* in *Declénsion.* And, 4. *Redúndant* in *Case.* Líkewise, 1. *Deféctive* in *Númber.* And, 2. *Deféctive* in *Case.*

### I. Variants.

I. NOUNS VARYING THEIR GENDER MAY BE CLASSED AS FOLLOWS:

1. *Nouns Másculine in the Singular Númber, and Neúter in the Plúral.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ăvēr'nŭs, | *a lake of Campánia,* | Pāngǣ'ŭs, | *a prómontory of Thrace,* |
| Dīn'dўmŭs, | *a hill of Phrýgia,* | Tǣ'nărŭs, | *a prómontory of Lacónia,* |
| Īs'mărŭs, | *a hill of Thrace,* | Tăr'tărŭs, | *the abóde of the dead,* |
| Mǣ'nălŭs, | *a hill of Arcádia,* | Tāўgĕ'tŭs, | *a hill of Lacónia.* |

2. *Nouns Féminine in the Síngular Númber, and Neúter in the Plúral.*

Căr'băsŭs, *sail-cloth,* | Pĕr'gămŭs, *Troy,* | Sŭpĕl'lĕx, *hóusehold stuff.*

3. *Nouns Neúter in the Síngular Númber, and Másculine in the Plúral.*

Ăr'gŏs, *a cíty of Greece,* | Cœ̄'lŭm, *heáven,* | Ēlў'sĭŭm, *the Elýsian realm.*

4. *Nouns Neúter in the Síngular Númber, and Féminine in the Plúral.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Băl'nĕŭm, | *a bath,* | Ĕ'pŭlŭm, | *a bánquet,* |
| Dĕlĭ'cĭŭm, | *a delíght,* | Nŭn'dĭnŭm, | *márket-day.* |

Of these, *băl'nĕŭm* is eíther féminine or neúter in the plúral númber.

5. *Nouns Másculine in the Síngular, and Másculine or Neúter in the Plúral.*

Jŏ'cŭs, *a jest,* | Lŏ'cŭs, *a place,* | Sī'bĭlŭs, *a hiss.*

Of these, *jŏ'cŭs* and *lŏ'cŭs* were at first declíned régularly: but there were álso two nouns, *jŏ'cŭm* and *lŏ'cŭm*, of the neúter génder, which went at length ínto disúse in the síngular númber; and the óther two, ínto dísuse in the plúral. Yet, éven in the plúral númber, *lŏ'cī* may be úsed in the sense of *points of posítion:* and the neúter noun *sī'bĭlŭm* is found in séveral aúthors.

Nouns chánging their génder and declíning.

*Hæc* gĕ'nŭs, *āc* flēx'ŭm, *pār'tĭm vărĭān'tĭă cēr'nĭs;*
Pēr'gămŭs *īn nŭ'mĕrō plūrā'lī* Pēr'gămă *gĭg'nĭt.*
*Dāt prĭ'ŏr hīs nŭ'mĕrŭs neū'trŭm gĕ'nŭs, āl'tĕr ŭtrūm'quĕ,*
rās'trūm *cūm* fræ̆'nō, fī'lūm, *sĭ'mŭl āt'quĕ* căpīs'trŭm :
Ār'gŏs *ĭ'tem, ēt* cœ̄'lūm, *sūnt sīn'gŭlă neū'tră : sĕd aū'dī,*
*mās'cŭlă dūntāx'āt* cœ̄'lōs *vŏcĭtā'rĭs, ĕt* Ār'gōs :
fræ̆'nă *sĕd ēt* fræ̆'nōs, *quō pāc'to ēt cæ̆'tĕră fōr'mānt.*
*Plūrā'lĭs nŭ'mĕrŭs gĕ'nŭs hīs sŏ'lĕt ād'dĕre ŭtrūm'quĕ;*
sī'bĭlŭs *āt'quĕ* jŏ'cūs, lŏ'cŭs.—*Hīs quŏ'quĕ plū'rĭmă jūn'gās.*

---

6. *Nouns Neúter in the Síngular, and Másculine or Neúter in the Plúral.*

Căpīs'trŭm, *a hálter* or *heádstall,*
Fī'lŭm, *a thread* or *string,*
Fræ̆'nŭm, *the bit of a brídle,*
Rās'trŭm, *a rake* or *hárrow.*

II. NOUNS VARYING THEIR FLECTION, ARE :—

1. Vās, *a véssel,* which is of the third declénsion, in the síngular númber ; and of the sécond declénsion, in the plúral.

2. Jū'gĕrŭm, *an ácre of ground,* which is of the sécond declénsion, in the síngular númber ; and of the third declénsion, in the plúral.

III. NOUNS VARYING THEIR MEANING IN THE PLURAL, ARE :—

| *Síngular.* | | *Plúral.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| æ̆'dēs, | *a témple,* | æ̆'dēs, | *a house,* |
| cō'pĭă, | *plénty,* | cō'pĭæ, | *fórces,* |
| făcŭl'tās, | *opportúnity,* | făcŭltā'tēs, | *means,* |
| fī'nĭs, | *an end,* | fī'nēs, | *boúndaries,* |
| fōrtū'nă, | *fórtune,* | fōrtū'næ, | *posséssions,* |
| fūr'fŭr, | *bran,* | fūr'fŭrēs, | *scurf,* |
| mōs, | *a cústom,* | mō'rēs, | *mánners,* |
| ŏ'pĭs, | *aid,* | ŏ'pēs, | *wealth,* |
| sāl, | *salt,* | să'lēs, | *fláshes of wit.* |

To these might séveral óthers be ádded :—with mány, indeéd, which have véry dífferent significátions éven in the same númber.

## II. Redundants.

NOUNS REDUNDANT MAY BE CLASSED AS FOLLOWS :—

1. *Nouns Redúndant in Terminátion ónly :*—such, for exámple, as, ār'bŏr *vèl* ār'bōs, *a tree ;* hŏ'nŏr *vèl* hŏ'nōs, *hónor ;* lă'bŏr *vèl* lă'bōs, *lábor ;* lĕ'pŏr *vèl* lĕ'pōs, *mirth ;* vō'mĕr *vèl* vō'mĭs, *a plough-share.*

2. *Nouns Redúndant in Terminátion, with change of Génder :*—thus, bă'cŭlŭs *vèl* bă'cŭlŭm, *a staff ;* bār'bĭtŭs *vèl* bār'bĭtŏs *vèl* bār'bĭtŏn, *a harp ;* sī'bĭlŭs *vèl* sī'bĭlŭm, *a híssing ;* Ī'lĭŏs *vèl* Ī'lĭŏn *vèl* Ī'lĭŭm, *the cíty of Troy ;* mū'gĭl *vèl* mū'gĭlĭs, *a múllet ;* and a host besídes.

3. *Nouns Redúndant in Génder únder the same Terminátion :*—as, pĕ'cŭs, pĕ'cŭdĭs, *féminine ;* pĕ'cŭs, pĕ'cŏrĭs, *neúter.*

4. *Nouns Redúndant in Declénsion ónly :*—as, laū'rŭs, *a bay-tree* or

## Nouns Deféctive.

*Quæ sĕ'quĭtŭr*, mān'ca *ēst* că'sū nŭmĕrō'*vĕ*, *prŏpā'gŏ*.

## I. Āptō'tă; or, Nouns undeclíned.

*Quæ nūl'lūm vă'rĭānt că'sum; ūt*, fās, nīl, nĭ'hĭl, īn'stăr;
*mūl'ta ĕt ĭn* -ū, *sĭ'mŭl* -i; *ūt sūnt hæc*, cōrnū'*quĕ*, gĕnū'*quĕ*;
*sīc* gūm'mī, frū'gī: *sīc* Tēm'pē, tōt, quŏt, *ĕt ōm'nēs*
*ā trĭ'bŭs ād cēn'tūm nŭ'mĕrōs*, āptō'tă *vŏcā'bĭs*.

---

*laúrel*, of the sécond or the fourth declénsion: quĭ'ēs, *rest*, and rĕ'quĭēs, *repóse*, of the third or fifth declénsion.

5. *Nouns Redúndant both in Terminátion and Declénsion:*—as, dĕl'phīn, *a dólphin*, of the third, and dĕlphī'nŭs, *a dólphin*, of the sécond; ĕ'lĕphās, *an élephant*, of the third, and ĕlĕphān'tŭs, *an élephant*, of the sécond.

6. *Nouns Redúndant in Terminátion and Declénsion, with change of Génder:*—as, æ'thēr, *the sky*, of the third, and æ'thĕră *vèl* æ'thră, *the sky*, of the first; mēn'dă *a fault* or *blémish*, of the first, and mēn'dŭm, *a fault* or *blémish*, of the sécond; crā'tēr, *a góblet*, of the third, and crā-tē'ră, *a góblet*, of the first.

7. *Nouns Redúndant in Case, or dífferently váried in the same Declénsion:*—thus, jĕ'cŭr, *the líver*, génitive, jĕ'cŏrĭs *vèl* jĕcī'nŏrĭs, *of the líver;* ă'dŏr, *fine wheat*, génitive, ă'dŏrĭs *vèl* ădō'rĭs, *of fine wheat;* tĭ'grĭs, *a tíger*, génitive, tĭ'grĭs *vèl* tĭ'grĭdĭs.

8. *Nouns Redúndant in one Case ónly, and of a dífferent Declénsion:*—as, āncī'lĭă, *the sácred búcklers*, génitive plúral, āncī'lĭŭm *vèl* āncī'lĭōrŭm, *of the sácred búcklers:* of which sort are the names of feasts: for exámple, Sātūrnā'lĭă, *Feasts dédicated to Sáturn;* Bācchā-nā'lĭă, *Feasts dédicated to Bácchus;* Quīnquā'trĭă, *Feasts dédicated to Minérva:* this last has *-trĭīs* vèl *-trĭbŭs* in the dátive and áblative cáses plúral.

## III. Defectives.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS MAY BE CLASSED AS FOLLOWS:—

1. *Nouns Undeclined in both Númbers:*—as, pōn'dŏ, *a pound-weight*, or *pounds-weight* gūm'mĭ, *gum* or *gums;* with some ádjectives; as, nē'quăm, *wícked;* frū'gī, *thrifty*.

3. *Nouns Undeclined in the Síngular Númber, but Declíned in the Plural:*—as, cōr'nū, *a horn*.

4. *Nouns Undeclíned in the Síngular Númber, and Wánting the Plúral:*—as sĭnā'pī, *mustard;* gaū'săpĕ, *frize*.

5. *Nouns Declíned in the Síngular Númber, but which Want the Plúral:*—as, nē'mō, *nóbody;* sān'guĭs, *blood;* jŭvēn'tūs, *youth;* sĕ'nĭŭm, *old age;* sĭ'tĭs, *thirst:* with most próper names of men, wómen, heáthen gods and góddesses, ángels; names of pláces (save those which are of the plúral númber ónly, *Ār'gŏs* excépted); the names of vírtues, víces, arts and scíences, métals, líquids, diseáses, spíces, and plants: the names of ábstract quálities, such as cólour, taste, touch, condítion; and a great mány more words which, by their ímport, are confíned to the síngular númber; as, bū'tȳrŭm, *bútter;* glū'tĕn, *glue;* fĭ'mŭs, *dung*.

II. Mŏnōptō'tă ; or Nouns declined with one Case.

*Est'quĕ* mŏnōptō'tōn *nō'mĕn, cuī vōx că'dĭt ū'nă :*
*ceū,* nōc'tū, nā'tū, jūs'su ; īnjūs'sū, *sĭ'mŭl* ās'tū,
prōm'ptū, pērmīs'sū : *plūrā'lī lĕ'gĭmŭs* ās'tūs :
*lĕ'gĭmŭs* īnfī'cĭās, *sēd vōx ĕ'ă sō'lă rĕpēr'ta ēst.*

III. Dīptō'tă ; or Nouns declined with two Cases.

*Sūnt* dīptō'tă, *quĭ'būs dūp'lēx flĕxū'ră rĕmān'sĭt :*
*ūt* fōrs fōr'tĕ *dă'bĭt sēx'tō,* spōn'tīs *quŏ'quĕ* spōn'tĕ ;
jū'gĕrīs *ēt sēx'tō dāt* jū'gĕrĕ ; vēr'bĕrīs *aŭ'tĕm*
vēr'bĕrĕ : sūppĕ'tĭæ *quār'tō quŏ'quĕ* sūppĕ'tĭās *dānt ;*

---

Yet some nouns which, in En'glish, admít séldom, and óthers néver, of a plúral, are found of the plúral númber in Látin. Such, for exámple, as the fóllowing :—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| æs, | *brass,* | fŭ'gă, | *flight,* | pītŭī'tă, | *phlegm,* |
| æ'vŭm, | *age,* | fū'mŭs, | *smoke,* | pīx, | *pitch,* |
| ă'quă,* | *wáter,* | hī'lŭm, | *mere nóthing,* | quĭ'ēs, | *rest,* |
| bī'līs, | *gall* or *bile,* | hōr'dĕŭm, | *bárley,* | rūs,* | *the country,* |
| că'rō,* | *flesh,* | mĕl,* | *hóney,* | sōl,* | *the sun,* |
| cē'ră, | *wax,* | mēn'thă, | *mint,* | sŏ'lŭm, | *the ground,* |
| chŏ'lĕră, | *chóler,* | mĕ'tŭs, | *dread,* | sūl'phŭr, | *brímstone,* |
| crŭ'ŏr, | *gore,* | mūr'mŭr, | *a múrmur,* | tā'lĭō, | *retaliátion,* |
| ĕ'bŭr, | *ívory,* | mūs'tŭm, | *new wine,* | tēl'lūs, | *the earth,* |
| ēlēc'trŭm, | *ámber,* | paūpēr'tās, | *póverty,* | thūs,* | *fránkincense,* |
| fā'mă, | *fame,* | pāx, | *peace,* | thȳ'mŭm, | *thyme.* |
| fār, | *bread-corn,* | | | | |

The nouns márked with an ásterisk (in the abóve list) were in habítual use in the plúral númber :—some of them in all the six cáses, as, ă'quă, *wáter;* óthers ónly in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative cáses, as, rūs, *the country;* mĕl, *honey;* fār, *meal:* óthers again in évery case excépt the génitive, as sōl, *the sun.* The nouns not márked with an ásterisk occúr véry rárely in the plúral númber, and few of them in more than one terminátion : as, æ'vīs, *to* or *by áges ;* mūs'tă, *new wines.*

On the óther hand, some nouns, which ádmit of a síngular númber in En'glish, are séldom or néver úsed in the síngular númber in Látin :—such, for exámple, as lī'bĕrī, *chíldren ;* nū'gæ, *trífles.*

And mány nouns, which, in our lánguage, admít of a plúral, have próperly no plúral númber in Látin ; such as the fóllowing :—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| æ'thĕr, | *the sky,* | lĕ'thūm, | *death,* | pōn'tŭs, | *the sea,* |
| hŭ'mŭs, | *the ground,* | lŭ'ēs, | *a plague,* | vī'rŭs, | *póison.* |

6. *Nouns wánting the Síngular Númber, but which are Régular in the Plúral:* as cŭpē'dĭæ, *sweet'meats ;* pĕnā'tēs, *hóusehold gods ;* ār'mă, *weápons of war.* To these might be ádded mány names of pláces, peóple, feasts, and games.

7. *Nouns wánting one Case or more :*—as, vīs, *force ;* ŏpīs, *of wealth* or *pówer ;* prŏmp'tū, *in readiness.*

tāntūn′dēm *dāt* tāntī′dēm, *sĭ′mŭl* īm′pĕtĭs *ēt dăt* īm′pĕtĕ; ———————————
*sīc* rĕpĕtūndā′rūm rĕpĕtūn′dīs. Vĕr′bĕrĭs *ālt*ĕ*rō quā′tŭŏr īn nŭ′mĕrō cā′sūs cūm* jū′gĕrĕ *sēr′vānt.*

IV. Trīptō′tă; or, Nouns declíned with three Cáses.

*Trēs quĭ′bŭs īnflēc′tīs cā′sūs,* trīptō′tă *vŏcān′tŭr:*
*sīc* ŏ′pĭs *ēst nōs′træ, fĕr* ŏ′pēm, *lĕ′gĭs, āt′que* ŏ′pĕ *dīg′nŭs,*
*flēc′tĕ* prĕ′ci, *āt′quĕ* prĕ′cēm *pĕ′tĭt ēt* prĕ′cĕ *blān′dŭs ămī′căm.*
*āt tān′tūm rēc′tō* frū′gĭs *că′rĕt, ēt* dĭtĭō′nĭs:
*īn′tĕgră vōx* vīs *ēst, nĭ′sĭ dē′sĭt fōr′tĕ dătī′vŭs:*
*hīs* vĭ′cĭs *āt′quĕ* vĭ′cem *ēt jūn′gās* vĭ′cĕ; plūs *quŏ′quĕ* plū′rĭs,
plūs *hă′bĕt ēt quār′to: Hīs nŭ′mĕrūs dă′tŭr ōm′nĭbŭs āl′tĕr.*

V. Nouns deféctive in the Plúral Númber.

*Prōp′rĭă cūn′ctă nŏ′tēs, quĭ′bŭs ēst nātū′ră cŏēr′cēns,*
*plū′rĭmă nē fŭ′ĕrīnt: ă′lia ēt tĭ′bĭ mūltă lĕgēntī*
*ōccūr′rēnt, nŭ′mĕrūm ră′ro ēxcēdēn′tĭă prī′mŭm.*

VI. Nouns deféctive in the Síngular Númber.

*Mās′cŭlă sūnt tān′tūm nŭ′mĕrō cōntēn′tă sĕcūn′dō,*
mā′nēs, mājō′rēs, cāncēl′lī, lī′bĕri, *ĕt* ān′tēs,
lēn′dēs, *ēt* lĕ′mŭrēs, fās′tī, *sĭ′mŭl āt′quĕ* mĭnō′rēs,
*cūm gĕ′nŭs āssīg′nānt* nātā′lēs: *ād′dĕ* pĕnā′tēs:
*ēt lŏ′că plūră′lī, quā′lēs* Găbĭī′*quĕ* Lŏcrī′*quĕ;*
*ēt quæcūn′quĕ lĕ′gās pās′sīm sĭ′mĭlīs rătĭō′nĭs.*
*Hæc sūnt fœmĭ′nĕī gĕ′nĕrĭs, nŭmĕrī′quĕ sĕcūn′dī;*
ēxŭ′vĭæ, phă′lĕræ, grātēs′*quĕ*, mănū′bĭa, *ĕt* ī′dūs,
ān′tiæ, *ĕt* īndŭ′cĭæ; *sĭ′mŭl* īnsĭdĭæ′*quĕ* mĭnæ′*quĕ;*
ēxcŭ′bĭæ, nō′næ, nū′gæ, trīcæ′*quĕ*, călēn′dæ,
quīsquĭ′lĭæ, thēr′mæ, cūnæ, dī′ræ, ēxĕquĭæ′*quĕ*,
fĕ′rĭæ, *ĕt* īnfĕ′rĭæ; *sīc* prīmĭtĭæ′*quĕ*, plăgæ′*quĕ*
rĕ′tĭă *sīgnān′tēs, ēt* vāl′væ, dīvĭtĭæ′*quĕ*,
nūp′tiæ *ī′tem, ēt* lāc′tēs: *āddān′tŭr* Thē′bæ *ĕt* Ăthē′næ;
*quōd gĕ′nŭs īnvĕ′nĭās ēt nō′mĭnă plū′ră lŏcō′rŭm.*
*Ră′rĭŭs hæc prī′mō plūră′lĭă neŭ′tră lĕgūn′tŭr;*
mœ′nĭă, *cūm* tēs′quĭs, præcōr′dĭă, lūs′tră *fĕră′rŭm,*
ār′mă, măpā′lĭă; *sīc* bēllā′rĭă, mū′nĭă, cās′tră:
*fŭ′nŭs* jūs′tă *pĕ′tĭt, pĕ′tĭt ēt* spōnsā′lĭă *vĭr′gō;*
rōs′tră *dĭsēr′tŭs ă′măt, pŭĕrī′quĕ* crĕpūn′dĭă *ges′tānt;*
*īnfāntēs′quĕ cŏ′lūnt* cūnā′bŭlă: *cōnsŭ′lĭt* ēx′tă
*aŭ′gŭr; ĕt ābsōl′vēns sŭ′pĕrīs* ēffā′tă *rĕcān′tăt:*

fēs'tă *dĕ'ūm pŏ'tĕrūnt, ceū* Bācchānā'lĭă, *jūn'gī :*
*quōd sī plū'ră lē'gēs, lĭ'cĕt hāc quŏ'quĕ clās'sĕ rĕpō'nās.*

---

Nouns declíned áfter both the Sécond and Fourth Declénsion.

*Hæc sĭ'mŭl ēt quār'tī flēx'ūs sūnt, āt'quĕ sĕcūn'dī :*
laū'rŭs *ĕ'nĭm* laū'rī *fă'cĭt ēt* laū'rūs *gĕnĭtī'vō ;*
*sīc* quēr'cūs, pī'nus, *prō frūc'tu āc ăr'bŏrĕ* fī'cūs,
*sīc* cŏ'lŭs, *āt'quĕ* pĕ'nūs ; cōr'nūs *quān'do ăr'bŏr hăbē'tŭr ;*
*sīc* lă'cūs, *āt'quĕ* dŏ'mūs ; *lĭ'cĕt hæc nĕc ŭbī'quĕ rĕcūr'rānt.*
*Hīs quŏ'quĕ plū'ră lē'gēs, quæ prīs'cīs jū'rĕ rĕlīn'quās.*

---

# RULES

FOR THE

# PRETERPERFECT TENSE,

AND

# SUPINES OF VERBS.

---

## I. *Of the Preterpérfect Tense of Simple Verbs.*

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

Ās———ā'vī.

Ās *ĭn prǣsēn'tī pēr fēc'tūm fōr'măt ĭn* ā'vī :
*ŭt* nō nās nā'vī, vŏ'cĭtō vŏ'cĭtās vŏcĭtā'vī.
*Dē'mĕ* lă'vō lā'vī, jŭ'vō jū'vī, nē'xō*quĕ* nēx'uī,[34]
*ēt* sĕ'cō *quōd* sĕ'cŭī, nĕ'cō *quōd* nĕ'cŭī, mĭ'cō *vēr'bŭm*
*quōd* mĭ'cŭī, plĭ'cō *quōd* plĭ'cŭī, frĭ'cō *quōd* frĭ'cŭī *dăt:*
*sīc* dŏ'mō *quōd* dŏ'mŭī, tŏ'nō *quōd* tŏ'nŭī, sŏ'nō *vēr'bŭm*
*quōd* sŏ'nŭī, crĕ'pō *quōd* crĕ'pŭī, vĕ'tō *quōd* vĕ'tŭī *dăt,*
*āt'quĕ* cŭ'bō cŭ'bŭī : *rā'ro hæc fōrmān'tŭr ĭn* -ā'vī.
Dō dās *rī'tĕ* dĕ'dī, stō stās *fōrmā'rĕ* stĕ'tī *vūlt.*

---

[34] Pronoúnced as a díssyllable by Synǽresis ; the verse requiring *-ui* to be a díphthong, else the fínal *-i* to be elíded befóre the inítial *-e* of the next line.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### Ēs———ŭī.

Es *īn præsēn'tī pērfēc'tūm fōr'mǎt* -ŭī *dāns:*
*ūt* nī'grĕō nīg'rēs, nī'grŭī : jŭ'bĕo *ēx'cĭpĕ* jūs'sī :
sōr'bĕō sōr'bŭi *hă'bēt*, sōr'psī *quŏ'quĕ ;* mūl'cĕō mūl'sī :
lū'cĕō *vūlt* lūx'ī, sĕ'dĕō sē'dī, vĭdĕō'*quĕ*
*vūlt* vī'dī : *sēd* prān'dĕō prān'dī, strī'dĕō strī'dī,
suā'dĕō suā'sī, rī'dĕō rī'si, *hă'bĕt* ār'dĕo *ĕt* ār'sī.

*Quā'tŭŏr hīs īn'frā gĕmĭnā'tūr sўl'lăbă prī'mă :*
pēn'dĕō *nām'quĕ* pĕpēn'dī, mōr'dĕō *vūlt'quĕ* mŏmōr'dī,
spōn'dĕo *hăbē'rĕ* spŏpōn'dī, tōn'dĕō *vūlt'quĕ* tŏtōn'dī.

L̄ *vĕl* r̆ *ān'tĕ* -gĕō *sī stēt*, -gĕō *vĕr'tĭtŭr īn* -sī.
ūr'gĕo *ŭt* ūr'sī ; mūl'gĕō mūl'sī, *dāt quŏ'quĕ* mūl'xī ;
frī'gĕō frīx'ī, lū'gĕō lūx'ī, *hă'bĕt* aū'gĕo *ĕt* aūx'ī.

*Dāt* flĕ'ō flēs flē'vī, lĕ'ō lēs lē'vī, *īn'dĕquĕ nā'tŭm*
dē'lĕō dēlē'vī ; plĕ'ō plēs plē'vī, nĕ'ō nē'vī.

*Ā* mă'nĕō mān'sī *fōrmā'tūr ;* tōr'quĕō tōr'sī,
hæ'rĕō *vūlt* hæ'sī. Vĕ'ō *fīt* -vi *ūt* fĕr'vĕō fēr'vī ;
nī'vĕo, *ĕt īn'dĕ să'tūm pōs'cĭt* cōnnī'vĕō -nī'vī
*ēt* -nīx'ī : cī'ĕō cī'vī, vĭĕō'*quĕ* vĭē'vī.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

### Várious.

*Tēr'tĭă prætĕ'rĭtūm fōrmā'bĭt ŭt hīc mănĭfēs'tŭm.*
Bō *fīt* bi: *ūt* lām'bō lām'bī : scrī'bo *ēx'cĭpĕ* scrīp'sī,
*ēt* nū'bō nūp'si : *āntī'quūm* cūm'bō cŭ'bŭī *dăt.*

Cō *fīt* ci : *ūt* vīn'cō vī'cī : *vūlt* pār'cō pĕpĕr'cī
*ēt* pār'cī : dī'cō dīx'ī, dū'cō *quŏ'quĕ* dūx'ī.

Dō *fīt* di : *ūt* mān'dō mān'dī : *sēd* scīn'dŏ scī'dī *dăt*,
fīn'dŏ fĭdī, fūn'dō fū'dī, tūn'dō tŭtŭdī'*quĕ ;*
pēn'dō pĕpēn'dī, tēn'dŏ tĕtēn'dī, *jūn'gĕ* cădō'*quĕ*
*quōd* cĕ'cĭdī *fōr'māt ; prō vĕr'bĕrŏ* cæ'dŏ cĕcī'dī:
cē'dō *prō dīscē'dĕrĕ, sī'vĕ lŏ'cūm dă'rĕ*, cēs'sī :
vā'dō, rā'dō, læ'dō, lū'dō, dī'vĭdŏ, trū'dō,
claū'dō, plaū'dō, rō'do, *ēx* -dō *sēm'pēr fă'cĭūnt* -sī.

Gō *fīt* xi : *ūt* jūn'gō jūn'xī : *sĕd* r̄ *ān'tĕ* -gŏ *vūlt* -sī,
*ūt* spār'gō spār'sī : lĕ'gŏ lē gi, *ĕt* ă'gō *fă'cĭt* ē'gī :
*dāt* tān'gō tĕ tĭgī, pūn'gō pūn'xī pŭpŭgī'*quĕ ;*
*dāt* frān'gō frē'gī, pĕ'pĭgī *vūlt* pā'gŏ *păcīs'cŏr,*
pān'go *ĕ'tĭām* pē'gī, *sēd* pān'xī *mă'lŭĭt ū'sŭs.*

Hō *fīt* xī : trā′hŏ *ceū* trāx′ī *dŏ′cĕt*, *ēt* vĕ′hŏ vēx′ī.
Lō *fīt* -ŭī : cŏ′lŏ *ceū* cŏ′lŭī : psāl′lo *ēx′cĭpĕ cūm* p̄,
*ēt* sāl′lō *sĭ′nĕ* p̄, *nām* -lī *tĭ′bī fōrmăt ŭtrūm′quĕ.*
*Dāt* vēl′lō vēl′lī, vūl′sī *quŏ′quĕ ;* fāl′lō fĕfēl′lī,
cēl′lō *prō frān′gō*, cĕ′cŭlī, pēl′lō pĕpŭlī′*quĕ.*
Mō *fīt* -ŭī : vŏ′mŏ *ceū* vŏ′mŭī : *sĕd* ĕ′mō *fă′cĭt* ē′mī,
cō′mŏ *pĕ′tĭt* cōm′psī, prō′mō prōm′psi : *ăd′jĭcĕ* dĕ′mō
quōd *fōr′māt* dēm′psī, sū′mō sūm′psī, prĕ′mŏ prēs′sī.
Nō *fīt* -vī : sĭ′nŏ *ceū* sī′vī : tēm′no *ēx′cĭpĕ* tēm′psī :
*dāt* stēr′nō strā′vī, spēr′nō sprē′vī, lĭ′nŏ lē′vī,
*īntēr′dūm* lĭ′ni *ēt* lī′vī, cēr′nō *quŏ′quĕ* crē′vī :
gīg′nō, pō′nŏ, că′nō ; gĕ′nŭī, pŏ′sŭī, cĕ′cĭnī, *dānt.*
Pō *fīt* -psi : *ūt* scāl′pō scāl′psī : rūm′po *ēx′cĭpĕ* rū′pī ;
*ēt* strĕ′pŏ *quōd fōr′māt* strĕ′pŭī, crĕ′pŏ *quōd* crĕ′pŭī *dăt.*
Quō *fīt* -qui : *ūt* līn′quō lī′quī : cŏ′quŏ *dĕ′mĭtŏ* cōx′ī.
Rō *fīt* -vī : sĕ′rŏ *ceū prō plān′to ēt sĕ′mĭnŏ,* sē′vī ;
*quōd* sĕ′rŭī *mĕ′lĭŭs sēm′pĕr dă′bĭt, ōr′dĭnŏ sīg′nāns.*
*Vūlt* vēr′rō vēr′ri *ēt* vēr′si, ū′ro ūs′sī, gĕ′rŏ gēs′sī,
quæ′rō quæsī′vī, tĕ′rŏ trī′vī, cūr′rŏ cŭcūr′rī.
Sō, *vĕ′lŭtī prŏ′băt* ārcēs′so, īncēs′so, *āt′quĕ* lăcēs sō,
*fōrmă′bĭt* -sī′vī : *sēd tōl lĕ* căpēs′sŏ căpēs′sī,
*quōd′quĕ* căpēssī′vī *fă′cĭt āt′quĕ* făcēs′sŏ făcēs′sī,
*ēt* vī′sō vī′sī ; *sēd* pīn′sō pīn′sŭi *hăbē′bĭt.*
Scō *fīt* -vi : *ūt* pās′cō pā′vī : *vūlt* pōs′cŏ pŏpōs′cī ;
*vūlt* dĭ′dĭcī dīs′cō, quēx′ī *fōrmā′rĕ* quĭnīs′cō.
Tō *fīt* -ti : *ūt* vēr′tō vēr′tī *sēd* sīs′tŏ *nŏtē′tŭr*
*prō fă′cĭō stā′re āctī′vūm, nām jū′rĕ* stĭ′ti *dăt ;*
*dāt* mīt′tō mī′sī, pĕ′tŏ *vūlt fōrmā′rĕ* pĕtī′vī ;
stēr′tō stēr′tŭi *hă′bēt*, mĕ′tŏ mēs′sŭi : *Ăb* -ēc′tŏ *fīt* -ēxī ;
*ūt* flēc′tō flēx′ī : nēc′tō *dāt* nēx′ŭi, *hăbēt′quĕ*
nēx′i ; *ĕ′tĭām* pēc′tō *dăt* pēx′ŭi, *hă′bēt quŏ′quĕ* pēx′ī.
Vō *fīt* -vi : *ūt* vōl′vō vōl′vī : vī′vo *ēx′cĭpĕ* vīx′ī.
Xō *fīt* -ŭi : *ūt mōn′străt* tēx′ō, *quōd* tēx′ŭi *hăbē′bĭt.*
*Fīt* -cĭŏ -ci : *ūt* fă′cĭō fē′cī, jă′cĭō *quŏ′quĕ* jē′cī :
*āntī′quūm* lă′cĭō lēx′ī, spĕ′cĭō *quŏ′quĕ* spēx′ī.
*Fīt* -dĭŏ -di : *ūt* fŏ′dĭō fō′dī : -Gĭŏ *ceū* fŭ gĭō, -gī.
*Fīt* -pĭŏ -pi : *ūt* că′pĭō cē′pī : cŭ′pĭo *ēx′cĭpĕ* -pī′vī,
*ēt* ră pĭō ră′pŭī, să′pĭō să′pŭi *āt′quĕ* săpī′vī.
*Fīt* -rĭŏ ri : *ūt* pă′rĭō pĕ′pĕrī : -Tĭŏ -ssī, *gĕ′mĭnāns* s̄ ;
*ūt* quă′tĭō quās′sī, *quōd vīx rĕpĕrī′tŭr ĭn ū′sū.*
*Dē′nĭque* -ŭō *fīt* -ŭi : *ūt* stă′tŭō stă′tŭī : plŭ′ō plū′vī
*fōr′māt, sī′vĕ* plŭ′ī ; strŭ′ō *sēd* strūx′ī, flŭ′ō flūx′ī.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

īs———īʹvī.

*Quārʹtă dăt* -īs -īvi : *ūt mōnʹstrāt* scīʹō scīs *tĭʹbĭ* scīʹvī.
*Excĭʹpĭās* vĕʹnĭō *dāns* vĕʹni, *ēt* vēʹnĕō vēʹniī;[35]
raŭʹcĭō raŭʹsī, fārʹcĭō fārʹsī, sārʹcĭō sārʹsī,
sĕʹpĭō sēpʹsī, sēnʹtĭō sēnʹsī, fūlʹcĭō fūlʹsī,
haŭʹrĭo *ĭʹtèm* haŭʹsī, sānʹcĭō sānʹxī, vīnʹcĭō vīnʹxī;
*prō sălʹtō* săʹlĭō săʹlŭi, *ĕt* ămĭʹcĭō ămĭʹcŭī *dăt.*[36]

---

## II. Of the Preterpérfect Tense of Cómpound Verbs.

*Prætĕʹrĭtūm dăt ĭʹdēm sīmʹplēx ēt cōmpŏsĭtĭʹvūm :*
*ūt* dŏʹcŭi ēdŏʹcŭī *mōnʹstrāt : sēd sȳlʹlăbă, sēmʹpĕr*
*quām sīmʹplēx gĕʹmĭnāt, cōmpōsʹtō nōn gĕmĭnăʹtŭr ;*
*prætērʹquām trĭʹbŭs hīs,* præcūrʹro, ēxcūrʹrŏ, rĕpūnʹgō ;
*ātʹque ā* dō, dīsʹcō, stō, pōsʹcō, *rĭʹtĕ crĕăʹtīs.*
*Ā* plĭʹcŏ *cōmpŏʹsĭtūm cūm* sūb *vēl nŏʹmĭne, ŭt īsʹtă,*
sūpʹplĭcŏ, mūltĭʹplĭcō, *gaŭʹdēt fōrmăʹrĕ* -plĭcāʹvī :
āpʹplĭcŏ, cōmʹplĭcŏ, rĕʹplĭco, *ĕt* ēxʹplĭco -ŭī *quŏʹquĕ fōrʹmānt.*
*Quāmʹvīs vūlt* ŏʹlĕō *sīmʹplēx* ŏʹlŭī, *tăʹmĕn īnʹdĕ*
*quōdʹvīs cōmpŏʹsĭtūm mĕʹlĭūs fōrmăʹbĭt* -ŏlēʹvī;
*sīmʹplĭcĭs āt fōrʹmām* rĕʹdŏlēt *sĕʹquĭtūr,* sŭbŏlētʹ*quĕ.*
*Cōmpŏʹsĭta ā* pūnʹgō *fōrmăʹbūnt ōmʹnĭă* pūnʹxī ;
*vūlt ūʹnūm* pŭʹpŭgi, *īntērdūmʹquĕ* rĕpūnʹgŏ rĕpūnʹxī.
*Năʹtum ā* dō, *quānʹdò ēst īnflēxʹĭŏ tērʹtia, ŭt* ādʹdō,
crēʹdo, ēʹdō, dēʹdō, rēdʹdō, pērʹdo, ābʹdŏ, *vĕl* ōbʹdō,
cōnʹdo, īnʹdō, trāʹdō, prōʹdō, vēnʹdō, -dĭdi ; *ăt ūʹnūm*
ābscōnʹdo ābscōnʹdī. *Năʹtum ā* stō stās -stĭti *hăbēʹbĭt.*

### Cómpound Verbs which change the first Vówel ínto E.

*Vērʹba hæc sīmplĭʹcĭă* præsēnʹtīs prætĕrĭtĭʹquĕ,*
*sī cōmpōnānʹtūr ; vōcăʹlēm prīʹmam ĭn* ĕ *mūʹtānt :*
dāmʹnō, lācʹtō, săʹcrō, fălʹlo, ārʹcĕō, trācʹtō, fătīsʹcŏr,
cānʹdŏ *vĕʹtūs,* cāpʹtō, jācʹtō, păʹtĭŏr, grădĭŏrʹ*quĕ,*
pārʹtĭŏ, cārʹpŏ, păʹtrō, scānʹdō, spārʹgō ; părĭŏʹ*quĕ,*
*cūʹjūs năʹtă pĕr* ī *dŭʹŏ,* cōmʹpĕrĭt *ēt* rĕʹpĕrĭt, *dānt ;*
*cæʹtĕră sēd pĕr* -ŭī ; *vĕʹlŭt hæc,* ăpĕrīʹre ŏpĕrīʹrĕ.
*Ā* pāsʹcō pāʹvī *tānʹtūm cōmpōsʹtă nŏtĕnʹtŭr*

---

[35] Here vēʹniī is read as a díssyllable by the fígure cálled synǽresis, béing pronoúnced as if wrítten vēʹnî.

[36] We have in this verse two proceleusmátics (or feet of four short sýllables each) in place of two spóndees.

*hæc dŭ'ŏ,* cōmpēs'cō, dīspēs'cō, -pēs'cŭi *hăbē'rĕ:*
*cæ'tĕra, ŭt* ēpās'cō, *sērvā'bŭnt sīm'plĭcĭs ŭ'sŭm.*

Cómpound Verbs which change the first Vówel ínto I.

*Hæc,* hă'bĕō, lă'tĕō, să'lĭō, stă'tŭō, că'dŏ, læ'dō,
*ēt* tān'go, *āt'quĕ* că'nō, *sīc* quæ'rō, cæ'dŏ cĕcī'dī,
*sīc* ĕ'gĕō, tĕ'nĕō, tă'cĕō, să'pĭō, răpĭō'*quĕ,*
*sī cōmpōnān'tŭr, vōcā'lēm prī'mam ĭn* ī *mū'tānt:*
*ūt* ră'pĭō ră'pŭi ērĭ'pĭo ērĭ'pŭi: *Ā* că'nŏ *nā'tŭm*
*prætĕ'rĭtŭm pĕr* -ŭī, *ceū* cōn'cĭnŏ cōncĭ'nŭī, *dăt.*
*Ā* plă'cĕō *sīc* dīsplĭ'cĕō; *sēd sīm'plĭcĭs ū'sŭm*
*hæc dŭ'ŏ,* cōmplă'cĕō *cūm* pērplă'cĕō, *bĕ'nĕ sēr'vānt.*
*Cōmpŏ'sĭta ā vēr'bīs* cāl'cō, sāl'to, ā *pĕr* ŭ *mū'tānt:*
*īd tĭ'bĭ dēmōn'strānt,* cōncūl'co, īncūl'cŏ, rĕsūl'tō.
*Cōmpŏ'sĭta ā* claū'dō, quă'tĭō, lă'vŏ, *rējī'cĭūnt* ă:
*īd dŏ'cĕt ā* claū'do, ōcclū'do, ēxclū'do; *ā* quătĭō'*quĕ,*
pērcŭ'tĭo, ēxcŭ'tĭo; *ā* lă'vŏ, prō'lŭŏ, dī'lŭŏ, *nā'tă.*

---

Cómpound Verbs which change the first Vówel of the Présent Tense ínto I, but which névertheless change nóthing in the Preterpérfect Tense.

*Hæc sī cōmpō'nās,* ă'go, ĕ'mō, sĕ'dĕō, rĕ'gŏ, frān'gō,
*ēt* că'pĭō, jă'cĭō, lă'cĭō, spĕ'cĭō, prĕ'mŏ, pān'gō,
*vōcā'lēm prī'mām præsēn'tĭs ĭn* ī *sĭ'bĭ mū'tānt,*
*prætĕ'rĭtī nūn'quām: ceū* frān'gŏ, rĕfrīn'gŏ rĕfrē'gī:
*ā* că'pĭo, īncĭ'pĭo īncē'pī. *Sēd paū'că nŏtēn'tŭr;*
*nām'quĕ sŭ'ūm sīm'plēx* pĕr'ăgō *sĕ'quĭtŭr,* sătăgō'*quĕ;*
*āt'que ăb* ă'gō, dē'gō *dāt* dē'gī, cō'gŏ cōē'gī;
*ā* rĕ'gŏ, *sīc* pēr'gō pērrēx'ī; *vūlt quŏ'quĕ* sūr'gō
sūrrēx'ī; *mĕ'dĭā præsēn'tĭs sȳl'lăbă ădēm'ptā.*
*Cōmpŏ'sĭta ā* pān'gō *rĕ'tĭnēnt* ā *quā'tŭŏr īs'tă:*
dēpān'go, ōppān'gō, cīrcūmpān'go, *āt'quĕ* rĕpān'gō.
*Nīl vă'rĭāt* fă'cĭō, *nĭ'sĭ præpŏ'sĭtō præēūn'tĕ:*
*īd dŏ'cĕt* ōlfă'cĭō, *cūm* cālfă'cĭo, īnfĭcĭō'*quĕ.*
*Ā* lĕ'gŏ *nā'tă,* rĕ, pēr, præ, sūb, trāns, ād, *præēūn'tĕ,*
*præsēn'tĭs sēr'vānt vōcā'lem: ĭn* ī *cæ'tĕră mū'tānt;*
*dē quĭ'bŭs hæc,* īntēl'lĭgŏ, dī'lĭgŏ, nē'glĭgŏ, *tān'tŭm*
*prætĕ'rĭtŭm* -lēx'ī *fă'cĭūnt; rĕ'lĭqua ōm'nĭă* -lē'gī.

---

III. Of the Súpines of Símple Verbs.

*Nūnc ēx prætĕ'rĭtō dīs'cās fōrmā'rĕ sŭpī'nŭm.*

Bī *sĭ′bĭ* -tūm *sū′mĭt: sĭc nām′quĕ* bĭ′bī bĭ′bĭtūm *fĭt.*
Cī *fĭt* -ctum: *ŭt* vĭ′cī vĭc′tūm *tēstā′tŭr, ĕt* ī′cī
*dāns* ĭc′tūm, fē′cī făc′tūm, jē′cī *quŏ′quĕ* jāc′tŭm.
Dī *fĭt* -sum: *ŭt* vĭ′dī vīs′ūm: *quæ′dām gĕ′mĭnānt* s̄;
*ŭt* păn′dī pās′sūm, sēdī sēs′sum, *āddĕ* scĭ′dī, *quŏd*
*dāt* scĭs′sum, *āt′quĕ* fĭ′dī fĭs′sūm, fō′dī *quŏ′quĕ* fōs′sŭm.
*Hĭc ĕ′tĭàm ādvēr′tās, quōd sȳl′lăbă prī′mă sŭpī′nīs,*
*quām vūlt prætē′rĭtūm gĕmĭnā′rī, nōn gĕmĭnā′tŭr:*
*ĭd′quĕ* tŏtŏn′dī *dāns* tōn′sūm *dŏ′cĕt, āt′quĕ* cĕcī′dī
*quōd* cæ′sum, *ēt* cĕ′cĭdī *quōd dāt* cā′sum, *āt′quĕ* tĕtēn′dī
*quōd* tēn′sum *ēt* tēn′tūm, tŭ′tŭdī tūn′sum, *āt′quĕ* dĕ′dī *quŏd*
*jū′rĕ* dă′tūm *pōs′cĭt;* mōr′sūm *vūlt āt′quĕ* mŏmōr′dī.
Gī *fĭt* -ctum: *ŭt* lē′gī lēc′tūm, pē′gī pĕpĭgī′*quĕ*
*dānt* pāc′tūm, frē′gī frāc′tŭm, tĕ′tĭgī *quŏ′quĕ* tāc′tŭm,
ē′gi āc′tūm, pŭ′pŭgī pūnc′tūm; fū′gī fŭ′gĭtūm *dăt.*
Lī *fĭt* -sum: *ŭt* sāl′lī, *stāns prō să′lĕ cōn′dĭŏ,* sāl′sŭm:
*dāt* pĕpŭlī pūl′sūm, cĕ′cŭlī cūl′sum, *āt′quĕ* fĕfēl′lī
fāl′sūm: *dāt* vēl′lī vūl′sūm: tŭ′li *hă′bĕt quŏ′quĕ* lā′tŭm.
Mī, nī, pī, quī, -tūm *fōr′mānt, vĕ′lŭt hīc mănĭfēs′tŭm:*
ē′mi ēm′ptūm, vē′nī vēn′tūm, cĕ′cĭni *ā* că′nō cān′tŭm;
*ā* că′pĭō cē′pī cāp′tūm; cœ′pī *quŏ′quĕ* cœp′tŭm;
*ā* rūm′pō rū′pī rūp′tūm; lī′quī *quŏ′quĕ* lĭc′tŭm.
Rī *fĭt* -sum: *ŭt* vēr′rī vēr′sūm: pĕ′pĕri *ēx′cĭpĕ* pār′tŭm.
Sī *fĭt* -sum: *ŭt* vī′sī vī′sūm; *tă′mĕn* s̄ *gĕmĭnā′tō*
mī′sī *fōrmā′bĭt* mĭs′sūm: fūl′si *ēx′cĭpĕ* fūl′tŭm,
haū′si haūs′tūm, sār′sī sār′tūm, fār′sī *quŏ′quĕ* fār′tŭm,
ūs′si ūs′tūm, gēs′sī gēs′tūm; tōr′sī *dŭ′ŏ,* tōr′tŭm
*ēt* tōr′sum; īndūl′si īndūl′tum, īndūlsūm′*quĕ rĕquī′rĭt.*
Psī *fĭt* -ptum: *ŭt* scrīp′sī scrīp′tūm; scūl′psī *quŏ′quĕ* scūl′ptŭm.
Tī *fĭt* -tum: *ā* stō *nām′quĕ* stĕ′ti, *ā* sīstō′*quĕ* stĭ′tī, *dānt*
*ām′bō rī′tĕ* stă′tūm: vērtī *tă′mĕn ēx′cĭpĕ* vēr′sŭm.
Vī *fĭt* -tum: *ŭt* flā′vī flā′tūm: pā′vi *ēx′cĭpĕ* pās′tŭm:
*dāt* lā′vī lō′tum, *īntēr′dūm* laū′tum, *āt′quĕ* lăvā′tŭm;
pōtā′vī pō′tum, *īntēr′dūm fă′cĭt ēt* pōtā′tŭm:
*sēd* fā′vī faū′tūm; cā′vī caū′tum. *Ā* sē′rō sē′vī
*fōr′mēs rī′tĕ* să′tūm; lī′vī līnī′*quĕ* lĭ′tūm *dānt:*
sōl′vi *ā* sōl′vō sŏlū′tūm; vōl′vi *ā* vōl′vō vŏlū′tŭm:
*vūlt* sīngūltī′vī sīngūl′tūm; vē′nĕō vē′nīs
vēnī′vī vē′nūm; sĕpĕlī′vī *rī′tĕ* sĕpūl′tŭm.
*Quōd dăt* -ŭī *dăt* -ĭ′tum: *ŭt* dŏ′mŭī dŏ′mĭtum:—*ēx′cĭpĕ*
*quōd′vīs*
*vēr′bum ĭn* -ŭō, *quĭă sēm′pĕr* -ŭī *fōrmā′bĭt ĭn* -ū′tŭm;

ēx'ŭi *ūt* ēxū'tum: *ā* rŭ'ō *dĕ'mĕ* rŭ'ī rŭ'ĭtūm *dāns*:
*vūlt* sĕ'cŭī sēc'tūm, nĕ'cŭī nēc'tūm, frĭcŭī'*quĕ*
frīc'tūm; mīs'cŭi *ĭ'tēm* mīs'tum, *ĕt* ămĭ'cŭī *dăt* ămīc'tŭm;[37]
tŏr'rŭi *hă'bēt* tōs'tūm, dŏ'cŭī dōc'tūm, tĕnŭī'*quĕ*
tēn'tūm, cōnsŭ'lŭī cōnsūl'tum, ă'lŭi āl'tum ălĭtūm'*quĕ*;
*sīc* să'lŭī sāl'tūm, cŏ'lŭi ōccŭ'lŭī *quŏ'quĕ* cūl'tŭm:
pīn'sŭi *hă'bēt* pīs'tūm, ră'pŭī rāp'tūm, sĕrŭī'*quĕ*
*ā* sĕ'rō *vūlt* sēr'tūm; *sīc* tēx'ŭi *hă'bēt quŏ'quĕ* tēx'tŭm.
*Hæc sĕd* -ŭī *mŭ'tānt īn* -sūm; *nām* cēn'sĕō cēn'sŭm,
Cēl'lŭi *hă'bēt* cēl'sūm, mĕ'tō mēs'sŭi *hă'bēt quŏ'quĕ* mēs'sŭm.
Nēx'ŭi *ĭ'tēm* nēx'ŭm, *sīc* pēx'ŭi *hă'bēt quŏ'quĕ* pēx'ŭm.
Xī *fīt* -ctum: *ūt* vīn'xī vīnc'tūm: *quīn'que ābjĭ'cĭūnt* n̄;
*ūt* fīn'xī fīc'tūm, mīn'xī mīc'tum, *ăd'jĭcĕ* pīn'xī
*dāns* pīc'tūm, strīn'xī strīc'tūm, rīn'xī *quŏ'quĕ* rīc'tŭm.
Xūm, flēx'ī, plēx'ī, fīx'ī, *dānt*; *ēt* flŭ'ō flūx'ŭm.

---

## IV. Of the Súpines of Cómpound Verbs.

*Cōmpŏ'situm ūt sīm'plēx fōrmā'tūr quōd'quĕ sŭpī'nŭm,*
*quām'vīs nōn ĕ'ădēm stēt sўl'lăbă sēm'pĕr ŭtrī'quĕ.*
*Cōmpŏ'sita ā* tūn'sūm, *dēm'ptā* n̄, -tū'sum: *ā* rŭ'ĭtūm *fīt,*
ī *mĕ'dĭā dēm'ptā*, -rŭ'tum; *ĕt ā* sāl'tūm *quŏ'quĕ* -sūl'tŭm;
*ā* sĕ'rō, *quān'dŏ* să'tūm *fōr'māt, cōmpōstă* -sĭ'tūm *dānt.*
*Hæc* cāp'tūm, fāc'tūm, jāc'tūm, rāp'tum, ā *pĕr* ĕ *mŭ'tānt,*
*ēt* cān'tūm, pār'tūm, spār'sūm, cār'ptūm, *quŏ'quĕ* fār'tŭm.
*Vēr'bum* ĕ'dō *cōmpŏ'sĭtūm nōn* -ēs'tūm, *sēd fă'cĭt* -ē'sŭm;
*ŭ'nūm dūntāx'āt* cŏ'mĕdō *fōrmā'bĭt ŭtrūm'quĕ.*
*Ā* nōs'cō *tān'tūm dŭ'ŏ* cōg'nĭtum *ĕt* āg'nĭtum *hăbēn'tŭr:*
*cæ'tĕră dānt* nŏ'tūm: *nūl'lo ēst jām* nōs'cĭtum *īn ŭ'sū.*

---

## V. Of the Preterpérfect Tense of Verbs in -ŏr.

*Vēr'ba īn* -ŏr *ādmīt'tūnt ēx pōstĕ'rĭōrĕ sŭpī'nō*
*prætĕ'rĭtūm, vēr'so* -ū *pĕr* -ŭs, *ēt* sūm *cōnsŏcĭă'tō*
*vēl* fŭ'i: *ŭt ā* lēc'tū, lēc'tūs sūm *vēl* fŭ'i. *Āt hŏ'rŭm*
*nūnc ēst dēpŏ'nēns, nūnc ēst cōmmŭ'nĕ nŏtān'dŭm:*
*nām* lā'bōr lāp'sūs; pă'tĭōr *dāt* pās'sŭs, *ĕt ē'jŭs*
*nă'ta*; *ūt* cōmpă'tĭōr cōmpās'sūs, pērpĕtĭōr'*quĕ*
*fōr'māns* pērpēs'sūs: fă'tĕōr *dāt* fās'sŭs, *ĕt īn'dĕ*
*nă'ta*; *ūt* cōnfĭ'tĕōr cōnfēs'sūs, dīffĭtĕōr'*quĕ*
*fōr'māns* dīffēs'sūs: gră'dĭōr *dāt* grēs'sŭs, *ĕt īn'dĕ*

---

[37] In this verse we have a procleusmátic for a spóndee.

*nā'ta ; ŭt* dīgrĕ'dĭōr dīgrēs'sŭs: *jŭn'gĕ* fătīs'cŏr
fēs'sŭs sŭm, mēn'sŭs sŭm mĕ'tĭŏr, ū'tŏr *ĕt* ū'sŭs.
*Prō tēx'o* ōrdī'tŭs, *pro ĭncēp'tŏ dăt* ōr'dĭŏr ōr'sŭs,
nī'tŏr nī'sŭs *vĕl* nīx'ŭs sum, ŭlcīs'cŏr *ĕt* ŭl'tŭs ;
Īrās'cŏr *sĭ'mŭl* īrā'tŭs, rĕ'ŏr *ăt'quĕ* ră'tŭs sŭm,
ōblīvīs'cŏr *vŭlt* ōblī'tŭs sŭm, frŭ'ŏr *ŏp'tăt*
frŭc'tŭs *vĕl* frŭ'ĭtŭs: mĭsĕrē'rī *jŭn'gĕ* mĭsĕr'tŭs.
*Vŭlt* tŭ'ŏr *ĕt* tŭ'ĕŏr *nōn* tŭ'tŭs, *sĕd* tŭ'ĭtŭs sŭm :
*ā* lŏ'quŏr *ăd'dĕ* lŏcū'tŭs ; *ĕt ā* sĕ'quŏr *ăd'dĕ* sĕcū'tŭs.
Ēxpĕ'rĭŏr *fă'cĭt* ēxpĕr'tŭs ; *fōr'mā'rĕ* păcīs'cŏr
*gaŭ'dĕt* păc'tŭs sŭm, nāncīs'cŏr năc'tŭs, ăpīs'cŏr,
*quŏd vĕ'tŭs ĕst vĕr'bum*, ăp'tŭs sum ; *ŭn'de* ădĭpīs'cŏr ădēp'tŭs.
*Jŭn'gĕ* quĕ'rŏr quēs'tŭs, prŏfĭcīs'cŏr *jŭn'gĕ* prŏfĕc'tŭs,
ēxpērgīs'cŏr sum ēxpērrēctŭs ; *ĕt hæc quŏ'quĕ* cōmmĭ-
nīs'cŏr cōmmēn'tŭs, nās'cŏr nā'tŭs, mŏrĭŏr'*quĕ*
mŏr'tŭŭs ; *ăt'que* ŏ'rĭŏr, *quŏd prætĕ'rĭtŭm fă'cĭt* ōr'tŭs.

---

## VI. Of Verbs which make the Preterpérfect Tense both of the áctive and pássive Voice.

*Prætĕ'rĭtum ăctī'væ ĕt păssī'væ vō'cĭs hă'bĕnt hæc :*
cœ'nō cœnā'vi *ĕt* cœnā'tŭs sŭm *tĭ'bĭ fōr'măt*,
jū'rō jūrā'vi *ĕt* jūrā'tŭs, pō'tō*quĕ* pōtā'vi[38]
*ĕt* pō'tŭs, tĭ'tŭbō tĭ'tŭbā'vī *vĕl* tĭtŭbā'tŭs.
Prān'dĕō prān'di *ĕt* prān'sŭs sŭm, plă'cĕō plă'cŭī *dăt*
*ĕt* plă'cĭtŭs, suēs'cō suē'vī *vŭlt ăt'quĕ* sŭē'tŭs.
Nū'bō nūp'sī nūp'tă*quĕ* sŭm, mĕ'rĕŏr mĕ'rĭtŭs sŭm,
*vĕl* mĕ'rŭi : *ăd'dĕ* lĭ'bĕt lĭ'bŭĭt lĭ'bĭtum, *ĕt* lĭ'cĕt *ăd'dĕ*
*quŏd* lĭ'cŭĭt lĭ'cĭtŭm, tæ'dĕt *quŏd* tæ'dŭĭt *ĕt dăt*
pērtæ'sum : *ăd'dĕ* pŭ'dĕt *fă'cĭēns* pŭ'dŭĭt pŭdĭtŭm'*quĕ ;*
*ăt'quĕ* pĭ'gĕt, *tĭ'bĭ quŏd fōr'măt* pĭ'gŭĭt pĭgĭtŭm'*quĕ*.

---

## VII. Of the Préterite of Verbs Neúter-pássive.

*Neŭ'trō-pāssī'vŭm sīc prætĕ'rĭtŭm tĭ'bĭ fōr'măt :*
gaŭ'dĕō gāvī'sŭs sŭm, fī'dō fī'sŭs, *ĕt* aŭ'deō[39]
aŭ'sŭs sŭm, fī'ō făc'tŭs, sŏ'lĕō sŏ'lĭtŭs sŭm.

[38] The last sýllable of this verse, béing hypérmeter, is elíded befóre the inítial vówel of the first word of the next line.

[39] The scánning requíres aŭ'dĕō to be a díssyllable, else the fínal *o* to be elíded befóre aŭ'sŭs of the next verse

Verbs which want the Preterpérfect Tense.

*Prætĕ'rĭtūm fŭ'giūnt*, vēr'go, ām'bĭgŏ, glīs'cŏ, fătīs'cō,
pōl'lĕŏ, nī'dĕo: *ăd hæc īncēptī'va ; ūt* pŭĕrās'cō ;
*ēt pāssī'vă, quī'būs cărŭē're āctī'vă sŭpī'nis ;*
*ūt* mĕ'tŭōr, tĭ'mĕōr: *mĕdĭtātī'va ōm'nĭă, præ'tĕr*
pārtŭ'rĭo, ēsŭ'rĭō ; *quæ prætĕ'rĭtūm dŭ'ŏ sēr'vānt.*

Verbs which séldom admít a Súpine.

*Hæc ră'ro aūt nūn'quām rĕtĭnē'būnt vēr'bă sŭpī'nŭm :*
lām'bŏ, mĭ'cō mĭ'cŭī, rŭ'dō, scă'bŏ, pār'cŏ pĕpēr'cī,
dīspēs'cō, pōs'cō, dīs'cō, cōmpēs'cŏ, quĭnīs'cō.
Dē'go, ān'gō, sū'gō, līn'gō, nīn'gō, sătăgō'*quĕ*,
psāl'lō, vŏ'lō, nŏ'lō, mā'lō, trĕ'mŏ, strī'dĕŏ, strī'dō,
flā'vĕŏ, lī'vĕo, ă'vēt, pă'vĕō, cōnnī'vĕŏ, fēr'vĕt.
*Ā* nŭ'ŏ *cōmpŏ'sĭtum ; ūt* rĕ'nŭo : *ā* că'do ; *ŭt* āc'cĭdŏ : *præ'tĕr*
ōc'cĭdŏ *quōd fă'cĭt* ōccā'sūm, rĕcĭdō'*quĕ* rĕcā'sŭm.
Rēs'pŭŏ, līn'quŏ, lŭ'ŏ, mĕ'tŭō, clŭ'ŏ, frī'gĕŏ, cāl'vĕo,[40]
*ēt* stēr'tō, tĭ'mĕō: *sīc* lū'cĕo, *ĕt* ār'cĕŏ, *cū'jŭs*
*cōmpŏ'sĭta* -ēr'cĭtum *hă'bēnt : sīc ā* grŭ'o, *ŭt* īn'grŭŏ, *nă'tă ;*
*ēt quæ'cūnque ĭn* -ŭī *fōrmān'tūr neŭ'tră sĕcūn'dæ :*
*ēxcĭ'pĭās* ŏ'lĕō, dŏ'lĕō, plă'cĕō, tăcĕō'*quĕ ;*
pā'rĕo, *ī'tēm* că'rĕō, nŏ'cĕō, jă'cĕō, lătĕō'*quĕ*,
*ēt* vă'lĕō, că'lĕō: *gaū'dēnt hæc nām'quĕ sŭpī'nō.*

---

EXCEPTIONS TO SOME OF THE FOREGOING RULES.

1. Althoúgh *dām'nŏ* and *trāc'tŏ*, when compoúnded, génerally change the first vówel (*a*) into *e*, yet prædām'nō, *I condémn befórehand*, pērtrāc'tŏ, *I treat thóroughly*, and rĕtrāc'tŏ, *I hándle agaín*, are to be excépted.

2. Althoúgh *hă'bĕŏ*, when compoúnded, génerally chánges the first vówel (*a*) into *i*, yet āntĕhă'bĕō, *I prefér*, and pōsthă'bĕō, *I postpóne*, must be excépted.

3. Althoúgh *lă'vō*, when compoúnded, génerally rejécts the first vówel, yet rĕ'lăvŏ, *I wash agaín*, retaíns it.

4. Althoúgh the verbs *ĕ'mŏ* and *sĕ'dĕŏ*, when compoúnded, change the first vówel (*e*) of the présent tense into *i*, yet cŏ'ēmŏ, *I buy up*, and sŭpērsĕ'dĕŏ, *to omít* or *forbeár*, are to be excépted. Lástly, to *pĕr'ăgō* and *săt'ăgō*, cómpounds of *ă'gō* retaíning the first vówel, may be ádded cīrcŭm'ăgō, *I drive aboút*.

---

[40] Here cāl'vĕŏ must be consídered a díssyllable, else the fínal *o*, being an hypérmeter sýllable, must súffer elísion, befóre the vówel *e* at the begínning of the next line.

# SYNTAXIS:[1]

OR THE

# CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

☞ In the fóllowing Rules the short fínal sýllables are márked short, withoút réference to posítion; but in the Exámples to the Rules, whenéver ány Exámple is in verse, all short sýllables long by posítion are márked long, agreéaoly to the plan which we adópted in the métrical Rules for the génder of nouns, and formátion of the préterite and súpines of verbs.

*** The Exámples to the Rules of Constrúction are here séverally prínted in Itálic, with the exceṕtion of the words to which ány Rule more partícularly refèrs, those words are in Róman chàracters to distínguish them from the rest.

## CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.[2]

### Nōmĭnātī'vŭs ĕt Vĕr'bŭm.

### *The First Cóncord. The Nóminative Case and the Verb.*

Vĕr'bŭm pērsōnā'lĕ cōncŏr'dăt cŭm nōmĭnātī'vō, nŭ'mĕrō ĕt pērsō'nā:[3] ŭt,

—*Sĕ'ră nūn'quam* ēst *ăd bŏ'nōs mō'rēs* vĭ'ă. Sen.

---

[1] Sýntax is that part of Grámmar which teáches the right constrúction of words in a séntence, accórding to cértain Rules, but with occásional excéptions. It consists of Con'cord, or the right agreément of words with one another, and of Go'vernment, or the due ínfluence and depéndence of words on one anóther.

[2] There are in Grámmar three Cóncords: *first,* of a verb with its nóminative; *sécond,* of an ádjective with its súbstantive; *third,* of the Rélative with its antecédent.

[3] The símplest séntence póssible consísts of a neúter verb and its nóminative case, eíther expréssed or understoód:—as Dĕ'ŭs ēst, *God is,* or *there is a God;* dŏr'mĭō, *I sleep,* or, *I am asleép,* understand ĕ'gŏ; tŏ'năt, *it thúnders,* understánd ĭd, *it.* The séntence which has the next degreé of simplícity to the símplest, is that which consists of a tránsitive verb, with its nóminative case, and régimen: as, lū'nă rĕ'gĭt mēn'sēs, *the moon rules the months.* As, howéver, there is fréquently an Ellípsis of the nóminative in a séntence, so, álso, is there sómetimes an ellípsis of the verb: as, Dī mĕlĭō'ră, understánd dēnt, *may the Gods awárd bétter things:* quŏt hŏ'mĭnēs, tŏt sēntēn'tĭæ, understánd sūnt áfter hŏ'mĭnēs and agaín áfter tŏt, that is, *as mány pérsons soéver as there are in the world, so mány different opínions are there,* or, as we say in

Nōmĭnātī'vŭs prōnō'mĭnŭm rā'rō ēxprī'mĭtŭr, nī'sī dīstīnctĭō'nĭs, aūt ēm'phăsĭs grā'tĭă: ŭt,

"Vōs *dāmnās'tĭs:"*

[*quă'sĭ dī'căt,* prætĕ'rĕā nē'mŏ.]

"Tu *ēs pătrō'nūs,* tū *pă'rēns,*———

"*Sī dē'sĕrīs* tū, *pĕrī'ĭmŭs:"*———Ter.

[*quă'sĭ dī'căt,* "præcĭ'pŭē, ĕt præ ă'lĭīs, tū pătrō'nŭs, ĕs."]

"*Fēr'tŭr ătrō'cĭă flāgĭ'tĭă dēsīgnās'sĕ.*" Ovid.

Alĭquān'dō ōrā'tĭō ēst vēr'bō nōmĭnātī'vŭs: ŭt,

———*Īngĕ'nŭās* dĭdĭcīs'sĕ *fĭdē'lĭtĕr* ăr'tēs[4]
*Ēmōl'līt mō'rēs, nēc sĭ'nĭt ēs'sĕ fĕ'rōs.* Ovid.

Ălĭquān'dō ādvēr'bĭŭm cŭm gĕnĭtī'vō: ŭt,

Pār'tīm vĭrō'rŭm *cĕcĭdē'rūnt ĭn bēl'lō.*

*Excéptions.*

I. Vēr'bă īnfīnītī'vī mŏ'dī frĕquēn'tĕr prō nōmĭnātī'vō āccūsātī'vŭm ān'tĕ sē stă'tŭūnt, cōnjūnctĭō'nĕ *quŏd* vĕl *ŭt* ŏmīs'sā:[5] ŭt,

Tē *rĕdĭīs'sĕ īncŏ'lŭmĕm gaŭ'dĕō.*

---

En'glish, *mány men, mány minds.* E'very verb, then, must have a nóminative case, eíther expréssed or understoód; and évery nóminative case must have a verb: álso two or more nóminative cáses síngular (línked togéther by one or more cópulative conjúnctions, eíther expréssed or understoód,) will have a verb plúral; whereóf the pérson will be that of the more wórthy súbstantive, if ány distinction of wórthiness can be drawn:—but sómetimes the verb agreés with the nóminative neárest to it:—as, mē pĕrī'tŭs dīs'cĕt Ī'bĕr, Rhŏdănī'quĕ pō'tŏr, *me the accómplished, (or refíned) Spániard (*líterally *skílled Ibérian) shall stúdy, and the drínker of the Rhone (shall stúdy me).* On the cóntrary, a verb plúral is sómetimes usúrped áfter a nóminative síngular and an áblative precéded by the prepositíon cŭm, *with.*

[4] The whole of this line may be táken as the nóminative case to ēmōl'līt, and likewise to sĭ'nĭt: but a verb of the ínfinitive mood is not ónly fréquently the nóminative case to a verb, but álso the súbstantive to an ádjective: as mēntī'rī tūr'pĕ ēst, *to lie is a base thing:* vēl'lĕ sŭ'ŭm cuī'que ēst, *his own will is to évery one,* that is, *évery one has a will of his own.*

[5] In transláting ány En'glish séntence into Látin, if the conjúnction '*that*' (eíther expréssed or understoód) come betweén two verbs, the látter verb may with élegance be put in the ínfinitive mood, its nóminative case béing túrned ínto the accúsative:—as, *they say (that) the king is cóming,* aī'ūnt rē'gĕm ādvēntā'rĕ, ráther than, aī'ūnt quŏd rēx ādvēn'tăt: agaín, *he said (that) he (himsélf) would come,* dīx'ĭt sē vēntū-

II. Vēr′bŭm īn′tĕr dŭ′ŏs nōmĭnātī′vōs dīvērsō′rūm nŭmĕrō′rŭm pŏ′sĭtŭm, cŭm āltĕrū′trō[6] cōncōrdā′rĕ pŏ′tēst :—ŭt,

*Ămān′tĭum* ī′ræ *ămō′rĭs* īntĕgrā′tĭo ēst. Ter.
Pēc′tūs *quŏ′quĕ* rō′bŏră fī′ŭnt. Ovid.

III. Nō′mĕn mūltĭtū′dĭnĭs sīngŭlā′rĕ quāndŏ′quĕ vēr′bō plūrā′lī jūn′gĭtŭr :[7] ŭt,

Pārs *ăbĭē′rĕ.*
Ŭtēr′quĕ *dēlūdūn′tŭr dŏ′līs.*

Vēr′bă īmpērsōnā′lĭă nōmĭnātī′vŭm nōn hă′bēnt ēnūncĭā′tŭm :[8] ŭt,

Tæ′dĕt *mē vī′tæ.*
Pērtæ′sŭm ēst *cōnjŭ′gĭī.*

---

rŭm ēs′sĕ, ráther than dīx′ĭt quŏd īp′sĕ vĕnī′rĕt : but if the verb which ought to be in the infínitive mood, ought álso to be in the fúture tense, and it have no fúture tense of that mood, then fŏ′rĕ, *to be abóut to be,* fóllowed by ŭt, *that,* and a subjúnctive mood must be úsed ; as, *he says (that) I shall be áble,* dī′cĭt fŏ′rĕ, ŭt pōs′sīm. This constrúction, too, is sómetimes véry élegantly emplóyed, éven where the verb which ought to be in the infínitive mood, has the fúture tense. Occásionally, líkewise, it háppens, that insteád of the infínitive mood, the subjúnctive mood, with the omíssion of *ŭt,* is préferable ; as, īgnōs′cās, vŏ′lō, *I wish (that) you would be forgíving :* jŭbē′tō, cēr′tĕt Àmȳn′tās, *give órders (that) Amýntas vie ;* or símply, *bid Amýntas conténd.*

[6] Mány exámples of this sort are undoúbtedly to be met with ; but espécially amóng the póets, who were óften compélled by the meásure of their verse to take a líberty which could hárdly be gránted in prose ; the effícient or real nóminative, howéver, that is, the word which (more immédiately) ánswers to the quéstion made with the verb, ought própetly to régulate or diréct the pérson of the verb.

[7] Nouns of múltitude, or, as they are génerally stýled, in En′glish, *Colléctive Nouns,* are such as, though themsélves of the síngular númber, have yet a plúral signification :—for exámple, pŏ′pŭlŭs, *the peóple,* vūl′gŭs, *the rábble,* tūr′bă, *a crowd,* ēxēr′cĭtŭs, *an ármy,* clās′sĭs, *a fleet,* and the like. Whenéver the idéa implíes a separátion ínto parts, a verb plúral is préferable ; but when there is no divísion or separátion ínto parts, the verb should most unquéstionably be of the síngular númber.

[8] By impérsonal verbs are meant, such verbs as are néver found excépt in the third pérson síngular, and which have néver ány nóminative expréssed in Látin ; the prónoun ĭd, *it,* béing upón all occásions understoód. Some pérsonal verbs, howéver, are now and then assúmed impérsonally : and all neúter verbs in -*ŏ* may be símilarly úsed in évery tense of the pássive voice ; sómetimes with much élegance, and at all times with strict confórmity to the ídiom of the Látin tongue.

## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

Sūbstāntī′vŭm ĕt Ādjēctī′vŭm, &c.

*The Sécond Cóncord. The Súbstantive and Ádjective.*

Ādjēctī′vă, pārtĭcĭ′pĭă, ĕt prōnō′mĭnă, cŭm sūbstāntī′vō, gĕ′nĕrĕ, nŭ′mĕrō, ĕt că′sū, cōncŏr′dānt :[9] ŭt,

Rā′ra ă′vĭs *ĭn tĕr′rīs*, nīgrō′*quĕ sĭmĭl′lĭmă* cy̆g′nō. Juv.

Ălĭquān′dō ōrā′tĭō sūp′plĕt lŏ′cŭm sūbstāntī′vī, ādjēctī′vō ĭn neū′trō gĕ′nĕrĕ pŏ′sĭtō : ŭt,

Aūdī′tō *rē′gĕm Dŏrŏbēr′nĭăm prŏfĭcĭs′cī.*

---

## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Rĕlātī′vŭm ĕt Āntĕcē′dēns.

*The Third Cóncord. The Rélative and the Antecédent.*

Rĕlātī′vŭm cŭm āntĕcēdēn′tĕ[10] cōncŏr′dăt, gĕ′nĕrĕ, nŭ′mĕrō, ĕt pērsō′nā : ŭt,

——— Vīr *bŏ′nŭs ēst quĭs ?*
Quī *cōnsūl′tă pă′trūm*, quī *lē′gēs jū′răquĕ sēr′văt.* Hor.

---

[9] There can be no ádjective ín a séntence, withoút some súbstantive (eíther expréssed or understoód) agreéing with it. When no súbstantive is expréssed, the ádjective is put in the neúter génder, becaúse the súbject with which it is suppósed to agreé is not detérmined eíther to be másculine or féminine, and cónsequently is regárded as neúter. Oftentimes, ádjectives agreé with súbstantives not áctually expréssed, but yet cleárly understoód : as, ămī′cŭs (vĭr) *a friéndly man*, that is, *a friend ;* dēx′tră (mă′nŭs), *the right hand ;* rē′gĭă (dŏ′mŭs), *a róyal mánsion* or *king's pálace ;* paū′pĕr (hŏ′mŏ), *a poor pérson ;* prŏfūn′dŭm *vel* āl′tŭm (mă′rĕ), *the deep*, that is, *the deep sea* or *ócean ;* fĕrī′nă (că′rō) *wild flesh*, meáning, *vénison :* with véry mány besídes.

[10] The antecédent is sómetimes whólly withhéld in its own clause of a séntence, and élegantly expréssed in the clause of the Rélative, and in the same case with the Rélative : as, ūr′bēm quām stă′tŭō, vēs′tra ēst, that is, *the cíty which I build (or am aboút to eréct) is yours.* Sometimes, too, the antecédent is gíven in both claúses, as, dĭ′ēm dīcūnt quō dĭ′ē, *they name or appoínt a day, on which day :* sómetimes, again the antecédent is entírely suppréssed ; thus, vīn′cĕ, quī vīn′cĭs, *cónquer-thou who cónquerest ;* understánd tū, *thou :* mī′sĭt quī cōgnōs′cĕrēnt, *he sent (pérsons) who might explóre*, or, *he sent to explóre ;* understánd mī′lĭtēs, *sóldiers*, else, ēxplōrātō′rēs, *scouts :*—and sómetimes, agaín, the Rélative is understoód ; as, ūrbs āntī′quă fŭ′ĭt, Ty̆′rĭī tĕnŭē′rĕ cŏlō′nī,

Ălĭquān′dō ōrā′tĭō pŏ′nĭtŭr prō āntĕcēdĕn′tĕ : ŭt,

In tēm′pŏrĕ *ăd ĕ′ăm* vē′nī, quód *rē′rŭm ōm′nĭŭm est prī′mŭm.*

Rĕlātī′vŭm īn′tĕr dŭ′ŏ sūbstāntī′vă[11] dīvērsŏ′rŭm gĕ′nĕrŭm [ĕt nŭmĕrō′rŭm] cōllŏcā′tŭm, īntēr′dŭm cŭm pōstĕrĭō′rĕ cōncōr′dăt : ŭt,

*Hŏ′mĭnēs tŭēn′tŭr ĭl′lŭm* glŏ′bŭm quæ tēr′ră *dī′cĭtŭr.* Cic.

Ălĭquān′dō rĕlātī′vŭm cōncōr′dăt cŭm prīmĭtī′vō, quŏd ĭn pōssēssī′vō sŭbaūdī′tŭr : ŭt,

——— *ōm′nēs ōm′nĭă*
*bŏ′nă dī′cĕre, ēt laūdā′rĕ fōrtū′nās* mĕ′ās,
quī[12] *gnā′tum hăbē′rēm tā′lī īngĕ′nĭō prœ′dĭtŭm.* Ter.

Sī nōmĭnātī′vŭs rĕlātī′vō ĕt vēr′bō īntērpōnā′tŭr,[13] rĕlātī′vŭm rĕ′gĭtŭr ā vēr′bō, aūt, ăb ă′lĭā dīctĭō′nĕ, quæ cŭm vēr′bō ĭn ōrātĭō′nĕ lŏcā′tŭr : ŭt,

*Grā′tĭa ăb ŏffĭ′cĭō,* quōd mŏ′ră tār′dăt, *ăb′ēst.* Ovid.
Cū′jŭs nū′mĕn *ădō′rō.*

---

*there was an áncient cíty (which) Týrian cólonists posséssed:* but in En′glish this omíssion is much more fréquent than in Látin. Here it is wórthy of the nótice of leárners that the Rélative agreés with its antecédent in *génder, númber,* and *PER′SON,* but with that antecédent, if found in the same clause of the séntence with the Rélative itsélf, the Rélative agrées in *génder, nûmber,* and *CASE.*

[11] The restríction méntioned in note 6, abóve, is équally ápplicable in the présent ínstance : for the Rélative ought álways to agreé with the súbstantive which is more immédiately and osténsibly its antecédent, unléss indeéd some véry weíghty reáson can be assígned for déviating from this práctice.

[12] Here quī has, for its antecédent, mĕ′ī, *of me,* understoód in the posséssive ádjective mĕ′ās, *my,* of the precéding line.

[13] The *Case* of the Rélative álways depénds upón some word in the same clause of the séntence with itsélf, but it takes its *génder, númber,* and *pérson,* from the súbstantive to which it partícularly reférs, and which is génerally in some fórmer clause of the séntence. When the Rélative is not the nóminative case to ány verb, it may be viéwed as a súbstantive ráther than an ádjective, as it is góverned precísely in the same mánner as a súbstantive is góverned :—if, howéver, the Rélative agreés with ány súbstantive expréssed in its own clause of the séntence, then it is to all inténts an ádjective, and the súbstantive with which it agreés, dirécts its case.

# NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

## 1. SUBSTANTIVA.

### *The Constrúction of Nouns Súbstantive.*

Quŭm dŭ′ŏ sūbstāntī′vă dīvēr′sæ sīgnĭfĭcātĭō′nĭs[14] cōncūr′-rūnt, pōstĕ′rĭŭs ĭn gĕnĭtī′vō pŏ′nĭtŭr : ŭt,

*Crēs′cĭt* ă′mōr nūm′mī, *quān′tum īp′să pĕcū′nĭă crēs′cĭt.*

Hīc gĕnĭtī′vŭs ălĭquān′dŏ ĭn dătī′vŭm vēr′tĭtŭr : ŭt,

Ūr′bī pă′tĕr *ēst*, ūrbī′*quĕ* mărī′tŭs. Luc.

Ādjēctī′vŭm ĭn neŭ′trō gĕ′nĕrĕ sī′nĕ sūbstāntī′vō pŏ′sĭtŭm, ălĭquān′dō gĕnĭtī′vŭm[15] pōs′tŭlăt : ŭt,

*Paū′lŭlŭm pĕcū′nĭæ.*

Pō′nĭtŭr īntēr′dŭm gĕnĭtī′vŭs tān′tŭm, prĭō′rĕ sūbstāntī′vo pĕr ēllīp′sĭn sŭbaūdī′tō :[16] ŭt,

———*Ŭ′bi* ād Dīă′næ *vĕ′nĕrĭs*,

*Ī′to ād dēx′trăm* :———Ter.

[*Subaúdi* témplum.]

---

[14] In réndering En′glish ínto Látin, it not unfréquently háppens that two súbstantives of dífferent signification come togéther with the sign *of* betweén them, whereóf the látter ought not in confórmity to the Látin ídiom to be put in the génitive case : for ínstance, whenéver the látter súbstantive denótes the ***súbstance*** or ***matérials*** of which the fórmer consísts, the Látin ídiom requíres the áblative case precéded by ē, ēx, or dē, ***out of*** or ***of*** ; else, that the súbstantive of ***mátter*** be túrned ínto the ádjective expréssive of that sort of mátter. Thus, the two súbstantives, ***a vase of sílver***, that is, ***a sílver vase***, must not be réndered vās ārgēn′tī, but vās ēx ārgēn′tō fāc′tŭm, or vās ārgēn′tĕŭm. In like mánner, óther súbstantives are occásionally convérted ínto their ádjectives : as, ***my fáther's house*** may be transláted, dŏ′mŭs pă′trĭs or dŏ′mŭs pătēr′nă.

[15] The ádjectives more cómmonly úsed in this way are those which reláte to Quántity or Númber ; as, mūl′tŭm, ***much***, plūs, ***more***, plū′rĭmŭm, ***very much*** or ***very many***, pār′vŭm, ***líttle***, mĭ′nŭs, ***less***, mĭ′nĭmŭm, ***the least thing*** or ***pórtion***, sūm′mŭm, ***the very híghest pitch***, ūl′tĭmŭm, ***the last stage***, ēxtrē′mŭm, ***the útmost verge***, mĕ′dĭŭm, ***the míddle divísion*** or ***point*** :—with the prónouns, hŏc, ***this***, ĭd, ***that***, quĭd, ***what*** ; and the séveral cómpounds of quĭd, as, ă′lĭquĭd, ***ánything***, nĕ′quĭd, ***no one thing*** ; thus, quĭd rĕ′ī ? ***what is the mátter ?***

[16] This is an élegant mode of expréssion, províded ónly that the omíssion be consístent with perspicúity, and that the púrport of the speáker or wríter, be at once (and unambíguously) évident : thus in En′glish we say, St. Paul's, meáning *the Cathédral* of St. Paul : and St. James's, meáning ***the Paláce*** of St. James, else ***the Church*** or ***Párish***

Dŭ'ŏ sŭbstāntī'vă rĕ'ī ējŭs'dĕm, ĭn ĕō'dĕm că'sū pōnŭn'tŭr:[17] ŭt,

*Ēffŏdĭūn'tŭr* ŏ'pēs, īrrītāmĕn'tă *mălō'rŭm.* Ovid.

*Laūs, vĭtŭpĕ'rĭŭm,* vĕl *quă'lĭtās* rĕ'ī,[18] pō'nĭtŭr ĭn āblātī'vō, ĕ'tĭăm gĕnĭtī'vō: ŭt,

Īngĕ'nŭī vŭl'tūs *pŭ'ĕr,* īngĕnŭī'*quĕ* pŭdō'rĭs. Juv.
*Vĭr* nŭl'lā fĭ'dē.

*Ŏ'pŭs* ĕt *ŭ'sŭs* āblātī'vŭm ēx'ĭgūnt: ŭt,

Aūctōrĭtā'tĕ *tŭā nō'bīs* ŏ'pŭs *ēst.* Cic.
*Pĕcū'nĭăm,* (quā *nĭ'hĭl sĭ'bĭ ēs'sĕt* ū'sŭs,) *ăb ĭ'īs nōn ăccĕ'pĭt.* Gell.

*Ŏ'pŭs* aū'tĕm ādjēctī'vē, prō "*nĕcēssă'rĭŭs,*" quāndō'quĕ pōnī vĭdē'tŭr: ŭt,

Dūx *nō'bīs ĕt* aūc'tŏr ŏ'pŭs *ēst.* Cic.

---

## II. ADJECTIVA.

*The Constrúction of Nouns Ádjective.*

---

### 1. Gĕnĭtī'vŭs pōst Adjēctī'vŭm.

*The Génitive Case áfter the Ádjective.*

Ādjēctī'vă quæ dēsīdĕ'rĭŭm, nōtĭ'tĭăm, mĕmŏ'rĭăm, tĭmŏ'-

---

named áfter that Saint. So, in Látin, by "pĕr Vārrō'nĭs" was meant "pĕr fŭn'dŭm Vārrō'nĭs," *through Várro's ground* or *glebe;* líkewise, by "Pōppæ'ă Nĕrō'nĭs," was meant "Pōppæ'ă Nĕrō'nĭs ūx'ŏr," *Néro's cónsort or wife Poppæa* —and so forth.

[17] Of the súbstantives thus concórding in case, one may be síngular, the óther plúral; as, ūrbs Ăthē'næ, *the cíty A'thens,* fī'lĭŭs, dēlĭ'cĭæ mā'trĭs, *a son, the dárling of his móther.*

[18] The exámples fálling únder this Rule (in so far, at least, as regárds the áblative case,) seem to be góverned by some ádjective, or preposítion, understoód: thus, vĭr nūllā fĭdē, *a man with no príncipłe;* understánd cŭm, *with,* else, præ'dĭtŭs cŭm, *endúed with.* In most ínstances eíther the génitive or áblative may be assúmed indífferently: but, agaín, there are cértain phráses, in which the génitive is more élegant than the áblative; and óthers, in which the áblative is deémed préferable to the génitive:—thus, the Rómans said, "ĕs bŏ'nō ă'nĭmō," *be of good cheer,* or, *of coúrage,* ráther than "ĕs bŏ'nī ă'nĭmī;" but, "hŏ'mŏ ī'mī sŭbsĕl'lĭī," *a pérson of the lówest caste, or rank,* ráther than "hŏ'mŏ ī'mō sŭbsĕl'lĭō." Cícero has "sūmmā spē, sūm'mæ vīrtū'tĭs," *of the híghest hope, the híghest válour,* in one and the same séntence. Occásionally,

rĕm sīgnĭ′fĭcānt, āt′quĕ ĭ′īs cōntrā′rĭă, gĕnĭtī′vŭm ēxĭ′gūnt ;[19] ŭt,

*Ēst nātū′ră hŏ′mĭnŭm* nŏvĭtā′tĭs ă′vĭdă. Plin.
*Mēns* fŭtū′rī præ′scĭă.
Mĕ′mŏr *ēs′tō brĕ′vĭs* æ′vī.
*Īm′mĕmŏr bĕnĕfĭ′cĭī.*
*Īmpĕrī′tŭs rē′rŭm.* Ter.
*Rŭ′dĭs bēl′lī.*
*Tĭ′mĭdŭs Dĕō′rŭm.* Ovid.
*Īmpă′vĭdŭs sŭ′ī.* Claud.

Cŭm plū′rĭmīs ă′lĭīs quæ āffēctĭō′nĕm ă′nĭmī dē′nŏtānt.

Adjēctī′vă vērbā′lĭă ĭn *-āx* ĕ′tĭăm gĕnĭtī′vŭm ēx′ĭgūnt : ŭt,

*Aŭ′dāx īngĕ′nĭī.*
*Tēm′pŭs* ĕ′dāx rē′rŭm. Ovid.

Nō′mĭnă pārtītī′vă, nŭmĕrā′lĭă, cōmpărātī′vă, ĕt sŭpērlātī′vă, ĕt quæ′dăm ādjēctī′vă pārtītī′vē[20] pŏ′sĭtă, gĕnĭtī′vŭm, ā quō ĕt gĕ′nŭs mūtŭān′tŭr, ēx′ĭgūnt : ŭt,

Ŭ′trŭm hō′rŭm *mā′vīs āc′cĭpĕ,*
Prī′mŭs rē′gŭm *Rōmānō′rŭm fŭ ĭt Rō′mŭlŭs.*
Mă′nŭŭm fōr′tĭŏr *ēst dēx′tră.*
Dĭgĭtō′rŭm mĕ′dĭŭs *ēst lōngĭs′sĭmŭs.*
*Sĕ′quĭmŭr tē,* sānc′tĕ Dĕō′rŭm !

Ūsūrpān′tŭr aŭ′tĕm ĕt cŭm hīs præpŏsĭtĭō′nĭbŭs, *ā, ăb, dē, ē, ēx, īn′tĕr, ān′tĕ :* ŭt,

Tēr′tĭŭs ăb *Ǣnē′ā.*
Sō′lŭs dē *sŭ′pĕrīs.*

---

howéver, an ádjective expréssed agreés with the fórmer of the two súbstantives, and then the látter is put in the áblative case :—as, vĭr prūdēn′tĭā ēxcēl′lēns, *a man excélling in prúdence*, that is, *a man of extraórdinary prúdence.*

[19] To these may be ádded, ádjectives expréssive of *díligence, persevérance, cértainty, pátience, engágement, cárefulness, guílt, síckness, anxíety, kíndness, liberálity, prodigálity*, and séveral óther quálities and afféctions of the like náture : with their ópposites, as, *remíssness, instabílity, doubt, impátience, disengágement, négligence, ínnocence, health, freédom from care, unkíndness, pársimony, níggardness :* and a host besídes.

[20] By *nouns pártitive*, and *ádjectives put pártitively*, are meant such nouns and ádjectives as denóte a part, or pórtion, of ány whole. When there are two súbstantives of dífferent génders, the ádjective agreés with the first ráther than the last : as, Īn′dŭs flū′mĭnŭm māx′ĭmŭs, *the In′dus, greátest of rívers :* lĕ′ō ănĭmā′lĭŭm fōrtĭs′sĭmŭs, *the lion, stróngest* or *brávest of ánimals.*

*Dĕ'ŭs* ē *vō'bīs* ăl'tĕr *ĕs.* Ovid.
Prī'mŭs īn'tĕr *ōm'nēs.*
Prī'mŭs ăn'tĕ *ōm'nēs.*

Sĕcŭn'dŭs ălĭquăn'dō dătī'vŭm ēx'ĭgĭt: ŭt,

—— *Haŭd* ŭl'lī *vĕ'tĕrŭm vĭrtŭ'tĕ* sĕcŭn'dŭs. Virg.

Īntĕrrŏgātīvŭm ĕt ĕ'jŭs rēddĭtī'vŭm, ējŭs'dĕm că'sŭs ĕt tēm'pŏrĭs ĕ'rŭnt,—nĭ'sĭ vō'cēs vă'rĭæ cōnstrŭctĭō'nĭs ădhĭbĕān'tŭr: ŭt,

Quā'rŭm rē'rŭm *nŭl'lă ēst sătĭ'ĕtās?* Dīvĭtĭā'rŭm.
Fŭrtī'nĕ *ăccŭ'sās, ăn* hŏmĭcī'dĭī? Ūtrō'quĕ.

## 2. Dătī'vŭs pōst Ādjēctī'vŭm.

*The Dátive Case áfter the Ádjective.*

Ādjēctī'vă quĭ'bŭs cōm'mŏdŭm, īncōm'mŏdŭm, sĭmĭlĭtū'dō, dīssĭmĭlĭtū'dō, vŏlŭp'tās, sūbmĭs'sĭō, aŭt rĕlā'tĭō ăd ă'lĭquĭd[21] sĭgnĭfĭcā'tŭr, dătī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt: ŭt,

*Sī fă'cĭs ŭt* pă'trĭæ *sĭt* ĭdō'nĕŭs, ŭ'tĭlĭs ăg'rīs. Juv.
*Tŭr'bă* gră'vĭs pā'cī, *plăcĭdæ'que* ĭnĭmī'că quĭē'tī. Mart.
*Pă'trī sĭ'mĭlĭs.* Cic.
*Quī cō'lŏr ăl'bŭs ĕ'răt, nŭnc ēst* cōntrā'rĭŭs ăl'bō. Ovid.
*Jŭcŭn'dŭs ămī'cīs.* Mart.
*Ōm'nĭbŭs sŭp'plēx.*
*Ēst* fīnĭ'tĭmŭs ōrātō'rī *pŏē'tă.*

Hŭc rĕfĕrŭn'tŭr nō'mĭnă ēx *cōn* præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ cōmpŏ'sĭtă: ŭt, *cōntŭbērnā'lĭs, cōmmī'lĭtō, cōnsēr'vŭs, cōgnā'tŭs.*

Quæ'dăm ēx hīs, quæ sĭmĭlĭtū'dĭnĕm sīgnĭ'fĭcānt, ĕ'tĭăm gĕnĭtī'vō jŭngŭn'tŭr: ŭt,

*Quēm mĕ'tŭīs,* pār hŭ'jŭs *ĕ'răt.* Lucan.
Dŏ'mĭnī sĭ'mĭlĭs *ĕs.* Ter.

Cōmmūnĭs, *ălĭē'nŭs, ĭmmū'nĭs,* gĕnĭtī'vō, dătī'vō, ĕt āblătī'vō cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ, jŭngŭn'tŭr: ŭt,

---

[21] Such as *friéndliness, detestátion, equálity, sámeness:* thus, æ'tās ădŏlēscēn'tŭlīs ŏdĭō'să, *a time of life háteful to stríplings;* ĭ'dĕm ōccīdēn'tī, *the same thing as killing,* that is, *the same with a pérson or thing killing,*—for the act of killing would be expréssed by the gérund. In géneral, however, *ĭ'dĕm* is fóllowed by quī *who,* else by āc, *as,* or āt'quĕ, *and:* thus, ă'nĭmŭs ēr'gā tē ĭ'dĕm āc fŭ'ĭt, *a disposítion tówards you, the same as it was* or *has been.*

Cōmmū′nĕ ănĭmān′tĭŭm *ōm′nĭŭm ēst.* Cic.
*Mōrs* ōm′nĭbŭs *ēst* cōmmū′nĭs. Ibid.
*Hŏc* mĭ′hī *tē′cŭm* cōmmū′nĕ *ēst.*
*Nōn* ălĭē′nă cōnsĭ′lĭī. Sall.
*Ălĭē′nŭs āmbĭtĭō′nī.* Sen. Præf.
*Nōn* ălĭē′nŭs ā *Scæ′vŏlæ* stŭ′dĭīs. Cic.
——— *Vō′bīs* īmmū′nĭbŭs *hū′jŭs*
*Ēs′sĕ* mă′lī *dă′bĭtŭr.* Ovid.
*Căprĭfī′cŭs* ōm′nĭbŭs īmmū′nĭs *ēst.* Plin.
Īmmū′nēs ăb *īl′līs* mă′līs *sŭ′mŭs.*

Nā′tŭs, *cōm′mŏdŭs, īncōm′mŏdŭs, ū′tĭlĭs, ĭnū′tĭlĭs, vĕ′hĕmēns, āp′tŭs,* cŭm mūl′tīs ă′lĭīs, īntēr′dŭm (ĕ′tĭăm) āccūsātī′vō cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō′nĕ jūngūn′tŭr: ŭt,

Nā′tŭs ăd *glō′rĭăm.* Cic.
Ū′tĭlĭs ăd *ĕ′ăm rēm.*

Vērbā′lĭă ĭn "*-bĭlĭs*" āccēp′tă pāssī′vē, ĕt pārtĭcĭpĭă′lĭă ĭn "*-dŭs,*" dătī′vŭm pōs′tŭlānt:[22] ŭt,

——*Nūl′lī* pĕnĕtrā′bĭlĭs ās′trō
*Lū′cŭs ĭ′nērs.* Stat.
*Ō* mĭ′hĭ *pōst nūl′lōs Jū′lī* mĕmŏrān′dĕ *sŏdā′lēs!* Mart.

### 3. Āccūsātī′vŭs pōst Ādjēctī′vŭm.

*The Accúsative Case áfter the Ádjective.*

Māgnĭtū′dĭnĭs mēnsū′ră sūbjĭ′cĭtŭr ādjēctī′vīs ĭn āccūsātī′vō, āblātī′vō, ĕt gĕnĭtī′vō: ŭt,

*Tūr′rĭs cēn′tŭm* pĕ′dēs āl′tă.
*Fōns* lă′tŭs pĕ′dĭbŭs *trĭ′bŭs,* āl′tŭs *trīgīn′tă.*
*Ārĕă* lă′tă pĕ′dŭm *dē′nŭm.*

Āccūsātī′vŭs ălĭquān′dō sūbjĭ′cĭtŭr ādjēctī′vīs ĕt pārtĭcĭ′pĭīs, ŭ′bĭ præpŏsĭ′tĭō *sĕcūn′dŭm* vĭdē′tŭr sŭbīntēl′lĭgī: ŭt,

Ōs hŭmĕrōs′*quĕ Dĕ′ō sĭ′mĭlĭs.* Virg.
Vūl′tŭm *dēmĭs′sŭs.*

---

[22] To these may be ádded most (if indeéd not all) ádjectives deríved from such verbs as góvern a dátive case :—thus, fī′dŭs ămī′cīs, *fáithful to friends;* bĕnĕ′vŏlŭs dŏ′mĭnō sēr′vŭs, *a slave well-dispósed to his máster;* crē′dŭlŭs īl′līs, *crédent to them.* For the constrúction of Past and of Présent Párticiples, which, when úsed as ádjectives, are fóllowed by a dátive, see page 162.

4. Āblātī′vŭs pōst Ādjēctī′vŭm.

*The Áblative Case áfter the Adjective.*

Ādjēctī′vă, quæ ăd cō′pĭăm, ĕgēstātēm′vĕ pēr′tĭnēnt, īntēr′dŭm āblātī′vŭm, īntēr′dŭm gĕnĭtī′vŭm[23] ēx′ĭgūnt: ŭt,

Dī′vĕs ĕ′quŭm, dī′vēs *pīctā′ī* vēs′tĭs *ĕt* aū′rī. Virg.
*Ā′mōr** *ēt* mēl′le *ēt* fēl′le *ēst* fœcūndĭs′sĭmŭs. Plau.
*Ēx′pērs fraū′dĭs.*
*Grā′tĭā bĕā′tŭs.*

Ādjēctī′vă ĕt sūbstāntī′vă rĕ′gūnt āblātī′vŭm sīgnĭfĭcān′tĕm caū′săm ĕt fōr′măm, vĕl mŏ′dŭm rĕ′ī: ŭt,

*Pāl′lĭdŭs ī′rā.*
*Nō′mĭnĕ grāmmă′tĭcŭs, rē bār′bărŭs.*
Trōjā′nŭs ŏrī′gĭnĕ *Cæ′săr.* Virg.

Dīg′nŭs,[24] *īndīg′nŭs, præ′dĭtŭs, cāp′tŭs, cōntēn′tŭs, ēxtōr′rĭs, frē′tŭs, lī′bĕr,* cŭm ādjēctī′vĭs prĕ′tĭŭm sīgnĭfĭcān′tĭbŭs, āblātī′vŭm ēx′ĭgūnt: ŭt,

Dīg′nŭs *ĕs* ŏ′dĭō. Ter.
*Quī gnā′tum hăbē′rēm tā′li* īngĕ′nĭō præ′dĭtŭm. Ibid.
———ŏ′cŭlīs cāp′tī *fōdē′rĕ cŭbī′lĭă tāl′pæ.* Virg.
Sōr′tĕ *tŭ′ā* cōntēn′tŭs *ăb′ī.*
Tērrō′rĕ lī′bĕr *ă′nĭmŭs.* Liv.
*Nōn* gēm′mīs vēnā′lĕ, *nĕc* aū′rō. Hor.

Hō′rŭm nōnnūl′lă īntēr′dŭm gĕnĭtī′vŭm ādmīt′tūnt: ŭt,

*Māgnō′rum* īndīg′nŭs ăvō′rŭm. Virg.

---

[23] The ádjectives īn′dĭgŭs, *neédy,* ī′nōps, *not possésing,* ĕgē′nŭs, *stánding in want of,* ēx′pērs, *free from,* cōm′pŏs, *máster of,* and īm′pŏs, *not máster of,* are génerally fóllowed by a génitive case: but, dīstēn′tŭs, *distént,* grā′vĭdŭs, *grávid* or *heávy,* rĕfēr′tŭs, *crámmed* or *stúffed agaín,* ŏr′bŭs, *depríved of* or *left déstitute,* vă′cŭŭs, *émpty* or *vácant,* and vī′dŭŭs, *void,* prefér an áblative. Most óther ádjectives reláting to plénty or to want take a génitive or an áblative indífferently: as, plē′nŭs vī′nī *vèl* vī′nō, *full of wine* or *with wine;* ĭnā′nĭs prūdēn′tĭæ *vèl* prūdēn′tĭā, *void of prúdence* or *discrétion;* cās′sŭs lūmĭnĕ *vèl* lū′mĭnĭs, *devoíd of light.*

[24] *Dīg′nŭs* is sómetimes fóllowed by an infínitive mood; which, as was remárked in note 4 (on Sýntax) abóve, is a sort of noun of the neúter génder; undeclíned indeéd, but which may, neverthelés, be usúrped in ány case, the vócative (perháps) excépted. Thus, in Vírgil, we find dīg′nŭs ămā′rī, *wórthy to be lóved,* insteád of dīg′nŭs ămō′rĕ, *wórthy of love:*—but eíther of these expréssions is less élegant than dīg′nŭs quī (*vèl* ŭt) ămē′tŭr *vèl* ămārē′tŭr, *wórthy who should or might be lóved,* or *that he should or might be lóved.*

*Cār'mină* dīg'nă dĕ'æ.
*Extōr'rĭs* rē'gnī. Stat.

Cōmpărātī'vă, cŭm ēxpōnān'tŭr pĕr *quăm*,[25] āblātī'vŭm ădmīt'tūnt: ŭt,

Vī'lĭŭs *ārgēn'tum ēst* aū'rō, vīrtū'tĭbŭs *aū'rŭm*. Hor.
[Ĭd ēst, *quăm*[26] aū'rŭm, *quăm* vīrtū'tēs.]

TĀN'TŌ, *quān'tō, hōc, ĕ'ō*, ĕt *quō*, cŭm quĭbūs'dăm ă'lĭīs quæ mēnsū'răm ēxcēs'sūs sīgnĭ'fĭcānt, ĭ'tĕm *ætā'tĕ*, ĕt *nā'tū*, cōmpărātī'vĭs ĕt sŭpērlātī'vĭs sæ'pĕ jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

Tān'tō pēs'sĭmŭs *ōm'nĭŭm pŏē'tă*,
Quān'tō tu ōp'tĭmŭs *ōm'nĭŭm pătrō'nŭs*. Catull.
Quō plūs *hă'bēnt*, ĕ'ō plūs *cŭ'pĭūnt*.
Mā'jŏr *ĕt* māx'ĭmŭs *ætā'tĕ*.
Mā'jŏr *ĕt* māx'ĭmŭs *nā'tū*.

---

## PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### *The Constrúction of Prónouns.*

MĔ'Ī, *tŭ'ī, sŭ'ī, nōs'trī, vēs'trī*, gĕnĭtī'vī prīmĭtīvō'rŭm, pōnūn'tŭr cŭm pērsō'nă sīgnĭfĭcā'tŭr: ŭt,

---

[25] And the ádjective ă'lĭŭs, *óther*, or, *any óther*, is in like mánner fóllowed by an áblative, as óften as the conjúnction quăm, *than*, is by the fígure ellípsis omítted áfter it: as, pŭtās'nĕ ă'lĭŭm săpĭēn'tĕ bĕā'tŭm? *thínkest thou ány óther than a wise man háppy?* Here we read ă'lĭŭm săpĭēn'tĕ for ă'lĭŭm quăm săpĭēn'tĕm. Al'so an ellípsis of quăm, *than*, áfter the ádverb mă'gĭs, *more*, in júnction with an ádjective or párticiple, may be símilarly fóllowed: as, ō lū'cĕ mă'gīs dīlēc'tă sŏrō'rī, *O thou dearer to thy sister* (líterally, *more belóved*) *than the light!*

[26] Quăm, *than*, is óften úsed (and with pecúliar beaúty) betweén two compáratives:—as, trĭūm'phŭs clā'rĭŏr quăm grā'tĭŏr, *a tríumph more spléndid than ácceptable.* And this conjúnction is fréquently understoód áfter some ádverbs of the compárative degreé, fóllowed by álmost ány case, the vócative and (perháps) dátive excépted. See Conjúnctions. Sómetimes, too, such áblatives as sŏ'lĭtō, *than úsual*, æ'quō, *than right*, nĕcēssā'rĭō, *than nécessary*, are élegantly understoód áfter compáratives of the neúter génder: as, sī fŏr'tĕ, quĭd ăp'tĭŭs ēx'ĭt, *if, perchánce, aught more fit* or *more to the púrpose* (sŏ'lĭtō, *than úsual*) *has gone forth:* lībĕ'rĭŭs vīvē'băt, *he líved more freély* (æ'quō, *than right*), that is, *he líved ráther gaily and profúsely.* And here it should be obsérved, that in no ínstance is it nécessary to omít *quăm*, though such omíssion be, on mány occásions, préferable. It may líkewise be obsérved that when *quăm* is expréssed, the noun after it must be in the same case with the noun befóre it.

*Lān'guĕt dēsīdĕ'rĭō* tŭ'ī.
*Pĭg'nŏră cū'ră* sŭ'ī. Virg.
*Cæ'cŭs ă'mōr* sŭ'ī. Hor.
*Ĭmā'gŏ* nōs'trī.[27]

Mĕ'ŭs, *tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs, nōs'tĕr, vēs'tĕr,* pōnūn'tŭr cŭm āc'tĭō vĕl pōssēs'sĭō rĕ'ī sīgnĭfĭcā'tŭr: ŭt,

*Fă'vĕt dēsīdĕ'rĭō* tŭ'ō.
*Ĭmā'gŏ* nōs'tră:—
[īd ēst, *quăm nōs pōssĭdē'mŭs.*]

Hæc pōssēssī'vă, *mĕ'ŭs, tŭ'ŭs, sŭ'ŭs, nōs'tĕr,* ĕt *vēs'tĕr,* hōs gĕnĭtī'vōs pōst sē rĕcĭ'pĭūnt,—"*īpsī'ŭs, sōlī'ŭs, ūnī'ŭs, dŭō'rŭm, trī'ŭm,* &c. *ōm'nĭŭm plū'rĭŭm, paūcō'rŭm, cūjŭs'quĕ:*"—ĕt gĕnĭtī'vōs pārtĭcĭpĭō'rŭm, quī ăd prīmĭtī'vŭm sŭbaūdī'tŭm rĕfĕrūn'tŭr: ŭt,

*Dīx'ī* mĕ'ā ūnī'ŭs ŏ'pĕrā *rēmpŭb'lĭcăm ēs'sĕ sāl'văm.* Cic.
Mĕ'ŭm sōlī'ŭs pēccā'tŭm *cōr'rĭgī nōn pŏ'tēst.* Ibid.
—————— *Cūm* mĕ'ă *nĕ'mŏ*
Scrīp'tă *lĕ'gāt vūlgō rĕcĭtā'rĕ* tĭmēn'tĭs.——Hor.
*Dē* tŭ'ō īpsī'ŭs stŭ'dĭō *cōnjēctū'răm cē'pĕrĭs.* Cic.
*Ĭn* sŭ'ā cūjūs'quĕ laū'dĕ *prǣstān'tĭŏr.*
Nōs'trā ōm'nĭŭm *mĕmŏ'rĭā.*
Vēs'trīs paūcō'rŭm *rēspōn'dĕt laū'dĭbŭs.* Cic.

Sŭ'ī ĕt *sŭ'ŭs* rĕcĭ'prŏcă[28] sūnt:—hŏc ēst, sēm'pĕr rĕflēctūn'tŭr ăd īd, quŏd præcĭ'pŭŭm ĭn sēntēn'tĭā præcēs'sĭt: ŭt,

[27] The pérsonal and posséssive prónouns are sómetimes (but less corréctly) úsed for one anóther: as, ādspēc'tū sŭ'ō, *at his* or *her sight,* for ādspēc'tū sŭ'ī, *at the sight of himsélf* or *of hersélf,* that is, *at the sight of the pérson speáking* or *dóing.* And Plaútus has lă'bŏr mĕ'ī, *the lábour of me,* for lă'bŏr mĕ'ŭs, *my lábour.* Fréquently, too, the póets, and occásionally the prose wríters, emplóy the pérsonal prónouns in the dátive case, when, stríctly speáking, posséssion is meant:—as, mĭ'hĭ mă'nŭs, *the hand to me,* for mē'ă mă'nŭs, *my hand.* Símilarly, álso, are óther prónouns, and nouns, usūrped:—as, ĕ'ī cōr'pŭs, *the bódy to him,* for ē'jŭs cōr'pŭs, *the bódy of him,* that is, *his bódy;* pĕ'lăgō prōspēc'tŭs, *a próspect to the sea,* for pĕ'lăgī prōspēc'tŭs, a *próspect* or *view of the sea.*

[28] Whenéver the En'glish word '*self*' can be ádded to *him, her,* or *it,* (or '*selves*' to *them,*) the Látin word "*sŭ'ī,*" and none óther, is próper, and nécessary. Thus, *Cáto owns he érred,* Că'tō sē pēccās'sĕ fătē'tŭr: and, in the same mánner, whenéver the En'glish word "*own*" can be added to *his, her, its,* or *their,* the posséssive "*sŭ'ŭs,*" and none óther is corréct. Thus, *Cáto killed hímself with his (own) sword,* sŭ'ō sē glă'dĭō cōnfē'cĭt Că'tō.

Pĕ′trŭs *nĭ′mĭŭm ădmīrā′tŭr* sē: *pār′cĭt ērrō′rĭbŭs* sŭ′īs.
*Māgnŏ′pĕrĕ* Pĕ′trŭs *rŏ′găt, nē* sē *dē′sĕrās.*

Hæc dēmōnstrātī′vă, *hĭc, ĭs′tĕ, ĭl′lĕ,* sīc dīstīnguūn′tŭr: *hĭc* mĭ′hĭ prōx′ĭmŭm dēmōn′străt; *ĭs′tĕ,* ĕ′ŭm quī ă′pŭd tē ēst; *ĭl′lĕ,* ĕ′ŭm quī ăb ŭtrō′quĕ rĕmō′tŭs ēst.

Hĭc ĕt *ĭl′lĕ,* cŭm ăd dŭ′ŏ āntĕpŏ′sĭtă rĕfĕrūn′tŭr, *hĭc* plērūm′quĕ ăd pōstĕ′rĭŭs, *ĭl′lĕ* ăd prĭ′ŭs rĕfĕr′tŭr:[29] ŭt,

*Quōcūn′que ăspĭ′cĭās, nĭ′hĭl ēst nĭ′sĭ pōn′tŭs ĕt ă′ēr ·*
*Nŭ′bĭbŭs* hīc *tŭ′mĭdūs, flūc′tĭbŭs* ĭl′lĕ *mĭ′nāx.* Ovid.

## VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Constrúction of Verbs.*

### I. Nōmĭnātī′vŭs pōst Vĕr′bŭm.

*The Nóminative Case áfter the Verb.*

Vĕr′bă sūbstāntī′vă; ŭt *sŭm, fŏ′rēm, fī′ŏ, ēxīs′tŏ,* vēr′bă vŏcān′dī pāssī′vă; ŭt *nŏ′mĭnŏr, āppēl′lŏr, dī′cŏr, vŏ′cŏr, nūn′cŭpŏr;* ĕt ĭ′īs sĭmĭ′lĭă, ŭt *vĭ′dĕŏr, hă′bĕŏr, ēxīs′tĭmŏr,* ŭtrīn′quĕ ĕōs′dĕm cā′sūs hă′bēnt:[30] ŭt,

Dĕ′ŭs *ēst sūm′mŭm* bŏ′nŭm.
Pērpŭsīl′lī *vŏcānt′ŭr* nā′nī.
Fĭ′dēs *rĕlĭgĭō′nĭs nōs′træ* fūndāmēn′tŭm *hăbē′tŭr.*
———————— *Nātū′ră* bĕā′tīs[31]
Ōm′nĭbŭs *ēs′sĕ dĕ′dĭt.* Claud.

[29] But sómetimes, éven in the best aúthors, we find *hĭc* reférring to the fórmer, and *ĭl′lĕ* to the látter of two pérsons or things befóre méntioned. For ínstance, in O′vid:—sīc dĕ′ŭs ēt vĭr′go ēst; hĭc spē cĕ′lĕr, ĭl′lă tĭmō′rĕ, *thus the god is, and maíden, he swift with hope, she with fear.*

[30] And all verbs of gésture, that is, verbs betókening bódily áspect or posítion:—as, ĕ′ŏ, *I go:* īncē′dŏ, *I walk;* sĕ′dĕŏ, *I sit;* cŭ′bŏ, *I lie;* dŏr′mĭŏ, *I sleep;* and mány of the like sort: thus, īncē′dŏ claū′dŭs, *I walk lame;* ŏpŏr′tĕt mĭ′lĭtĕm ēxcŭbā′rĕ stān′tĕm, *it behóves a sóldier to watch stánding.* These verbs, howéver, are inclúded amóng those to which the next Part of the Rule applíes; ónly insteád of an ádjective they have sómetimes a súbstantive in apposítion with them:—as, īncē′dĭt rēx, *he walks a king,* that is, *his mánner of wálking is majéstic* or *that of a king.*

[31] This dátive "*bĕā′tīs*" might (though not so élegantly) be the accúsative case "*bĕā′tōs,*" the prónoun "*ĭl′lōs*" béing understoód befóre "*ēs′sĕ.*" Thus, in Térence, we find,—vō′bīs ēx′pĕdĭt ēs′sĕ bŏ′nās, *it is expédient for you to be good wómen.* And several óther pássages of the same kind might be quóted.

Ĭ'tĕm ōm'nĭă fĕ'rĕ vēr'bă pōst sē ādjēctī'vŭm ādmĭt'tūnt, quŏd cŭm nōmĭnātī'vō vēr'bī că'sū, gĕ'nĕrĕ, ĕt nŭ'mĕrō[32] cōncōr'dăt: ŭt,

Pĭ'ī *ō'rānt* tă'cĭtī.
*Mă'lŭs* pās'tŏr *dōr'mĭt* sŭpī'nŭs.

## II. Gĕnĭtī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

*The Génitive Case áfter the Verb.*

Sŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭm[33] pōs'tŭlăt, quŏ'tiēs sīgnĭ'fĭcăt *pōssēssĭō'nĕm, ŏffĭ'cĭŭm, sīg'nŭm,* aūt ĭd quŏd ăd rēm quām'pĭăm pēr'tĭnĕt: ŭt,

*Pĕ'cŭs* ēst Mĕlĭbœ'ī.
Ădŏlēscēn'tĭs ēst *mājō'rēs nā'tū rĕvĕrē'rī.* Cic.

Ēxcĭpĭūn'tŭr hī nōmĭnātī'vī, *mĕ'ŭm, tŭ'ŭm, sŭ'ŭm, nōs'trŭm, vēs'trŭm,*[34] *hūmā'nŭm, bēllŭī'nŭm,* ĕt sĭmĭ'lĭă: ŭt,

---

[32] An ádverb in En'glish is óften expréssed (with élegance) by an ádjective in Latin, which ádjective agreés with the nóminative case to the verb,—as in the two Exámples gíven with this Part of the Rule, in the E'ton text. To these a múltitude of óther Exámples might be ádded:—but we shall contént oursélves with the few fóllowing: tă'cĕō mŭl'tŭs, *I hold my peace much:* lŏ'quŏr frĕ'quēns, *I speak often;* scrī'bō ĕpĭs'tŏlās rārĭs'sĭmŭs, *I write létters véry séldom;* in which the use of an ádjective (for an ádverb) is altogéther at váriance with our ídiom. But we réconcile oursélves (eásily enoúgh) to an ádjective in the nóminative case áfter ány tránsitive verb, (when such ádjective agreés with the nóminative case to the verb,) as óften as the En'glish párticiple "*béing*" can make pérfect sense, when pláced betweén the nóminative case to the verb, and the ádjective which fóllows: thus, nē āssŭēs'cās bĭ'bĕrĕ vī'nŭm jējū'nŭs, *do not accústom (yoursélf) to drink wine fásting,* that is, *you* béing *húngry.* In mány ínstances of this sort an ádverb in Látin, and an ádjective in En'glish, would be prepósterous,—becaúse cóntrary to the úsage of the two lánguages, respéctively.

[33] Whenéver *sŭm* is fóllowed by a génitive, that génitive is álways góverned by some súbstantive understoód: thus, hæc vēs'tĭs ēst pă'trĭs, *this gárment is fáther's,* that is, hæc vēs'tĭs ēst vēs'tĭs mĕ'ī pă'trĭs, *this gárment is the gárment of my fáther:*—hence the séveral Exámples gíven únder this Rule belóng more próperly to the Rule "*Quùm dúo substantíva divérsæ significatiónis concúrrunt, &c.*" and partícularly to that part of it "*Pónitur intérdùm genitívus tántùm, &c.*"

[34] Not ónly in the neúter génder, but álso in the másculine and féminine génders, are these posséssive prónouns úsed:—thus, hīc cō'dēx ēst mĕ'ŭs, *this book is mine;* īl'lă dŏ'mŭs ĕ'răt tŭ'ă, *that house was thine;*—yet the dátive of the prímitive is, in most ínstances, more élegant: as, hīc cō'dēx ēst mĭ'hī, *this book is to me:* īl'lă dŏ'mŭs ĕ'răt tĭ'bī, *that house was to thee* or *was thine.*

*Nōn* ēst mĕ'ŭm *cōn'trā aūctōrĭtā'tĕm sĕnā'tūs dī'cĕrĕ.* Cic.
Hūmā'nŭm ēst *īrās'cī.*

Vĕr'bă āccūsān'dī, dāmnān'dī, mŏnēn'dī, ābsōlvēn'dī, ĕt sĭmĭ'lĭă, gĕnĭtī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt, quī crī'mĕn sīgnĭ'fĭcăt: ŭt,

——*Quī āl'tĕrum* īncū'sāt prŏ'brī
*Ĕ'um īp'sŭm se īntŭē'ri ŏpōr'tĕt.*——Plaut.
Scĕ'lĕrĭs cōndĕm'năt *gĕ'nĕrŭm sŭ'ŭm.* Cic.
Ādmŏnē'tŏ *īl'lŭm prīs'tĭnæ* fōrtū'næ.[35]
Fūr'tī ābsōlū'tŭs *ēst.*

Vēr'tĭtŭr hĭc gĕnĭtī'vŭs ălĭquān'dŏ ĭn āblātī'vŭm vĕl cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ vĕl sĭ'nĕ præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ;[36] ŭt,

*Pŭtā'vī ĕ'ā* dē rē *tĕ ēs'sĕ* ādmŏnēn'dŭm. Cic.
*Sī ĭn mē ĭnī'quŭs ĕs jū'dēx,* cōndēmnā'bŏ *ĕō'dĕm ĕ'gŏ tē* crī'mĭnĕ. Ibid.

Ŭtĕr'quĕ, *nūl'lŭs, āl'tĕr, neū'tĕr, ă'lĭŭs, ām'bŏ,*—ĕt sŭpērlātī'vŭs gră'dŭs,—nōn, nĭ'sĭ ĭn āblātī'vō, ĭd gĕ'nŭs vēr'bīs jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

*Āccū'sās fūr'tī, ăn stŭ'prī?* Ŭtrō'quĕ, *vĕl* dē ŭtrō'quĕ: āmbō'bŭs, *vĕl* dē āmbō'bŭs: neū'trō, *vĕl* dē neū'trō.
Dē plū'rĭmīs *sĭ'mŭl* āccūsā'rĭs.

Să'tăgŏ, *mĭsĕ'rĕŏr,* ĕt *mĭsĕrēs'cŏ,* gĕnĭtī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt: ŭt,

*Is* * * *sŭā'rūm* rē'rūm să'tăgĭt. Ter.
—— *Ō'rō* mĭsĕrē'rĕ lăbō'rŭm
*Tāntō'rŭm,* mĭsĕrē're ă'nĭmæ *nōn dīg'nă fĕrēn'tĭs.* Virg.
*Ēt* gĕ'nĕrĭs mĭsĕrēs'cĕ *tŭ'ī.* Stat.

Rĕmĭnĭs'cŏr, *ōblīvīs'cŏr, mĕ'mĭnī, rĕcōr'dŏr,* gĕnĭtī'vŭm, aūt āccūsātī'vŭm, ādmĭt'tūnt: ŭt,

*Dă'tæ* fĭ'dĕī rĕmĭnīs'cĭtŭr.
*Prŏ'prĭŭm ēst stūltĭ'tĭæ ălĭō'rŭm vĭ'tĭă cēr'nĕrĕ,* ōblīvīs'cī sŭō'rŭm. Cic.
*Fă'cĭam ŭt hū'jūs* lŏ'cī * * * *sēmpēr* mĕmĭ'nĕrĭs. Ter.
Hæc *ō'līm* mĕmĭnīs'sĕ *jŭvā'bĭt.* Virg.

---

[35] Verbs of *Wárning* or *Admónishing* are sómetimes fóllowed by two accúsative cáses. See the Rule "*Vérba rogándi, docéndi, &c.*" únder the head of Accusatī'vus post Vĕr'bum.

[36] Verbs of *Wárning* or *Admónishing*, when fóllowed by an áblative case, have álways some preposítion (génerally dē, *of* or *concérning*,) expréssed with the noun which spécifies the súbject of admonítion.

*Hŭ'jŭs* mĕ'rĭtī *ĭn mē* rĕcōr'dŏr. Cic.
*Sī rĭ'tĕ* aūdī'tă rĕcōr'dŏr.

Pŏ'tĭŏr,[37] aūt gĕnĭtī'vō, aūt āblātī'vō, jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,

*Rōmā'nī* sīgnō'rŭm *ĕt* ārmō'rŭm pŏtī'tī *sūnt*. Sallust.
*Ēgrēs'si ōptā'tā* pŏtĭūn'tūr *Trō'ĕs* ărē'nā. Virg.

III. Dătī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

*The Dátive Case áfter the Verb.*

Ōm'nĭă vēr'bă rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm ē'jŭs rĕ'ī, cuī ă'lĭquĭd ācquī'rĭtŭr, aūt ădĭ'mĭtŭr:[38] ŭt,

Mĭ'hi *ĭs'tĭc nĕc* sĕ'rĭtūr, *nĕc* mĕ'tĭtŭr. Plaut.
*Quīs tē* mĭ'hĭ *cā'sŭs* ădē'mĭt? Ovid.

Huīc Rē'gŭlæ āppēn'dēnt vă'rĭī gĕ'nĕrĭs Vēr'bă.

I. Īmprī'mīs, vēr'bă sīgnĭfĭcān'tĭă cōm'mŏdŭm, aūt īncōm'mŏdŭm,[39] rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm: ŭt,

---

37 Accórding to the more áncient mode of wríting, *pŏ'tĭŏr*, and in like mánner *fūn'gŏr*, and *ū'tŏr*, had an accúsative case :—but in láter aúthors all these verbs góvern an áblative; ónly *pŏ'tĭŏr* admíts líkewise of the génitive.

38 The dátive case of the *Pérson*, or *Thing*, to which a verb points; or for which ány áction is eíther done, or inténded; or by which some acquisítion is made, or loss sustaíned,—is emplóyed áfter ány verb so poínting, or denóting the *áction*, *acquisítion*, or *loss*,—whéther such verb be tránsitive or íntransitive, áctive or pássive. When the verb is tránsitive, the noun, which is the immédiate óbject of the verb, must be in the accúsative; while the noun, to which the súbject of the verb reférs, must be in the dátive :—thus, tā'lĭă mū'tæ jă'cĕ vēr'bă fāvīl'læ, *throw such words as these to the dumb émbers;* cū'rā mĭ'hī hūnc lĭ'brŭm, *take care of this book for me*; dŏcēbō tĭ'bī gnā'tŭm, *I will teach thy son for thee.* Hence may álmost ány verb whatéver admít a dátive case áfter it. Sómetimes there is in a séntence, an ellípsis of the *óbject* áfter a tránsitive verb,—that is an ellípsis of the accúsative case; whilst the noun, to which the verb points, is expréssed in the dátive case :—for exámple, tĭ'mĕō tĭ'bī, *I fear for thee;* understánd pĕrī'cŭlŭm, *dánger*, else ă'lĭquĭd mă'lī, *sómething of ill:* whereás "tĭ'mĕō tē" would sígnify "*I fear thee,*" or, in óther words, "*I am afraíd of thee.*" And here it may be nóticed that the póets, by a Greek ídiom, óften use a dátive case áfter verbs both of the áctive and pássive voice, insteád of an áblative with a prepositíon :—as, tĭ'bī cēr'tĕt, *he can vie with thee*, for tē'cŭm cēr'tĕt; agaín, tūr'bæ mīx'tŭs ĭnēr'tī, *mingled with the lístless crowd*, for cŭm tūr'bā mīx'tŭs ĭnēr'tē; or, hæc mĭ'hī ōblī'tă sūnt, *these things are forgótten to me*, for ā mē ōblī'tă, *forgótten by me.*

39 To this head may be reférred Verbs of *Prófit* or *Advántage*, of *Heáling*; of *Gratificátion*, of *Fávour, Consént, Súccour, Complaisánce;* of *Fáwning* or *Fláttery;* and of *Allúrement:* with their séveral óppo-

*Nōn pŏtēs* mĭ'hĭ cōmmŏdā'rĕ, *nĕc* īncōmmŏdā'rĕ.

Ĕx hīs, *jŭ'vŏ, læ'dŏ, dēlēc'tŏ,* ĕt ă'lĭă quæ'dăm,[40] āccūsātī'vŭm ēx'ĭgūnt: ŭt,

Fēs'sŭm *quĭ'ēs plū'rĭmŭm* jŭ'văt.

II. Vēr'bă cōmpărān'dī rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm: ŭt,

—— *Sīc* pār'vīs cōmpō'nĕrĕ *māg'nă sŏlē'bām.* Virg.

Īntēr'dŭm vē'rō āblātī'vŭm cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ *cŭm*; īntēr'dŭm āccūsātī'vŭm cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō'nĭbŭs *ăd* ĕt *īn'tĕr*:—ŭt,

*Cōm'pără Vīrgĭ'lĭŭm* cŭm Hŏmē'rō.
*Sī* ăd ĕ'ŭm *cōmpără'tŭr, nĭ'hĭl ēst.*
*Hæc nōn sūnt* īn'tĕr sē *cōnfĕrēn'dă.*

III. Vēr'bă dān'dī ĕt rēddēn'dī[41] rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm: ŭt,

*Fōrtū'nă* mūl'tīs dāt *nĭ'mīs, să'tīs* nūl'lī. Mart.
*Īngrā'tŭs ēst, quī grā'tĭăm bĕ'nĕ* mĕrēn'tī *nōn* rĕpō'nĭt.

IV. Vēr'bă prōmīttēn'dī āc sōlvēn'dī rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm; ŭt,

*Quæ* tĭbĭ prōmĭt'tŏ, *āc rĕcĭ'pĭŏ sānctĭs'sĭmē ēs'sĕ ōbsērvātū'rŭm.* Cic.
*Æs ălĭē'nŭm* mĭ'hĭ nŭmĕrā'vĭt. Ibid.

V. Vēr'bă īmpĕrān'dī, ĕt nūntĭān'dī, rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm: ŭt,

Im'pĕrăt *aŭt sēr'vĭt cōllēc'tă pĕcū'nĭă* cuī'quĕ. Hor.
*Quĭd dē quō'quĕ vĭ'ro ēt* cuī dī'cās, *sæ'pĕ vĭdē'tŏ.* Ibid.

Ēx'cĭpĕ *rĕ'gŏ, gŭbēr'nŏ,*[42] quæ āccūsātī'vŭm hă'bēnt,—

---

sites; as those of *Loss* or *Disadvántage;* of *Hurt:* of *Displeásure;* of *Discoúntenance* and *Impartiálity;* of *Deníal, Opposítion, Incivílity;* of *Detráction, Cóntumely* or *Reproách;* of *Intimidátion* and *Repúlsion:* —álso verbs of *Endúrance* and *Forbeárance;* of *Congratulátion;* of *Caútion* and *of Apprehénsion;* of *Offénding* and *Defénding;* of *Grudge, En'vy, Málice, Ráncour,* and mány more; whereóf some are tránsitive and óthers neúter.

[40] Such as ōffēn'dŏ, *I offénd;* which is álso an excéption to the Rule "*Dătī'vŭm fēr'mē rĕ'gūnt vēr'bă cōmpŏ'sĭtă,*" *&c.* page 150, belów.

[41] To this class may be reférred Verbs of *Assígning, Allótting, Bequeáthing, Bestówing, Impárting, Receíving, Sénding, Brínging, Introdúcing, Presénting, Joíning, Míngling, Concéding, Refúsing, Remítting, Forgíving, Delívering up,* and *Táking awáy,* with séveral óthers of like ímport.

[42] With these two may be conjoíned jŭ'bĕō, *I órder* or *I bid,* and dŏ'mō, *I tame* or *I máster:* both which are verbs of kíndred meáning, though not stríctly verbs of *Commánding* or *of Rúling:* and, in like mánner, vīn'cō, *I cónquer,* which is still more dífferent in sense.

*tĕm'pĕrō*, ĕt *mŏ'dĕrŏr*, quæ nūnc dătī'vŭm, nūnc āccūsātī'vŭm hă'bēnt: ŭt,

*Lū'nă* rĕ'gĭt mēn'sēs: ōr'bēm *Dĕ'ŭs īp'sĕ* gŭbēr'năt.
Tēm'pĕrăt *īp'sĕ* sĭ'bī.—*Sōl* tēm'pĕrăt ōm'nĭă *lū'cĕ*.
*Hīc* mŏdĕrā'tŭr ĕ'quōs,—*quī nōn* mŏdĕrā'bĭtŭr ī'ræ.

VI. Vēr'bă fīdēn'dī[43] dătī'vŭm rĕ'gūnt: ŭt,

——— *Vă'cŭīs* cōmmīt'tĕrĕ vĕ'nīs
*Nīl nĭ'sĭ lĕ'nĕ dĕ'cĕt*. Hor.

VII. Vēr'bă ōbsĕquēn'dī, ĕt rĕpūgnān'dī, dătī'vŭm rĕ'gūnt: ŭt,

*Sēm'pĕr* ōbtēm'pĕrăt, *pĭ'ŭs fī'lĭŭs* pă'trī.
*Ignā'vīs* prĕ'cĭbŭs *fōrtū'nă* rĕpūg'năt.

VIII. Vēr'bă mĭnān'dī, ĕt īrāscēn'dī,[44] rĕ'gūnt dătī'vŭm: ŭt,

Ŭtrī'quĕ *mōr'tĕm ēst* mĭnĭtā'tŭs. Cic.
Ădŏlēscēn'tī *nĭ'hĭl ēst quŏd* sūccēn'sĕām. Ter.

IX. Sŭm, cŭm cōmpŏ'sĭtīs, præ'tĕr *pōs'sŭm*, rĕ'gĭt dătī'vŭm: ŭt,

*Rēx pĭ'ŭs* ēst rĕīpūb'lĭcæ *ōrnāmēn'tŭm.*
Mĭ'hĭ *nĕc* ŏb'ēst, *nĕc* prō'dēst.

Dătī'vŭm fēr'mĕ rĕ'gūnt vēr'bă cōmpŏ'sĭtă cŭm hīs ādvēr'bĭīs, *bĕ'nĕ, să'tĭs, mă'lĕ*,—ĕt cŭm hīs præpŏsĭtĭō'nĭbŭs, *præ, ăd, cōn, sŭb, ān'tĕ, pōst, ŏb, ĭn, ĭn'tĕr*:[45] ŭt,

*Dĭ'ī* tĭ'bĭ bĕnĕfă'cĭānt. Ter.
*Ĕgŏ mĕ'īs* mājō'rĭbŭs *vīrtū'tĕ* prælūx'ī. Cic.
*Intēmpēstī'vē qui* ōccŭpā'to ādlū'sĕrĭt. Phædr.
Cōndū'cĭt *hōc tŭ'æ* laū'dī.
Cōnvīx'ĭt nō'bīs.
Sŭb'ŏlĕt *jăm* ūxō'rī *quŏd ĕ'gŏ mă'chĭnŏr.*

---

[43] With Verbs of *Confíding* or *Trústing* may be coúpled those of *Believing* and *Discréditing*, and líkewise Verbs of *Persuáding* and *Undeceíving*: but all these come próperly únder the head of *Verbs of Gíving.*

[44] The Látin and En'glish ídioms (it may be perceíved) are at considerable váriance in verbs of this descríption:—for we say, "*to threáten a pérson with death,*" whereás the Rómans said, "*to threáten death to a pérson.*"

[45] To which may be ádded *sŭ'pĕr*: but mány verbs compoúnded with this last are not put *acquísitively*: thus tēr'răm sŭpērgĕ'rĕrĕ, *to heap up the earth*, withoút spécifying, "*to whom* or *for what.*"

*Ĭnĭquĭs'sĭmăm pā'cĕm jūstĭs'sĭmō* bĕl'lō āntĕ'fĕrō̆. Cic.
Pōstpō'nō fā'mæ̆ *pĕcū'nĭăm.*
—*Ē'ă quŏ'nĭām* nē'mĭni ōbtrū'dī *pŏ'tĕsī,*
*Ī'tŭr ăd mē.* Ter.
Ĭmpēn'dĕt ŏm'nĭbŭs *pĕrī'cŭlĭm.*
*Nōn sō'lŭm* ĭntĕr'fŭĭt *hīs* rē'bŭs, *sĕd ĕ'tĭăm* præ'fŭĭt. Cic.

Nōn paū'că ēx hīs mū'tānt dătī'vŭm ălĭquŏ'tiēs ĭn ă'lĭŭm cā'sŭm:[46] ŭt,

Præ'stăt *ĭngĕ'nĭō ă'lĭŭs* ă'lĭŭm. Quinct.

Ēst, prō *hă'bĕō,* rĕ'gĭt dătī'vŭm:[47] ŭt,

Ēst mĭ'hĭ *nām'quĕ dŏ'mī pă'tĕr,* ēst *ĭnjūs'tă nŏvĕr'că.*

Huīc sĭ'mĭlĕ ēst *sŭp'pĕtĭt:* ŭt,

*Paŭ'pĕr ĕ'nĭm nōn ēst,* cuī *rē'rūm* sŭp'pĕtĭt *ū'sŭs.* Hor.

---

[46] These are chiéfly verbs compoúnded with the prepositíon præ, *befóre*, or ăn'tĕ, *befóre:* mány of which cómpounds take an accúsative in préference to a dátive, espécially where a dátive case may be understoód áfter the immédiate óbject expréssed with the verb; or where the régimen of the símple verb is the accúsative case: óthers, agaín, take an accúsative or a dátive indífferently; and óthers, a dátive ónly. Verbs compoúnded with the rest of the prepositíons méntioned, fréquently have the same prepositíon (or one of like meáning) set befóre the súbstantive which fóllows the verb: and sómetimes, if the prepositíon góvern an accúsative case, the súbstantive is put in the accúsative case, with an omíssion of the prepositíon,—béing góverned eíther by the prepositíon understoód, or by that in composítion with the verb.

[47] This is a prevaíling ídiom of the Látin lánguage, bórrowed (oríginally) from the Greek; and is much more élegant than the use of the verb *hă'bĕō.* In fact it would be álmost a bárbarism to say, *hă'bĕō dŏ'mī pă'trĕm, hă'bĕō ĭnjūs'tăm nŏvĕr'căm!* Here, then, we may obsérve, that the word which seems (in En'glish) to be the nóminative case, is áctually the dátive in Látin; while the word which to us is the accúsative, is, in the ídiom of that lánguage, the nóminative. It thérefore fóllows by análogy, that if the word which, with us, is the nóminative, be convérted into the accúsative (in Látin) by the omíssion of the conjúnction "*that,*" which ánswers in Látin to "*quŏd* or *ŭt,*" then the verb Ēst must be in the infínitive mood; but still fóllowed by a dátive of the word which, in our ídiom, is the nóminative: as, *I know thou hast not móney,* scĭ'ō tĭ'bĭ nōn ēs'sĕ ārgēn'tŭm; literally, *I know móney not to be únto thee.* In like mánner is dĕ'ēst, *it is wánting,* (fóllowed by a dátive,) véry apprópriately úsed for că'rĕō, *I want:*—thus, for exámple, plū'rĭmă mĭ'hĭ dē'sūnt, *véry mány things are wánting to me* or *I want véry mány things.* In the third pérson, both síngular and plúral of all the ténses and moods, are these verbs thus usúrped and with élegance as it respécts the Látin tongue.

Sŭm, cŭm mūl′tīs ă′lĭīs, gĕ′mĭnŭm ādmĭt′tĭt dătī′vŭm : ŭt,[48]

Ēxĭ′tĭo ēst *ă′vĭdīs mă′rĕ* naū′tīs. Hor.
*Spē′rās* tĭ′bĭ laū′dī fŏ′rĕ, *quŏd* mĭ′hĭ vĭ′tĭō vēr′tĭs ?

Ēst ŭ′bī hĭc dătī′vŭs, *tĭ′bĭ*, aūt *sĭ′bĭ*, aūt ĕ′tĭăm *mĭhĭ*, ēlĕgān′tĭæ caū′sā ād′dĭtŭr : ŭt,

Sŭ′ō sĭ′bĭ *glă′dĭo hūnc jŭ′gŭlŏ.* Ter.

## IV. Āccūsātī′vŭs pōst Vēr′bŭm.

### *The Accúsative Case áfter the Verb.*

Vēr′bă Trānsĭtī′vă[49] cūjūscūn′quĕ gĕ′nĕrĭs, sī′vĕ āctī′vī, sī′vĕ dēpōnēn′tĭs, sī′vĕ cōmmū′nĭs, ēx′ĭgūnt āccūsātī′vŭm : ŭt,

Pērcōntātō′rēm fŭ′gĭtō, *nām gār′rŭlŭs ĭ′dem ēst.* Hor.
*Ă′pĕr* ā′grōs dēpŏpŭlā′tŭr.
*Īmprī′mīs* vĕnĕrā′rĕ dĕ′ōs.

Vēr′bă Neū′tră āccūsātī′vŭm hă′bēnt cōgnā′tæ sīgnĭfĭcātĭō′nĭs : ŭt,

*Dū′răm* sēr′vĭt sērvĭtū′tĕm.

Sūnt quæ fĭgūrā′tē āccūsātī′vŭm hă′bēnt : ŭt,

—— *Nēc vōx* hŏ′mĭnēm sŏ′năt : *Ō dĕ′ă, cēr′tē !* Virg.

Vēr′bă rŏgān′dī, dŏcēn′dī, vēstĭēn′dī, cēlān′dī, fĕ′rĕ dŭ′plĭcĕm rĕ′gūnt āccūsātī′vŭm : ŭt,

*Tū mŏ′dŏ* pōs′cĕ dĕ′ōs vĕ′nĭăm. Virg.
Dēdŏcē′bŏ tē *īs′tōs* mō′rēs.
*Rīdĭ′cŭlum ēst te* īs′tūc me ādmŏnē′rĕ.[50] Ter.

---

[48] Partícularly when there is in the sense of the expréssion sómething more or less, of the meáning of the verbs āf′fĕrŏ, *I bring,* dū′cŏ, *I esteém* or *réckon,* trĭ′bŭō, *I give* or *ascríbe,* vēr′tŏ, *I turn* or *impúte,* and a few óthers of símilar ímport ; for besídes the dátive of the pérson there is óften a dátive of the *resúlt* or *efféct;* or of the *light* in which the óbject is regárded ; or of the *desígn* with which a thing is done, or of the *púrpose* for which it is inténded. To this Rule belóng such phráses as the fóllowing :—dĕ′dĭt mĭ′hĭ dō′nō, *he gave it me a présent :* rĕlĭ′quĭt tĭ′bĭ pīg′nŏrī, *he left it to thee a pledge :* ĭs rē′gī dīc′tō aū′dĭēns nōn ĕ′răt, *he was not heáring* (that is, *obédient*) *to the king's commánd,* líterally, *to the sáying to the king :* ēst ĕ′ī nŏ′mĕn Īŭ′lō, *the name Iúlus is to him,* i. e. *he has the name Iúlus.*

[49] By *Verbs Tránsitive* we must understánd all verbs which have a strictly *áctive significátion,* that is, which expréss an áction pássing on to some pérson, or thing, as the diréct and immédiate óbject of the verb.

[50] Though Verbs of *Teáching* and *Admónishing* have fréquently two

Īn'dŭĭt sē căl'cĕōs[51] *quōs prĭ'ŭs ĕxŭ'ĕrăt.*
Ĕ'ă *nē* mē cĕ'lĕt[52] *cōnsŭcfĕ'cī fī'lĭŭm.* Ter.

Hūjūs'mŏdī vēr'bă ĕ'tĭăm ĭn pāssī'vā vō'cĕ āccūsātī'vŭm pōst sē hă'bĕnt: ŭt,

Pōs'cĕrĭs ēx'tă *bŏ'vis.*

Nō'mĭnă āppēllātī'vă āddūn'tŭr fĕ'rē cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ vēr'bīs, quæ dē'nŏtānt mō'tŭm: ŭt,

Ăd *tēm'plŭm Păl'lădĭs* ī'bānt.

## V. Ăblātī'vŭs pōst Vēr'bŭm.

### *The Áblative Case áfter the Verb.*

Quōd'vīs Vēr'bŭm ādmīt'tĭt āblātī'vŭm sīgnĭfĭcān'tĕm īnstrūmēn'tŭm, aūt caū'săm, aūt mŏ'dŭm[53] āctĭō'nĭs: ŭt,

*Hī* jă'cŭlĭs, *ĭl'lī cĕr'tānt* dēfēn'dĕrĕ sāx'ĭs. Virg.

---

accúsatives, námely, one of the *Pérson*, and one of the *Admonítion*, yet sómetimes (and éven élegantly) áfter the látter, the thing which is the *súbject of admonítion* is expréssed in the génitive case; or in the áblative with the preposítion dē, *of* or *concérning*:—as, ādmŏ'nĕō tē ōffĭ'cĭī. *I remínd you of your dúty;* dē hāc rē tē sæ'pĭŭs ādmŏ'nŭī, *I have óften and óften wárned you of this círcumstance.* Againٍ, Verbs of *As'king* sómetimes change the accúsative of the *pérson* ínto an áblative with a preposítion:—as, hōc ā tē pĕ'tō, *this I ask of thee*:—and séveral Verbs of *Intérrogating* retaín the accúsative of the *Pérson*,—but change the accúsative of the *Thing* ínto the áblative with the preposítion *dē*.

[51] Verbs of *Clóthing* have more cómmonly, insteád of two accúsatives, the accúsative of the *pérson*, and the áblative of the *vésture* withoút a preposítion: as vēs'tĭt sē pūr'pŭrā, *he arráys himsélf in púrple:* álso, the two verbs īn'dŭō, *I put on*, and ĕx'ŭō, *I put off*, have not unfréquently the *vésture* in the accúsative, and the *pérson* in the dátive: as, thōrācĕm sĭ'bĭ īn'dŭĭt, *he put upón himsélf his córslet* or *breást-plate.*

[52] The verb *cē'lō* is óftentimes fóllowed by the dátive of the *pérson* and the accúsative of the *thing:* else, by the accúsative of the *pérson*, and the áblative of the *thing* góverned by the preposítion *dē*.

[53] A preposítion is, véry fréquently, expréssed with nouns sígnifying eíther the *Cause* or the *Mánner*, as, præ gaū'dĭō, *for joy*, cŭm sūm'mō lăbō'rĕ, *with the greátest lábour;* or if the preposítion góvern an accúsative case, the noun is put, accórdingly, in the accúsative; as, prōp'tĕr ămō'rĕm, *for love*, ŏb cūl'păm, *for the fault*, pĕr dē'dĕcŭs, *with disgráce:* —but with the *In'strument*, a preposítion is *néver úsed:* for we cánnot say scrī'bō cŭm că'lămō, but scrī'bō că'lămō, *I write with a pen;* neíther can we say cŭm ŏ'cŭlīs vĭ'dĕō, but ŏ'cŭlīs vĭ'dĕō, *I see with my eyes.* Yet with the *In'strument* as a *Concómitant* the preposítion is génerally expréssed; as, īngrēs'sŭs ēst cŭm glă'dĭō, *he éntered with a sword*, that is, *háving a sword aboút him*, or *in his hand.*

*Vĕhĕmēn'tĕr* ī'rā ēxcān'dŭĭt.
*Mī'rā* cĕlĕrĭtā'tĕ *rēm* pĕrē'gĭt.

Quĭbūs'dăm vēr'bīs sūbjĭ'cĭtŭr nō'mĕn prē'tĭī ĭn āblātī'vō cā'sū: ŭt,

Tĕrūn'cĭō, *seū vĭtĭō'sā* nŭ'cĕ *nōn* ē'mĕrĭm.
*Mūltō'rŭm* sān'guĭnĕ *āc* vūlnĕ'rĭbūs *ĕ'ă Pœ'nīs vīctō'rĭă* stĕ'tĭt. Liv.

Vī'lī, *paū'lō, mĭ'nĭmō, māg'nō, nĭ'mĭō, plū'rĭmō, dīmĭ'dĭō, dŭ'plō,*[54] pĕr sē sæ'pĕ pōnūn'tŭr, sŭbaūdī'tā vō'cĕ *prĕ'tĭō:* ŭt,

Vī'lī *vē'nĭt trī'tĭcŭm.*

Ēxcĭpĭūn'tŭr hī gĕnĭtī'vī sĭ'nĕ sūbstāntī'vīs pŏ'sĭtī; *tān'tī, quān'tī, plū'rĭs, mĭnō'rĭs, tāntī'dĕm, quāntī'vīs, quāntī'lĭbĕt, quāntĭcūn'quĕ, &c.:*—ŭt,

Tān'tī *ĕ'rĭs ă'lĭīs,* quān'tī *tĭ'bĭ fŭ'ĕrĭs.* Cic.

Flōc'cī, *naū'cī, nĭ'hĭlī, pĭ'lī, ās'sĭs, hū'jŭs, tĕrūn'cĭī,* vēr'bīs æstĭmān'dī pĕcūlĭā'rĭtĕr āddūn'tŭr: ŭt,

*Ē'gŏ ĭl'lŭm* flōc'cī pĕn'dŏ,—*nĕc* hū'jŭs fă'cĭŏ, *quī mē* pĭ'lī æs'tĭmăt.

Vēr'bă ăbūndān'dī, īmplēn'dī, ŏnĕrān'dī, ĕt hīs dīvēr'să,[55] āblātī'vō jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

Ămō're ăbūn'dās, *Ān'tĭphŏ.* Ter.
*Sȳl'lă ōm'nēs sŭ'ōs* dīvĭ'tĭīs ēxplē'vĭt. Sall.
*Tē quĭ'bŭs* mēndā'cĭīs *hŏ'mĭnēs lĕvĭs'sĭmī* ŏnĕrā'rūnt!
*Tē hōc* crī'mĭne ēx'pĕdī. Ter.

Ēx quĭ'bŭs quæ'dăm nōnnūn'quăm gĕnĭtī'vŭm rĕ'gūnt: ŭt,

Īmplēn'tŭr *vĕ'tĕrĭs* Bāc'chī, *pīnguĭs'quĕ* fĕrī'næ. Virg.
——*Quă'sĭ tu hū'jŭs* īndĭ'gĕās pă'trĭs. Ter.

Fūn'gŏr, *frŭ'ŏr, ū'tŏr, vēs'cŏr, dīg'nŏr, mū'tŏ,*[56] *cōmmū'nĭcŏ, sŭpērsĕ'dĕŏ,* āblātī'vō jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

---

[54] With séveral óthers of like ímport; as, pērmāg'nō, *for véry much;* pār'vō, *for líttle;* pērpār'vō, *for véry líttle:*—and sómetimes, nĭhĭ'lō, *for nóthing,* eíther with, or withoút, the prepositíon prō, *for,* espécially áfter the verb hă'bĕō, *I regárd* or *válue.*

[55] To this Rule belóng Verbs of *Bereáving* or *Plúndering;* such as, *ōr'bŏ, spŏ'lĭō, &c.:*—thus, ōr'bās pă'trĭăm jŭvēntū'tĕ, *thou bereávest thy coúntry of her youth;* mē bŏ'nĭs spŏlĭā'vĭt, *he plúndered me of my goods.*

[56] *Mū'tŏ,* and (in like mánner) *dīg'nŏr,* and *cōmmū'nĭcŏ,* góvern an accúsative case, but requíre moreóver an áblative to compléte the sense:

*Qui ădĭpīs′cī vē′răm glō′rĭăm vŏ′lĕt, jūstĭ′tĭæ* fūngā′tŭr ōffĭ′cĭīs. Cic.
*Ōp′tĭmŭm ēst ălĭē′nā* frŭ′ī īnsā′nĭā.
*Īn rē mă′lā,* ă′nĭmō *sī bŏ′nō* ūtā′rĕ, *jŭ′văt.*
*Vēs′cŏr căr′nĭbŭs.*
*Haūd ĕ′quĭdēm tā′lī mē* dīg′nŏr hŏnō′rĕ. Virg.
*Dī′rŭĭt, ædĭ′fĭcăt,* mū′tăt *quādrā′tă* rŏtūn′dīs. Hor.
Cōmmūnĭcā′bŏ *tē* mēn′sā *mĕ′ā.*
*Vērbō′rŭm* mūltĭtū′dĭnĕ sŭpērsĕdēn′dŭm *ēst.*

Mĕ′rĕŏr, cŭm ādvēr′bĭīs *bĕ′nĕ, mă′lĕ, mĕ′lĭŭs, pē′jŭs, ōp′tĭmē, pēs′sĭmē,* āblātī′vō jūn′gĭtŭr,—cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō′nĕ *dē:* ŭt,

Dē mē *nūn′quăm* bĕ′nĕ mĕ′rĭtŭs *ēst.*

Quæ′dăm āccĭpĭēn′dī, dīstān′dī, ĕt aūfĕrēn′dī vēr′bă, ălĭquān′dŏ dătī′vō jūngūn′tŭr: ŭt,

*Paū′lūm sĕpūl′tæ* dīs′tăt ĭnēr′tĭæ
*Cēlā′tă vĭr′tūs.* Hor.
Ērĭ′pĕ *tē* mŏ′ræ. Ibid.

Quĭbūs′lĭbĕt vēr′bīs ād′dĭtŭr āblātī′vŭs[57] ābsŏlūtē sūm′ptŭs: ŭt,

---

thus, mū′tŏ gă′lĕăm tŏ′gā, *I change a hélmet with* or *for a gown;* and it is remárkable that mū′tŏ sígnifies eíther to give or receíve in exchánge: as, mū′tăt ū′văm strī′gĭlī, "*he receíves grápes in exchánge for a scráper.*" —Hor.; mē dīg′nŏr hŏnō′rĕ, *I deem mysélf wórthy of hónour.* Hence they cánnot (in stríctness,) be said to be joíned to an áblative; but, to requíre an accúsative fóllowed by an áblative. As well, indeéd, might the verbs dō′nō, *I presént* or *I gift,* mū′nĕrō, *I rewárd,* and séveral óthers of the like sort, be said to be joíned to an áblative, becaúse, like *mū′tō,* they have an accúsative of the *pérson,* fóllowed (in géneral) by an áblative of the *thing.* Gaū′dĕō, *I delíght in,* and nī′tŏr, *I lean on,* have an áblative ónly. And to these might be ádded a few more.

[57] The áblative case is táken *ábsolutely* or *indepéndently,* when the sense of the súbstantive is ínsulated (as it were) in the séntence: for if the súbstantive (thus táken or assúmed) have ány word in the séntence wherebý it can be góverned, or ány verb to which it can be the nóminative, then (of course) the áblative case ought not to be úsed. For exámple, *the king háving spóken these words went awáy,* rēx, hæc lŏcū′tŭs, dīscēs′sĭt: here the accúsative *hæc* is góverned by the párticiple *lŏcū′tŭs,* and the noun understoód with it is not assúmed ábsolutely: but agaín, *the king, these words háving been said, went away,* rēx, hīs dīc′tīs, dīscēs′sĭt; here *hīs* is the áblative ábsolute. When no párticiple is expréssed with the áblative ábsolute, then ēxīstēn′tĕ or ēxīstēn′tĭbŭs, *béing,* is álways understoód:—as, mē pŭ′ĕrō, *me a boy,* that is, *when I was a boy,* or mē ēxīstēn′tĕ pŭ′ĕrō, *I béing a boy:* Dī′īs īnvī′tīs, *the Gods béing unwílling,*—understánd, ēxīstēn′tĭbŭs.

Īmpĕrān'tĕ Aūgūs'tō, *nā'tŭs ēst Chrīs'tŭs;* īmpĕrān'tĕ Tĭbĕ'rĭō, *crŭcĭfīx'ŭs.*
Mē dŭ'cĕ, *tū'tŭs ĕ'rĭs.* Ovid.

Vĕr'bīs quĭbūs'dăm ād'dĭtŭr āblātī'vŭs pār'tĭs āffĕc'tæ ĕt pŏē'tĭcē āccūsātī'vŭs: ŭt,

Ægrō'tăt ă'nĭmō *mă'gĭs quăm* cōr'pŏrĕ.
*Căn'dĕt dĕn'tēs.*
*Rŭ'bĕt căpīl'lōs.*

Quæ'dăm ūsūrpān'tŭr ĕ'tĭăm cŭm gĕnĭtī'vō: ŭt,

——— *Ābsūr'dē fă'cĭs,*
*Qui* ān'gās *te* ă'nĭmī. Plaut.

## VERBA PASSIVA.

### *Verbs Pássive.*

Pāssī'vīs ād'dĭtŭr āblātī'vŭs ăgĕn'tĭs, sĕd āntĕcēdĕn'tĕ *ā* vĕl *ăb* præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ; ĕt īntĕr'dŭm dătī'vŭs:[58] ŭt,

Laūdā'tŭr ăb *hīs*, cūlpā'tŭr ăb *īl'līs.* Hor.
*Hŏnēs'tă bŏ'nīs* vĭ'rīs, *nōn ōccūl'tă*, quærūn'tŭr.

Cæ'tĕrī cā'sūs mă'nēnt ĭn pāssī'vīs,[59] quī fŭĕ'rūnt āctīvō'rŭm: ŭt,

Āccūsā'rĭs *ā mē* fŭr'tī.
*Hăbē'bĕrĭs* lŭdī'brĭō.
Dēdŏcē'bĕrĭs *ā mē īs'tōs* mō'rēs.
*Prīvā'bĕrĭs* măgīstrā'tū.

---

58 The use of the dátive, insteád of the áblative with a prepositíon, is by a Greek ídiom, and occúrs óftener (perháps) in póetry than in prose. And sómetimes, with the áblative of the ágent, the prepositíon is omítted áfter pássive verbs: as, scrībē'rĭs Vă'rĭō, *you will be descríbed by Várius.*

59 The meáning of this Rule appeárs to be, that if with the áctive voice two cáses (neíther of which is góverned by a prepositíon) be emplóyed, the látter of those cáses may be put áfter the pássive voice. Thus, dŏ'cĕō tē grāmmă'tĭcăm, *I teach thee grámmar,* tū dŏcē'rĭs grāmmă'tĭcăm, *thou art taught grámmar:* rŏ'gō tē sēntĕn'tĭăm, *I ask thee thy opínion,* rŏgā'rĭs sēntĕn'tĭăm, *thou art ásked thy opínion:* āccīn'gō mē ēn'sĕm, *I begírd me with my sword,* āccīn'gŏr ēn'sĕm, *I am begírt (as to) my sword:* ŏ'nĕrō nā'vĕm aū'rō, *I freight the ship with gold,* nā'vĭs ŏnĕrā'tŭr aū'rō, *the ship is freighted with gold:* lĕ'vō tē fās'cĕ, *I líghten thee of a búndle,* tū lĕvā'rĭs fās'cĕ, *thou art líghtened of a búndle.*

Vā'pŭlō, *vē'nĕō, lĭ'cĕō, ēx'ŭlō, fī'ō*, neū'trō-pāssī'vă ; pāssīvăm cōnstrūctĭō'nĕm hă'bēnt : ŭt,

A *prœcēptō'rĕ* vāpŭlā'bĭs.
*Mă'lō ā cī'vĕ spŏlĭă'rī, quăm* ăb *hōs'tĕ* vēnī'rĕ.
*Vĭr'tūs păr'vō prĕ'tĭō* lĭ'cĕt ăb *ōm'nĭbŭs.*
*Cūr* ā *cōnvīvān'tĭbŭs* ēx'ŭlăt *phĭlŏsŏ'phĭă ?*
*Quĭd* fī'ĕt ăb *ĭl'lō ?*

## VERBA INFINITA.

### *Verbs of the Infinitive Mood.*

Vēr'bīs quĭbŭs'dăm, pārtĭcĭ'pĭīs, ĕt ādjēctī'vīs, āddūn'tŭr vēr'bă īnfīnī'tă ;[60] ĕt pŏē'tĭcē sūbstāntī'vīs : ŭt,

Dī'cĕrĕ *quœ* pŭ'dŭīt, scrībĕrĕ jūs'sĭt *ă'mŏr.* Ovid.
Jūs'sūs cōnfūn'dĕrĕ *fœ'dŭs.* Virg.
*Ĕ'rāt tūm* dīg'nŭs ămā'rī. Ibid.
Tēm'pŭs ăbī'rĕ *tĭ'bĭ.*

Pōnūn'tŭr īntēr'dŭm sŏ'lă, pĕr Ēllīp'sĭn, vēr'bă īnfīnī'tă : ŭt,

——— *Hinc* spār'gĕrĕ *vō'cēs*
*Īn vŭl'gum āmbĭ'gŭās, ēt quœ'rĕrĕ cōn'scĭŭs ăr'mă.* Virg.
[*Hic subauditur* incipiébat.]

## GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.

### *Gérunds and Súpines.*

Gĕrūn'dĭă ĕt Sŭpī'nă rĕ'gūnt că'sūs sŭō'rūm vērbō'rūm: ŭt,
*Ēf'fĕrŏr stŭ'dĭō* pă'trēs *vēs'trōs* vĭdēn'dī. Cic.
Ūtēn'dum[61] *ēst* ætā'tĕ : *cĭ'tō pĕ'dĕ prœ'tĕrĭt œ'tās.* Ovid.
——— Scītā'tum ōră'cŭlă *Phœ'bī*
*Mĭt'tĭmŭs.* Virg.

#### I. GERUNDIA.

#### 1. *Gérunds.*

Gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn *-dī* ĕān'dĕm cŭm gĕnĭtī'vīs cōnstrūctĭō'nĕm hă'bēnt, ĕt pēn'dēnt ā quĭbŭs'dăm tŭm sūbstāntī'vīs, tŭm ādjēctī'vīs : ŭt,

---

60 When two verbs come together, without ány nóminative case betweén them, the látter is génerally put in the ínfinitive mood.

61 In this Exámple *ūtĕn'dŭm* is not by ány means the gérund in *-dŭm*, but the neúter génder of the fúture párticiple pássive in *-dŭs.* See note 63, below.

*Cĕcrŏ'pĭās īnnā'tŭs ă'pēs* ă'mŏr *ūr'gĕt* hăbēn'dī. Virg.
*Ǣnē'ās cĕl'să īn pūp'pī jām* cēr'tŭs ĕūn'dī. Ibid.

Gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn *-dŏ* ĕān'dĕm cŭm āblātī'vīs; ĕt gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn *-dŭm* cŭm āccūsātī'vīs, cōnstrūctĭō'nĕm ōb'tĭnēnt;[62] ŭt,

*Scrībĕn'dī ră'tĭō cōnjūnc'tă* cŭm lŏquēn'dŏ *ēst.* Quint.
——*Ă'lĭtūr vĭ'tĭūm vīvīt'quĕ* tĕgēn'dŏ. Virg.
*Lŏ'cŭs* ăd ăgēn'dŭm *āmplĭs'sĭmŭs.* Cic.

Cŭm sīgnĭfĭcā'tŭr "*Nĕcēs'sĭtās,*" pōnūn'tŭr gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn *-dŭm*[63] cĭ'trā præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕm, ād'dĭtō vēr'bō *ēst:* ŭt,

Ōrān'dum ēst, *ŭt sĭt mēns să'na īn cōr'pŏrĕ să'nō.* Juv.
Vĭgĭlān'dŭm ēst *ĕ'ī, quī cŭ'pĭt vīn'cĕrĕ.*

Vērtūn'tŭr ĕ'tĭăm gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn nŏ'mĭnă ādjēctī'vă:[64] ŭt,

*Ăd* āccūsān'dōs hŏ'mĭnēs *dŭ'cī præ'mĭō, prōx'ĭmŭm lătrō'cĭnĭō ēst.*

### II. SUPINA.

### 2. *Supines.*

Sŭpī'nŭm ĭn *-ŭm*[65] āctī'vē sīgnĭ'fĭcăt, ĕt sĕ'quĭtŭr vēr'bŭm, aūt pārtĭcĭ'pĭŭm, sīgnĭ'fĭcāns mō'tŭm ăd lŏ'cŭm: ŭt,

---

[62] The gérund in *-dŏ* has sómetimes, though more rárely, the constrúction of the dátive case:—as, ū'tĭlĕ sĕrĕn'dŏ, *úseful to sówing;* āp'tŭs hăbēn'dŏ, *fit to háving,* pār sōlvēn'dŏ, *équal to páying,* that is, *sólvent.*

[63] A more vile érror than this was néver coúntenanced. To me, indeéd, it is, (I conféss) mátter of the greátest astónishment, that hítherto évery writer on Látin Grámmar (as far, at least, as I am awáre) should have úniformly fállen ínto the same mistáke and have tácitly subscríbed to the same blúnder.—This "*suppósed Gérund*" is the nóminative case, síngular, neúter génder, of the fúture párticiple pássive, with the verb *ēst* assúmed impérsonally. When the sense is not impérsonal, the verb *ēst* is sómetimes suppréssed: as, lĕvān'dŭm frōn'dĕ nĕ'mŭs, *the grove must be disbúrdened of its fóliage* or *leáfy boughs.*

[64] This holds good ónly of verbs which góvern an accúsative case: to which may be ádded, *fūn'gŏr, frŭ'ŏr,* and *pŏ'tĭŏr,*—which had oríginally an accúsative áfter them.

[65] The súpine in *-ŭm* is véry élegantly put áfter the verb ĕ'ō, *I go,* vĕ'nĭō, *I come,* and mīt'tō, *I send:*—but insteád of the súpine, which is góverned by the preposítion *ăd* understoód, the póets sómetimes use the infínitive: as, ĕ'ō vĭdē'rĕ, *I am góing to see.* On the óther hand, the súpine in *-ŭm* is occásionally emplóyed áfter óther verbs than those of mótion:—as, dō fī'lĭăm nūp'tŭm, *I give my daúghter to márry.* The súpine in *ū* does not fóllow all ádjectives, but ónly those sígnifying quálity, form, and óthers of símilar meáning, such as eásy, dífficult, agreéable, disagreéable, wórthy, unwórthy, &c. It is also úsed áfter the súbstantives fās and nĕ'fās.

Spēctā′tūm vĕ′nĭūnt, *vĕ′nĭūnt spēctēn′tŭr ŭt īp′sæ.* Ovid.
*Mī′lĭtēs sūnt* mīs′sī spĕcŭlā′tŭm *ār′cĕm.*

Sŭpī′nŭm ĭn -*ū* pāssī′vē sīgnĭ′fĭcăt, ĕt sĕ′quĭtŭr nō′mĭnă ādjēctī′vă : ŭt,

*Quŏd* fāc′tū fœ′dŭm *ēst, ĭ′dĕm ēst ĕt* dīc′tū tŭr′pĕ.

## DE TEMPORE ET LOCO.

### *Nouns of Time and Place.*

#### I. TEMPUS.

#### 1. *Time.*

Quæ sīgnĭ′fĭcānt "pār′tĕm tēm′pŏrĭs," ĭn āblātī′vō frĕquēn′tĭŭs pōnūn′tŭr : ŭt,

*Nē′mō mōrtā′lĭŭm* ōm′nĭbŭs hō′rīs *să′pĭt.* Plin.

Quæ aū′tĕm "dūrātĭō′nĕm tēm′pŏrĭs" sīgnĭ′fĭcānt, ĭn āccūsātī′vō fĕ′rē pōnūn′tŭr : ŭt,

*Hīc jām tēr cēn′tūm* tō′tōs *rēgnā′bĭtŭr* ān′nōs. Virg.

Dī′cĭmŭs ĕ′tĭăm :—

Ĭn *paū′cīs* dĭē′bŭs.
*Dē dĭ′ē.*
*Dē nōc′tĕ.*
*Prōmīt′tō* ĭn dĭ′ēm.
*Cōm′mŏdō* ĭn mēn′sĕm.
Ān′nōs ăd *quīnquāgīn′tă nā′tŭs.*
Pĕr *trēs* ān′nōs *stŭ′dŭī.*
*Pŭ′ĕr* ĭd ætā′tĭs.
*Nōn plūs* trī′dŭŭm, *aūt* trī′dŭō.
Tēr′tĭō (*vĕl* ăd tēr′tĭŭm) cālēn′dās *vĕl* cālēndā′rŭm.

#### II. SPATIUM LOCI.

#### 2. *Distance of Place.*

Spă′tĭŭm lŏ′cī ĭn āccūsātī′vō pō′nĭtŭr, īntēr′dŭm ĕt ĭn āblātī′vō : ŭt,

*Jăm* mīl′lĕ pās′sūs *prōcēs′sĕrām.*
*Ăb′ēst ăb ūr′bĕ* quīngēn′tīs mīl′lĭbŭs *pās′sŭŭm.*

Ĭ′tĕm : *Ăb′ēst* bī′dŭī ;—

[Ŭ′bĭ īntēllĭ′gĭtŭr *spă′tĭŭm* vĕl *spă′tĭō, ĭtĭ′nĕrĕ* vĕl *ĭ′tĕr.*

### III. NOMINA LOCORUM.

### 3. *The Names of Pláces.*

Ōm'nĕ vēr'bŭm ādmĭt'tĭt gĕnĭtī'vŭm ōp'pĭdī nŏ'mĭnĭs, ĭn quō fĭt āc'tĭŏ, mŏ'dŏ prī'mæ[66] vĕl sĕcūn'dæ dēclīnātĭō'nĭs, ĕt sīngŭlā'rĭs nŭ'mĕrī, sĭt: ŭt,

*Quĭd* Rō'mæ *fă cĭăm? Mēntī'rī nĕ'scĭŏ.*—Juv.

Hī gĕnĭtī'vī, *hŭ'mī, dŏ'mī, mīlĭ'tĭæ, bēl'lī,* prŏprĭō'rŭm sĕquūn'tŭr fōr'măm: ŭt,

*Pār'vī sūnt fŏ'rĭs ăr'mă, nĭ'sĭ ēst cōnsĭ'lĭŭm* dŏ'mī.
——— *Ū'nā sēm'pĕr* mīlĭ'tĭæ *ĕt* dŏ'mī
*Fŭ'ĭmŭs.* Ter.

Vē'rŭm sī ōp'pĭdī nō'mĕn plūrā'lĭs dūntāx'ăt nŭ'mĕrī, aūt tēr'tĭæ dēclīnātĭō'nĭs fŭ'ĕrĭt, ĭn āblātī'vō, pō'nĭtŭr: ŭt,

*Cōl'chŭs ăn Āssy̆'rĭŭs;* Thē'bīs *nūtrī'tŭs, ăn* Ār'gīs? Hor.
Rō'mæ *Tī'bŭr ă'mĕm; vēntō'sŭs,* Tī'bŭrĕ *Rō'măm.* Ibid.

Vēr'bīs sīgnĭfĭcān'tĭbŭs mō'tŭm ăd lŏ'cŭm[67] fĕ'rĕ ād'dĭtŭr nō'mĕn lŏ'cī ĭn āccūsātī'vō sĭ'nĕ præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ: ŭt,

*Cōncēs'sī* Cāntăbrī'gĭăm *ăd căpĭēn'dŭm īngĕ'nĭī cūl'tŭm.*

Ăd hūnc mŏ'dŭm ū'tĭmŭr *dŏ'mŭs* ĕt *rūs:* ŭt,

*Ī'tĕ* dŏ'mūm, *să'tŭræ, vĕ'nĭt Hēs'pĕrŭs, ī'tĕ, căpēl'læ.*
*Ĕ'gŏ* rūs *ī'bŏ.*

---

[66] Towns in *-ē* of the first declénsion have úsually *ĭn ūr'bĕ* set befóre them: as, ĭn ūr'bĕ Mĭty̆lē'nēs, *in the city of Mitylénē.* Sómetimes, too, a prepositíon is put befóre the name of a town, as ĭn Rō'mā, *in Rome,* ăd *vĕl* ă'pŭd Rō'măm, *besíde* or *near Rome.* Both these expréssions, howéver, are dífferent in meáning from *Rō'mæ,* which sígnifies "*at Rome.*" The names of coúntries and íslands are óftentimes (espécially by the póets) úsed like the names of towns, as Cy̆'prī, *at Cýprus;* but this is by ellípsis of the words "ĭn rĕgĭō'nĕ *vĕl* ĭn īn'sŭlā, *in the district* or *ísland.*

[67] Not ónly the names of towns, but (by poétic lícence) those of nátions and coúntries, and sómetimes éven cómmon nouns, are úsed in the accúsative case withoút a preposítion, áfter verbs sígnifying "*mótion to* or *tówards:*" as, ī'bĭmŭs Āf'rōs, *we shall go to the Africans;* spēlūn'cám ĕān'dĕm dēvĕ'nĭūnt, *they come to the same grot.* The póets álso occásionally emploý the dátive for the accúsative: as, ĭt clāmŏr cœ'lō, *the clámour goes to heáven,* meáning, *the vociferátions rise to the skies.* When mótion through a *Place* is sígnified, the prepositíon *pĕr* is nécessary:—as, ī'tĕr fē'cĭt pĕr Lōndī'nŭm ĕt Cān'tĭŭm, *he made a joúrney through Lóndon and Kent.*

Vĕr'bīs sīgnĭfĭcān'tĭbŭs mō'tŭm ā lŏ'cō[68] fĕ'rĕ ād'dĭtŭr nō'mĕn lŏ'cī ĭn āblātī'vō sī'nĕ præpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ: ŭt,

*Nī'sĭ ān'tĕ* Rō'mā *prŏfĕc'tŭs ēs'sēs, nūnc ĕ'ăm rĕlīn'quĕrēs.*

## VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

*Verbs Impérsonal.*

Vĕr'bă Īmpērsōnā'lĭă nōmĭnātī'vŭm nōn hă'bēnt ēnūncĭā'tŭm: ŭt,

Jŭ'văt *ī'rĕ sŭb ūm'brās.*

Hæc īmpērsōnā'lĭă, *īn'tĕrēst* ĕt *rē'fērt* quĭbŭs'lĭbĕt gĕnĭtī'vīs jūngŭn'tŭr:—præ'tĕr hōs āblātī'vōs fœmĭnī'nōs,—*mĕ'ā, tŭ'ā, sŭ'ā, nōs'trā, vēs'trā,* ĕt *cŭ'jā:*[69] ŭt,

Īn'tĕrēst măgīstrā'tūs *tŭē'rī bŏ'nōs, ănĭmādvēr'tĕrĕ ĭn mă'lōs.*

Tŭ'ā rē'fērt *tĕīp'sŭm nōs'sĕ.*

Āddūn tŭr ĕt hī gĕnĭtī'vī, *tān'tī, quān'tī, măg'nī, pār'vī, quāntĭcŭn'quĕ, tāntī'dĕm:* ŭt,

Tān'tī rē'fērt *hŏnēs'tă ă'gĕrĕ.*

Dătī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt īmpērsōnā'lĭă ācquīsītī'vē pŏ'sĭtă; quæ aŭ'tĕm trānsĭtī'vē pōnŭn'tŭr, āccūsātī'vŭm: ŭt,

*Ā Dĕ'ō* nō'bīs bĕ'nĕfĭt.

Mē jŭ'văt[70] *ī'rĕ pĕr āl'tŭm.*

---

[68] Although the póets, véry fréquently, put the names of coúntries, próvinces, íslands, and séveral óther pláces which do not come próperly únder the denominátion of cíties or towns, in the áblative case withoút a preposítion, áfter verbs of "*mótion from,*" as Sĭcĭ'lĭā dīscēs'sĭt, ***he depárted from Sícily,*** yet, in prose, this constrúction is séldom, or néver, admítted; some preposítion, as, *ā, ăb, ē, ēx, dē,* béing cómmonly set befóre the noun: as, ēx Hībēr'nĭā rĕvēr'sŭs ēst, ***he retúrned from*** or ***out of I'reland.***

[69] Mány grammárians (among óthers Válpy) consíder these prónouns to be the accúsative case plúral neúter génder, góverned by *īn'tĕr* or *ăd* understoód.

[70] These four, jŭ'văt, ***it delíghts,*** dĕ'cĕt, ***it befíts,*** dēlēc'tăt, ***it delíghts,*** and ŏpōr'tĕt, ***it behóves,*** are génerally fóllowed by an accúsative of the pérson and an infínitive: and here it may be obsérved, that the infínitive áfter *ŏpōr'tĕt* is élegantly chánged ínto a subjúnctive, with the omíssion both of the pérson and of *ŭt*:—as, ŏpōr'tĕt făcĭās, ***it behóves that you do it,*** for ŏpōr'tĕt tē fă'cĕrĕ, ***it behóves you to do it.***

Hīs vē′rō, *ăt′tĭnĕt*, *pēr′tĭnĕt*, *spēc′tăt*, prŏ′prĭē ād′dĭtŭr præpŏsĭ′tĭō *ăd :* ŭt,

*Mē vīs dī′cĕrĕ quŏd* ād *te* ăt′tĭnĕt? Ter.
Spēc′tăt ăd *ōm′nēs bĕ′nĕ vī′vĕrĕ.*

Hīs īmpĕrsōnā′lĭbŭs sūbjĭ′cĭtŭr āccūsātī′vŭs cŭm gĕnĭtī′vō,[71] *pœ′nĭtĕt*, *tæ′dĕt*, *mĭ′sĕrĕt*, *mīsĕrēs′cĭt*, *pŭ′dĕt*, *pĭ′gĕt :* ŭt,

*Sī ăd cēntē′sĭmŭm vīxīs′sĕt ān′nŭm*, sĕnēctū′tĭs ĕ′ŭm *sŭ′æ nōn* pœnĭtē′rĕt. Cic.
*Mĭ′sĕrĕt mē tŭ′ī.*

Vēr′bŭm īmpērsōnā′lĕ pāssī′væ vŏ′cĭs prō sĭn′gŭlīs pērsō′nīs ŭtrīŭs′quĕ nŭ′mĕrī ēlĕgān′tĕr āc′cĭpī pŏ′tēst : ŭt,

*Stā′tŭr ;* ĭd ēst, *stō*, *stās*, *stăt*, *stā′mŭs*, *stā′tĭs*, *stānt*, vĭdē′lĭcĕt ēx vī ādjūnc′tī cā′sūs: ŭt, *stā′tŭr ā mē :* ĭd ēst, *stō : stā′tŭr ăb īl′līs ;* ĭd ēst, *stānt.*

## PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Constrúction of Párticiples.*

Pārtĭcĭ′pĭă rĕ′gūnt cā′sūs vērbō′rŭm ā quĭ′bŭs dērīvān′tŭr: ŭt,

———*Dŭ′plĭcēs* tēn′dēns *ād sī′dĕră* pāl′mās,
*Tā′lĭă vō′cĕ rĕ′fērt.* Virg.

Pārtĭcĭ′pĭīs pāssī′væ vŏ′cĭs ād′dĭtŭr īntēr′dŭm dătī′vŭs, præsēr′tĭm sī ēx′ĕūnt ĭn *-dŭs :* ŭt,

*Māg′nŭs cī′vĭs ŏ′bĭt, ēt* fōrmīdā′tŭs Ŏthō′nī.
——— *Rēs′tāt Chrĕ′mēs,*
*quī* mĭ′hī ēxōrān′dŭs *ēst.* Ter.

Pārtĭcĭ′pĭă, cŭm fī′ūnt nō′mĭnă,[72] gĕnĭtī′vŭm ēx′ĭgūnt: ŭt,
*Ălĭē′nī āp′pĕtēns, sŭ′ī prōfū′sŭs.* Sall.

Ēxō′sŭs *pĕrō′sŭs*, *pērtæ′sŭs*, āctī′vē sīgnĭfĭcān′tĭă, āccūsātī′vŭm ēx′ĭgūnt: ŭt,

[71] This génitive is sómetimes túrned ínto an infínitive mood of kíndred signification : as, pœ′nĭtĕt mē pēccā′tī, *it repénts me of my offénce*, pœ′nĭtĕt mē pēccās′sĕ, *it répents me to have offended*, that is, *to have offénded repénts me.*

[72] A párticiple is said to becóme a noun, when it is entírely divésted of the idéa of time, or is cápable of compárison : thus, in the phrase, pă′tĭēns frī′gŭs, *súffering cold*, pă′tĭēns is a párticiple ; but in the phrase, pă′tĭēns frī′gŏrĭs, *pátient of cold*, pă′tĭēns is a participial or vérbal ádjective.

*Ăstrŏ′nŏmŭs* ēxō′sŭs *ăd ū′năm* mŭlĭ′ĕrēs.
*Īmmūn′dăm* sēgnĭ′tĭēm pĕrō′sæ.
Pērtæ′sŭs īgnā′vĭăm *sŭ′ăm.* Suet.

Ēxō′sŭs, ĕt *pĕrō′sŭs*, pāssī′vē sīgnĭfĭcān′tĭă, cŭm dătī′vō lĕgūn′tŭr; ŭt,

Ēxō′sŭs Dĕ′ō *ĕt* sānc′tīs.
*Gērmā′nī* Rōmā′nīs pĕrō′sī *sūnt.*

Nā′tŭs, *prōgnā′tŭs, să′tŭs, crē′tŭs, crĕā′tŭs, ōr′tŭs, ē′dĭtŭs*, āblātī′vŭm ēx′ĭgūnt; ĕt sæ′pĕ cŭm præpŏsĭtĭō′nĕ: ŭt,

*Bŏ′nă bŏ′nīs* prōgnā′tă părēn′tĭbŭs.
Să′tĕ sān′guĭnĕ *Dī′vūm!* Virg.
*Quō* sān′guĭnĕ crē′tŭs! Ibid.
*Vĕ′nŭs*, ōr′tă mă′rī, *mă′rĕ præ′stăt ĕūn′tī.* Ovid.
*Tĕr′rā ē′dĭtŭs.*
Ēdĭtă dē *māg′nō* flū′mĭnĕ *nȳm′phă fŭ′ī.*

## ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### *The Constrúction of Ádverbs.*

Ēn ĕt *ēc′cĕ*, dēmōnstrān′dī ādvēr′bĭă, nōmĭnātī′vō frĕquēn′tĭŭs jūngūn′tŭr, āccūsātī′vō rā′rĭŭs: ŭt,

*Ēn Prĭ′ămŭs.* Virg.
Ēccĕ *tĭ′bĭ* stă′tŭs *nōs′tĕr.* Cic.
——— Ēn *quă′tŭŏr* ā′rās;
Ēc′cĕ dŭ′ās *tĭ′bĭ Dāph′nĭ;* dŭō′*que* āltā′rĭă *Phœ′bō.*

Ēn ĕt *ēc′cĕ* ēxprŏbrān′dī, sō′lī āccūsātī′vō jūngūn′tŭr; ŭt,
Ēn ă′nĭmŭm *ĕt* mēn′tĕm.
Ēc′cĕ *aū′tĕm* āl′tĕrŭm.

Quæ′dăm ādvēr′bĭă lŏ′cī, tēm′pŏrĭs, ĕt quāntĭtā′tĭs, gĕnĭtī′vŭm ādmĭt′tūnt.

1. Lŏ′cī; ŭt, *ŭ′bĭ, ŭ′bĭnăm, nūs′quăm, ĕ′ō, lōn′gē, quō, ŭbĭ′vīs, hūc′cĭnĕ, &c.:* ŭt,

*Ŭ′bĭ gēn′tĭŭm?*
Nūs′quăm lŏ′cī *īnvĕnī′tŭr.*
Ē′ō īmpŭdēn′tĭæ *vēn′tŭm ēst.*
Quō tērrā′rŭm *ăb′ĭĭt?*

2. Tēm′pŏrĭs; ŭt, *nūnc, tūnc, tŭm, īntĕ′rĕā, prī′dĭē, pōstrī′dĭē, &c.:* ŭt.

*Nĭ'hĭl* tūnc tēm'pŏrĭs *ām'plĭŭs quăm flē'rĕ pŏ'tĕrām.*
Prī'dĭē *ē'jŭs* dĭē'ī *pūg'năm ĭnĭē'rūnt.*
Prī'dĭē călēndā'rŭm,—*vĕl călēn'dās.*

3. Quāntĭtā'tĭs; ŭt, *pă'rŭm, să'tĭs, ăbūn'dē, &c.*: ŭt,
*Să'tĭs ēlŏquēn'tĭæ, săpĭēn'tĭæ pă'rŭm.* Sall.
Ăbūn'dē fābŭlā'rŭm *aūdī'vĭmŭs.*

Quæ'dăm că'sūs ādmĭt'tūnt nŏ'mĭnŭm[73] ūn'dĕ dēdūc'tă sūnt: ŭt,
Sĭ'bĭ ĭnūtĭ'lĭtĕr *vī'vĭt.*
Prŏx'ĭmē Hīspā'nĭăm *Maū'rī sūnt.* Sall.
Mĕ'lĭŭs *vĕl* ŏp'tĭmē ŏm'nĭŭm. Cic.
Ām'plĭŭs ŏpīnĭŏ'nĕ *mŏrābă'tŭr.* Sall.

Ădvĕr'bĭă dīvērsĭtā'tĭs, *ă'lĭtĕr, sĕ'cŭs;* ĕt īl'lă dŭ'ŏ, *ān'tĕ, pōst,* āblātī'vō nōn rā'rō jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,
*Mūl'tō ă'lĭtĕr.*
*Paū'lō sĕ'cŭs.*
*Mūl'tō ān'tĕ.*
*Paū'lō pōst.*
*Lōn'gō* pōst tēm'pŏrĕ *vē'nĭt.* Virg.

Īn'stăr ĕt *ēr'gō* ādvērbĭā'lĭtĕr sūm'ptă gĕnĭtī'vŭm pōst sē hă'bēnt: ŭt,
Īn'stār mōn'tĭs *ĕ'quūm, dīvī'nā Pāl'lădĭs ār'tĕ,*
*Ædĭ'fĭcānt.* Virg.
*Dōnā'rī* vīrtū'tĭs ēr'gō. Cic.

## CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Constrúction of Conjúnctions.*

Cōnjūnctĭō'nēs cōpŭlātī'væ, ĕt dīsjūnctī'væ, sĭ'mĭlēs cā'sūs, mŏ'dōs, ĕt tēm'pŏră, cōnjūn'gūnt; ŭt,
*Sŏ'crătēs dŏ'cŭĭt* Xĕnŏphōn'tĕm ĕt Plătō'nĕm.
*Rēc'tō* stăt *cŏr'pŏrĕ,* dēspĭcĭt'quĕ *tēr'rās.*
*Nĕc* scrī'bĭt, nĕc lē'gĭt.

Nĭ'sĭ vă'rĭæ cōnstrūctĭō'nĭs ră'tĭŏ ă'lĭŭd pōs'căt: ŭt,

---

73 And ádverbs of the compárative degreé have óptionally the conjúnction *quăm* áfter them, or an áblative (if the sense will admít) with the omíssion of *quăm*: thus, āl'tĭŭs quăm sŏ'lĭtŭm *vĕl* āl'tĭŭs sŏ'lĭtō, *more lóftily than úsual.*

*Ēmī lĭ'brŭm* cēntūs'sī ĕt plū'rĭs.
*Vix'ī* Rō'mæ ĕt Vĕnĕ'tīīs.
*Nĭ'sĭ mē* lāctās'sēs *ămān'tĕm*, ĕt *fāl'sā spē* prōdū'cĕrēs.

Quăm sæ'pĕ īntēllĭ'gĭtŭr pōst *ām'plĭŭs, plūs*, ĕt *mĭ'nŭs* : ŭt,
Ām'plĭŭs *sūnt* sēx mēn'sēs. Cic.
*Paū'lō* plūs trĕcēn'tă vĕhĭ'cŭlă *sūnt āmīs'să*. Liv.
*Nūn'quăm nīx* mĭ'nŭs quă'tŭŏr pĕ'dēs *āl'tă jă'cŭĭt*.

---

### Quĭbŭs vĕrbō'rŭm mŏ'dīs quæ'dăm cōn'grŭūnt ādvĕr'bĭă ĕt cōnjūnctĭōnēs.

Nĕ, *ăn*, *nŭm*, dŭbĭtātī'vĕ, aūt īndēfīnī'tē, pŏ'sĭtă sūbjūnctī'vō jūngūn'tŭr : ŭt,
*Nĭ'hĭl rē'fērt* fēcĕrīs'nĕ ăn pērsuā'sĕrĭs.
*Vĭ'sĕ*, nŭm rĕdĭ'ĕrĭt.

Dŭm, prō *dūm'mŏdŏ* ĕt *quōūs'quĕ*, sūbjūnctī'vŭm pōstŭ'lăt:[74] ŭt,
Dŭm prō'sīm *tĭ'bĭ*.
*Tēr'tĭă* dŭm *rēgnān'tĕm* vĭ'dĕrĭt *æs'tās*.

Quī, caū'săm sīgnĭ'fĭcāns, sūbjūnctī'vŭm ēx'ĭgĭt : ŭt,
*Stūl'tŭs ĕs* quī *huīc* crē'dās.

Ŭt, prō *pōst'quăm, sĭ'cŭt*, ĕt *quŏ'mŏdŏ*, īndĭcātī'vō jūn'gĭtŭr: —cŭm aū'tĕm *quān'quăm, ŭt'pŏtĕ*, vĕl *fīnā'lĕm caū'săm*[75] dē'nŏtăt, sūbjūnctī'vō : ŭt,

---

[74] *Dŭm*, whenéver it sígnifies "*whilst* or *untíl*," is joíned to the indícative mood : in like mánner *cŭm*, when it sígnifies "*when*," and *dō'nĕc* in the sense of "*so long*," are fóllowed by the indícative :—but when *cŭm* is úsed for "*since*," and *dō'nĕc* for "*untíl*," the subjúnctive mood is nécessary. Lĭ'cĕt, *althoúgh*, ŭ'tĭnăm, *I wish*, dūm'mŏdŏ, *províded-that*, and a few óthers of like import, have more cómmonly the subjúnctive mood áfter them. *Nē*, the ádverb of forbídding, takes eíther the impérative or subjúnctive mood ; but nē, *lest*, takes the subjúnctive ónly : thus, nē tĭ'mē *vĕl* nē tĭ'mĕās, *do not fear ;* că'vē nē fă'cĭās, *take care lest thou do*, that is, *take care thou do not :* but there is óften an ellípsis of the word *nē*. And here it should be nóticed, that áfter verbs of feáring, *nē* álways means "*lest*," and implíes a pártial want of negátion, whilst ŭt, *that*, has an acceptátion the véry revérse :—thus, tĭ'mĕō nē fă'cĭăt, *I fear lest he do it*, that is, *I am afraíd he will do it :* tĭ'mĕō ŭt fă'cĭăt, *I fear that he may do it*, that is, *I am afraíd that he will not do it.*

[75] The conjúnction *ŭt*, when connécted with a contíngent verb, is

Ūt sŭ'mŭs *īn Pōn'tō, tēr frī'gŏrĕ cōn'stĭtĭt Ī's'tĕr.* Ovid.
Ŭt *tū'tĕ* ĕs, *ĭ'tā ōm'nēs cēn'sēs ēs'sĕ.*
Ŭt *ōm'nĭă* cōntīn'gānt, *quæ vŏ'lŏ, lĕvā'rī nōn pōs'sŭm.*
*Nōn ēst tĭ'bī fīdēn'dŭm,* ŭt *quī tŏ'tĭēs* fĕfĕl'lĕrīs.
*Te ŏ'rŏ Dā've,* ūt rĕ'dĕăt *jam īn vĭ'ăm.* Ter.

Ōm'nēs dĕ'nĭquĕ vŏ'cēs īndĕfīnī'tē[76] pŏ'sĭtæ, quā'lēs sūnt *quĭs, quān'tŭs, quŏ'tŭs,* &c. sūbjūnctī'vŭm pōs'tŭlānt : ŭt,

Cuī scrī'bām *vĭ'dĕō.* Cic.

——— Quān'tŭs
*Īn clÿ'pĕum* āssūr'gāt ; quō *tūr'bĭnĕ* tōr'quĕăt *hās'tăm.*

---

óften omítted áfter vŏ'lō, *I wish,* ŏpōr'tĕt, *it behóves,* fĕr, *do thou,* nĕcēs'sĕ ēst, *it is réquisite,* and a few óthers : as, fāc cō'gĭtēs, *do think,* for fāc ŭt cō'gĭtēs.

[76] By "*words put indéfinitely*" we are to understánd "*words emplóyed in an unrestrícted, doúbtful,* or *undefíned sense,*" partícularly *Interrógatives,* whéther indeéd, they be *Nouns* or *Prónouns* or *Ad'verbs* or *Conjúnctions.* But the same words, when emplóyed in a *restrícted* or *pósitive sense,* will have the indícative mood. And here it may be remárked that the conjúnctions, aū'tĕm, *but,* vē'rō, *but,* ĕ'nĭm, *for,* quŏ'quĕ, *álso,* and the ádverb quĭ'dĕm, *indeéd,* cánnot stand first in a séntence : and that ĕ'tĕnĭm, *for,* sĕd, *but,* ēr'gō, *thérefore,* ĭ'gĭtŭr, *for this or that reáson,* ĭ'tăquĕ, *thérefore,* and séveral óthers, are sómetimes the first word, and sómetimes the sécond or third. There are few points in Látin more dífficult than the próper use of conjúnctions : the fóllowing rules it is hóped will be found úseful.

1. Ŭt, quō, lĭ'cĕt, ŭ'tĭnăm, and dūm'mŏdŏ álmost álways have a subjúnctive mood ; as, Ăvā'rō quĭd mă'lī ōp'tēs nĭ'sī ŭt vī'văt dĭ'ū? Jŭ'vā mē quō ĭd fī'ăt făcĭ'lĭŭs. Dĭ'căm ĕ'quĭdĕm lĭ'cĕt ār'mă mĭ'hī mōrtĕm'quĕ mĭnē'tŭr. Īmmōrtā'lĭă nē spē'rēs mŏ'nĕt ān'nŭs. Ŭ'tĭnăm lībĕrō'rŭm nōstrō'rŭm mō'rēs nōn īp'sī pērdĕrē'mŭs. Ōm'nĭă hŏnēs'tă nēg'lĭgŭnt dūm'mŏdŏ pŏtēn'tĭăm cōnsĕquān'tŭr.

2. Ēt'sī, tămĕt'sī, quān'quăm, in the begínning of a séntence, requíre the indícative : as, Ēt'sī vĕ'rĕŏr jū'dĭcēs. Tămĕt'sī vĭcĭs'sĕ dĕ'bĕō. Quān'quăm ăctĭō'nĕm nōn dēsīdĕrā'băm.

3. Ĕtĭăm'sī and quām'vīs have génerally a subjúnctive, though sómetimes an indícative : as, Ĕtĭăm'sī māx'ĭmă sīnt. Quām'vīs Ēlÿ'sĭōs mīrē'tŭr Græ'cĭă cām'pōs. Īs'tă vē'rĭtās ĕtĭăm'sī jūcūn'dă nōn ēst.

4. Ŭt for quām'vīs admíts ónly a subjúnctive : as, Ŭt dĕ'sīnt vī'rēs tă'mĕn ēst laūdān'dă vŏlūn'tās.

5. Quŏ'nĭăm, quān'dŏ, quāndŏ'quĭdĕm have génerally an indícative : as, Quŏ'nĭăm nōn pŏ'tēst fĭ'ĕrī quŏd vīs. Quāndŏ ĕ gŏ tŭ'ŭm nōn cū'rō. Quāndŏ'quĭdĕm ĭn mōl'lī cōnsĕ'dĭmŭs hēr'bā.

6. Quīp'pĕ háving the meáning of năm requíres the indícative : as, Quīp'pĕ vĕ'tŏr fā'tīs.

7. Ŭt'pŏtĕ, and quīp'pĕ úsed for ūt'pŏtĕ, if fóllowed by quī, have génerally the subjúnctive, rárely the indícative ; if fóllowed by cŭm, have ónly the subjúnctive : as, Ŭt'pŏtĕ quī ĭn cēl'lăm aū'rŭm cōntŭ'lĕrĭt. Nōn īgnō'răt vŏlūptā'tĕm Ĕpĭcū'rŭs ūt'pŏtĕ quī tēstĭfĭcē'tŭr. Ŭt'pŏtĕ quī

## PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Constrúction of Prepositions.*

Præpŏsĭ'tĭō, sŭbaūdī'tă, īntēr'dŭm fă'cĭt ŭt āddā'tŭr āblātī'vŭs : ŭt,

*Hă'bĕō tē* lŏ'cō *părēn'tĭs :*
[ĭd ēst, *ĭn lŏ'cō.*]

Præpŏsĭ'tĭō, ĭn cōmpŏsĭtĭō'nĕ, ĕūn'dĕm nōnnūn'quăm cā'sŭm rĕ'gĭt, quĕm ĕt ēx'trā cōmpŏsĭtĭō'nĕm rĕgē'băt:[77] ŭt,

Dētrū'dūnt *nā'vēs* scŏ'pŭlō. Virg.
Prætĕ'rĕō tē *īnsălūtā'tŭm.*

Vĕr'bă cōmpŏ'sĭtă cŭm *ā, ăb, ăd, cōn, dē, ē, ēx, ĭn,* nōnnūn'quăm rĕ'pĕtūnt ĕās'dĕm præpŏsĭtĭō'nēs cŭm sŭ'ō cā'sū ēx'trā cōmpŏsĭtĭō'nĕm, īd'quĕ ēlĕgān'tĕr:[78] ŭt,

Ābstĭnŭē'rūnt ā *vī'nō.*

---

dĕpūgnā'vĭt. Quīp'pĕ quī ōp'tĭmōs cī'vēs jŭgŭlā'rī jūs'sĭt. Quīp'pĕ jūstĭ'tĭă sĭ'nĕ prūdēn'tĭā să'tĭs hă'bĕăt aūctōrĭtā'tĭs. Ŭt'pŏtĕ cŭm sĭ'nĕ fĕ'brē lăbōrās'sĕm.

8. Quŏd and quĭ'ă, háving a définite meáning, requíre the indícative, háving an indéfinite meáning, requíre the subjúnctive : as, Bĕ'nĕ fă'cĭs quŏd mē ādjū'vās. Quĭ'ă āccēs'sĭt pĕcū'nĭă sūblā'tī sūnt ă'nĭmī. Quŏd Nă'sĭcăm dĕfēndĭs'sĕt lĕ'vĭtĕr sūccēn'sŭĭt. Nē'mō īp'săm vŏlūptā'tĕm, quĭ'ă vŏlūp'tās sĭt, āspērnā'tŭr.

9. Cŭm, háving the meáning of quŏ'nĭăm, requíres the subjúnctive ; háving the meáning of quŏd, génerally requíres an indícative : as, Cŭm ră'pĭānt mă'lă fā'tă bŏ'nōs. Tĭ'bĭ grā'tĭās ă'gō cŭm tān'tŭm mĕ'æ lītĕ'ræ pŏtŭē'rūnt.

10. Sī, sīn, nĭ'sĭ, sĭ'quĭdĕm sómetimes requíre the subjúnctive, sómetimes the indícative : as, Sī īl'lŭm rĕlīn'quō ĕ'jŭs vī'tæ tĭ'mĕō. Mī'rŭm nī dŏ'mī ēst. Nĭ'sĭ mē ōm'nĭă fāl'lānt. Sĭ'quĭdĕm quæ nūncĭān tŭr vē'ră sūnt. Sī ĭd scĭs'sĕm nūn'quăm hūc rĕtŭlĭs'sĕm pĕ'dĕm. Sīn ĭd pă'rŭm prōcē'dăt. Nī nōs'sĕm caū'săm crē'dĕrĕm hūnc lŏ'quī vē'rŭm. Nĕc vē'nī nĭ'sĭ fā'tă lŏ'cŭm dĕdĭs'sēnt. Ō mō'rĕm prǣclā'rŭm sĭ'quĭdĕm tĕnērē'mŭs.

Sī háving the meáning of quām'vĭs génerally requíres the subjúnctive : as, Nōn sī mē ōb'sĕcrĕt. Yet it sómetimes has the indícative : as, Vē'rŭm, sī cōgnā'tă ēst māx'ĭmē.

11. Dŭm háving the meáning of dūm'mŏdŏ, and quīn háving the meáning of quŏd nōn, requíre the subjúnctive : as, Ō'dĕrīnt dŭm mĕ'tŭānt. Nōn quīn īp'sĕ dīssēn'tĭăm.

[77] A preposítion in composítion séldom góverns a case unléss the verb and preposítion can be disjoíned withoút détriment to the sense :—thus, of the two exámples gíven in the text, the one may be resólved into *trū'dūnt nā'vēs dē scŏ'pŭlō;* and the óther ínto *ĕ'ō prǣ'tĕr tē īnsălūtā'tŭm.*

[78] It is óftentimes more élegant, and sómetimes more expréssive, to

Ĭn, prō *ē'rgā*, *cōn'trā*, *ăd*, ĕt *sŭ'prā*,[79] āccūsātī'vŭm ēx'ĭgĭt; ŭt,

*Āc'cĭpĭt* īn Tcū'crōs *ă'nĭmŭm*, *mēntēm'quĕ bĕnīg'năm*.
Īn cōm'mŏdă *pūb'lĭcă pēc'cēm*. Hor.
Ĭn rēg'nŭm *quæ'rĭtŭr hæ'rēs*.
Rĕ'gēs ĭn *īp'sōs īmpĕ'rĭum ēst Jŏ'vĭs*. Hor.

Sŭb, cŭm ăd tēm'pŭs rĕfēr'tŭr, āccūsātī'vō fĕ'rĕ jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,

Sŭb *ĭ'dĕm* tēm'pŭs: Liv.
[*ĭd ēst*, cīr'cā *vĕl* pĕr *ĭ'dĕm tēm'pŭs*.]

Sŭ'pĕr, prō *ūl'trā*, āccūsātī'vō; prō *dē*, āblātī'vō āppō'nĭtŭr: ŭt,

——— Sŭ'pĕr *ēt* Gărămān'tăs *ĕt* Īn'dōs.
*Prō'fĕrĕt īmpĕ'rĭŭm.*———Virg.
*Mūl'tă* sŭ'pēr Prĭ'ămō *rŏ'gĭtāns*, sŭ'pĕr Hēc'tŏrĕ *mūl'tă*.

Tĕ'nŭs āblātī'vō ĕt sīngŭlā'rī, ĕt plūrā'lī, jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,
*Pū'bĕ tĕ'nŭs.*
*Pēctŏ'rĭbŭs tĕ'nŭs.*

Ăt gĕnĭtī'vō tān'tŭm plūrā'lī:—ĕt sēm'pĕr cā'sŭm sŭ'ŭm sĕ'quĭtŭr: ŭt,

*Crū'rŭm tĕ'nŭs.*

## INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Constrúction of Interjéctions.*

Īntērjēctĭō'nēs nōn rā'rō sĭ'nĕ cā'sū pōnūn'tŭr; ŭt,
*Spēm grĕ'gĭs*, āh! *sĭ'lĭce īn nū'dā cōnnīx'ă rĕlĭ'quĭt.*
*Quæ*, mă'lŭm, *dēmēn'tĭă!*

*Ō*, ēxclāmān'tĭs, nōmĭnātī'vō, āccūsātī'vō, ĕt vŏcātī'vō, jūn'gĭtŭr: ŭt,

---

use a verb compoúnded with one of these prepositions, than to use the símple verb, in the véry same sense:—thus, to say, nĭ'hĭl ēxī'băt ēx ō'rĕ, *nóthing went out from his mouth*, is more élegant and more expréssive than to say, nĭ'hĭl ī'băt ēx ō'rĕ, *nóthing went out of his mouth:* in like mánner, the phrase īnjĭ'cĕrĕ mă'nūs īn ă'lĭquĕm, *to throw on hands upón ány one*, is more élegant than the phrase jă'cĕrĕ mă'nūs īn ă'lĭquĕm, *to throw hands upón ány one.*

79 To these four might be ádded *pĕr:* as, in the phrase, īn hō'rās, *through* or *ínto hours*, that is, *hoúrly* or *évery hour:*—so, líkewise, īn dĭ'ēs sīn'gŭlōs, *through indivídual days*, that is, *daíly.* When *īn* is put for *īn'tĕr* it takes an áblative áfter it: as, īn ămī'cīs hăbē'rĕ, *to have amóng friends*, that is, *in the númber of one's friends.*

Ō *fēs'tŭs* dĭ'ēs *hŏ'mĭnĭs!* Ter.
Ō *fōrtūnā'tōs nĭ'mĭūm, sŭ'ă sī bŏ'nă nŏ'rĭnt,*
Āgrĭ'cŏlās!—Virg.
Ō *fōrmō'sĕ* pŭ'ēr! *nĭ'mĭūm nē crē'dĕ cŏlō'rī.* Ibid.

Heū ĕt *prōh*, nūnc nomĭnātī'vō, nūnc āccūsātī'vō, jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

Heū pĭ'ĕtās, heū *prĭs'că* fĭ'dēs. Virg.
Heū stĭr'pem *īnvī'săm*. Ibid.
Prōh Jū'pĭtēr! *tū me, hŏ'mo, ă'dĭgĭs ăd īnsā'nĭăm.* Ter.
Prōh *Dē'ūm āt'que hŏ'mĭnūm* fĭ'dēm! Ibid.

Ĭ'tĕm vŏcātī'vō: ŭt,

Prōh *sānc'tĕ* Jū'pĭtĕr! Cic.

Heī ĕt *væ* dătī'vō[80] jūngūn'tŭr: ŭt,

Heī mĭ'hĭ *quōd nūl'līs ă'mŏr ēst mĕdĭcā'bĭlĭs hēr'bīs!*
Væ *mĭ'sĕrō* mĭ'hĭ! *quān'tā dē spē dē'cĭdī!* Ter.

# PROSODIA.

Prŏsō'dĭă ēst pārs Grāmmă'tĭcæ, quæ Quāntĭtā'tĕm Sÿllăbā'rūm dŏ'cĕt.

Dīvĭ'dĭtŭr Prŏsō'dĭă ĭn trēs păr'tēs, *Tŏ'nŭm, Spī'rĭtŭm,* ĕt *Tēm'pŭs.*

Hōc lŏ'cō vī'sŭm ēst nō'bīs dē *Tēm'pŏrĕ* tān'tŭm trāctā'rĕ.

Tĕm'pŭs ēst sÿl'lăbæ prōfĕrēn'dæ mēnsū'ră.

[80] Interjéctions béing nóthing more than ejáculative párticles of *Joy, Surpríse, Sórrow,* or some óther súdden emótion of mind, they can have neíther cóncord nor góvernment: and, thérefore, the cáses wherewíth they are joíned, or wherebý they are fóllowed, álways depénd on some óther word, or phrase understoód. In some ínstances the ímport of an interjéction approáches clósely to that of a verb, and in óthers to that of a noun; hence, we may, in those ínstances, view the interjéction in the light of a súbstitute for the verb or noun which it approáches in meáning: thus, for exámple, in the phrase, Ō mē mĭ'sĕrŭm, *O wrétched me,* the interjéction Ō seems to convéy the sense of sēn'tĭō, *I feel* or *I perceíve:*—again, in the phrase, hēm āstū'tĭās, *hah! the craft,* the interjéction *hēm* is álmost synónymous with, vĭ'dĕŏr mĭ'hĭmĕt mīrā'rī, *I seem to mysélf to admíre:*—so *heī* and *væ* have génerally a signification bórdering on that of mă'lŭm, *évil* or *míschief;* hence, *heī mĭ'hĭ* or *væ mĭ'hĭ* may be regárded as equívalent to mă'lŭm est mĭ'hĭ, *it is an évil* or *a calámity to me.*

Tēm′pŭs brĕ′vĕ sīc nŏtā′tŭr (˘); ŭt, *dŏ′mĭnŭs*: lōn′gŭm aū′tĕm sīc (¯); ŭt, *cōn′trā*.

Pēs dŭā′rŭm sȳllăbā′rŭm plūrĭūm′vĕ cōnstĭtū′tĭŏ ēst, ēx cēr′tā Tēm′pŏrŭm ōbsērvātĭō′nĕ.

Spōndæ′ŭs ēst dīssȳl′lăbŭs; ŭt, *vīr′tūs*.

Dāc′tўlŭs ēst trĭsȳl′lăbŭs; ŭt, *scrī′bĕrĕ*.[1]

Scān′sĭŏ ēst lēgĭ′tĭmă vēr′sūs ĭn sīn′gŭlōs pĕ′dēs cōmmēnsūrā′tĭŏ.

Scānsĭō′nī āc′cĭdūnt Fĭgū′ræ, *Sўnălœ′phă*, *Ēcthlīp′sĭs*, *Sўnæ′rĕsĭs*, *Dĭæ′rĕsĭs*, ĕt *Cæsū′ră*.[2]

I. *Sўnălœ′phă* ēst ēlī′sĭŏ vōcā′lĭs ĭn fī′nĕ dīctĭō′nĭs, ān′tĕ āl′tĕrăm ĭn ĭnĭ′tĭō sĕquēn′tĭs:[3] ŭt,

---

[1] Since the E′ton Grámmar treats of no more than two dífferent sorts of Verse, námely, *Heróïc* and *Elegíac*, it was not nécessary to méntion ány óther feet than those of which these two sorts consíst,—that is *Spóndees* and *Dáctyles*. Of late years, howéver, Prósody and Versificátion have desérvedly becóme óbjects of greáter atténtion in most of the Grámmar Schools of this émpire; and, therefóre, it is réquisite to nótice a few more (at least) of the *Métrical Feet*, and a few more Spécies of Látin Verse; but it is (of course) ónly a few of each which we can nótice, as our límits are so confíned. In addítion, then, to *Spóndees* and *Dáctyles*, there are in cómmon use,

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. The *Pýrrhic*, | díssyllable feet | ˘ ˘ | as | ă′pĭs, *a bee*, |
| 2. The *Iámbus*, | | ˘ ¯ | | ŏ′vēs, *sheep*, |
| 3. The *Tróchee*, | | ¯ ˘ | | cē′ră, *wax*, |
| 4. The *A′napæst*, | trísyllable feet | ˘ ˘ ¯ | as | cĕ′cĭnī, *I sang*, |
| 5. The *Tríbrach*, | | ˘ ˘ ˘ | | fĭ′dĭcĕn, *a hárper*. |

Besídes the *ánapæst* and the *tríbrach*, there are five óther trísyllable feet; námely, the *amphímacer* or *crétic* [¯˘¯], the *molóssus* [¯¯¯], the *ámphibrach* [˘¯˘], the *bacchíus* [˘¯¯], and the *antibacchíus* [¯¯˘].

The feet of four sýllables are véry númerous:—but we shall contént oursélves here with the fóllowing four:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. The *Choriámbus*, | ¯˘˘¯ | thus | prætĕ′rēā, *moreóver*, |
| 2. The *Proceleusmátic*, | ˘˘˘˘ | | cĕlĕ′rĭtĕr, *swiftly*, |
| 3. The *Iónic à mājō′rĕ*, | ¯¯˘˘ | | cōntēn′dĭtĕ, *strive ye*. |
| 4. The *Iónic à mĭnō′rĕ*, | ˘˘¯¯ | | mĕdĭtā′rī, *to méditate*. |

[2] In addítion to these five Fígures of Prósody, suffíce it, in this place, to give three more,—námely, *Sýstolĕ*, *Diástolĕ*, and *Synapheía*. In the Appéndix to this Work most of the Fígures belónging to Prósody, in cómmon with Etymólogy and Sýntax, will be (bríefly) enúmerated—únder those respéctive heads. By *Sýstolĕ* a long sýllable is shórtened: by *Diástolĕ*, cálled álso *Ec′tasis*, a short sýllable is léngthened: and, by *Synapheía*, verses of some particular kinds (as, for exámple, *anapǽstics*,) are línked togéther withoút regárd to the métrical pause which marks the terminátion of a verse in géneral.

[3] A fínal vówel or díphthong is not (strictly speáking) elíded *in tóto* by the Fígure Synalœ′pha, but véry much curtaíled,—and álmost cut

*Sē′ră nĭ′mĭs vī′ta ēst crās′tĭnă, vī′ve hŏ′dĭē.* Mart.
[Prō *vī′tă, vī′vĕ.*]
Ăt *heū* ĕt *Ō* nūn′quăm īntērcĭpĭūn′tŭr.[4]

II. Ĕcthlīp′sĭs ēst, quŏ′tĭēs *m* cŭm sŭ′ā vōcā′lĭ[5] pĕrĭ′mĭtŭr, prōx′ĭmā dīctĭō′nĕ ā vōcā′lī ēxōr′sā : ŭt,

Mōn′strum hōrrēn′dum, īnfōr′me, *īn′gēns, cuī lū′mĕn ădēm′ptŭm.* Virg.

[Prō *mōn′strŭm hōrrēn′dŭm, īnfōr′mĕ.*]

III. Sȳnæ′rĕsĭs ēst dŭā′rŭm sȳllăbā′rŭm[6] ĭn ū′năm cōntrāc′tĭō : ŭt,

*Seū lēn′tō fŭ′ĕrĭnt* ālveā′rĭă *vī′mĭnĕ tēx′tă.* Virg.
[Quă′sĭ scrīp′tŭm ēs′sĕt *ālvā′rĭă.*]

---

off : still, howéver, a shádow or faint sound of the vówel or díphthong remains :—thus, *tŏ′gă ĕt* would in póetry be pronoúnced *tŏ′ga ĕt,* and not *tójet !* I speak of módern pronunciátion ; for the Látins soúnded *g* hard befóre évery vówel.

Sómetimes the fígure *Synalǽpha* is (inténtionally) neglécted by the Látin póets in imitátion of the Greeks, who, fond of the vówel sounds, véry fréquently consídered the omíssion of this fígure to be a great embéllishment to their póetry : sómetimes, líkewise, in imitátion of the práctice of the same peóple, a long vówel, or a díphthong, at the end of a word, is shórtened in Látin, insteád of béing elíded, befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong : thus, in the 437 verse of the first Book of the Geórgics [Glaū′cō, ĕt Pănŏpē′æ, ĕt Īnō′ō Mĕlĭcĕr′tæ] the ō in Glaū′cō is neíther elíded nor made short befóre the inítial vówel which fóllows, whilst the díphthong (æ) at the end of Pănŏpē′æ, is shórtened but not cut off.—A judícious negléct, or ónly pártial admíssion, of this fígure has cértainly a beaútiful efféct. But here we must obsérve, that in Látin póetry a short vówel is véry rárely exémpted from *synalǽpha.* At the end of a verse, *synalǽpha* néver takes place unléss the last sýllable of the verse be hypérmeter or óver meásure.

4 And símilarly the five interjéctions *āh, væ, vāh, heī, prōh,* are séldom or néver eíther elíded or shórtened. But *O* is, sómetimes, made short befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong.

5 In the eárlier Látin póets, the fígure Ecthlípsis was sómetimes neglécted : few exámples howéver of this negléct are to be found in the wrítings of the Augústan age,—and, áfter that péríod, none. Vírgil fúrnishes not a síngle ínstance, neíther does O′vid : and Hórace has ónly one. At the end of a verse Echthlípsis néver takes place befóre a vówel or díphthong begínning the next line, unléss the fínal syllable be hypérmeter : yet in *Anapǽstics,* and *Iónics à minóre,* whereín the fínal sýllable is afféctted by the fígure *Synapheía,* care must be táken that no verse (of exáctly its próper númber of sýllables) end in *m* when the next verse begíns with a vówel or a díphthong.

6 By *Synǽresis* two syllables are redúced to one in the pronunciátion, without the disappeárance of ány létter in the wríting :—thus,

IV. Dĭæ′rĕsĭs ēst, ŭ′bĭ ēx ū′nā sȳl′lăbā dīssēc′tā fī′ūnt dŭ′æ: ŭt,

*Dēbŭ′ĕrānt fū′sōs* ēvŏlŭīs′sĕ *sŭ′ōs.* Ovid.
[*Ēvŏlŭīs′sĕ* prō *ēvōlvīs′sĕ.*]

V. Cæsū′rā ēst, cŭm pōst pĕ′dĕm[7] ābsŏlū′tŭm, sȳl′lăbă brĕ′vĭs ĭn fī′nĕ dīctĭō′nĭs ēxtēn′dĭtŭr: ŭt,

*Pēctŏ′rĭ*būs *ĭn′hĭāns, spīrān′tĭă cōn′sŭlĭt ēx′tă.* Virg.

## DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.[8]

Vēr′sŭs Hērō′ĭcŭs, quī Hēxă′mĕtĕr[9] ĕ′tĭăm dī′cĭtŭr, cōn′stăt ēx sēx pĕ′dĭbŭs: quīn′tŭs lŏ′cŭs dāc′tȳlŭm, sēx′tŭs

grăvĕ′ŏlēns, *rank-smélling,* or sēmĭă′nĭmĭs, *half dead,* are by this fígure óften pronoúnced as though wrítten.—*gră′vŏlēns, sēmă′nĭmĭs.* Some prosódians refér these to *Synalœpha,* and perháps jústly. When two sýllables are drawn ínto one, eíther by the únion of two vówels fórming a proper díphthong, as in dēīn′dĕ, *áfterwards,* when pronoúnced *deīn′dĕ,* or by the disappeárance of one of two short vówels to form a long vówel, as in cŏ′ăgō, *I drive togéther,* redúced to *cō′gō,* the Fígure has the name of *Crásis* insteád of Synæ′resis. In mány ínstances, eíther the one, or the óther, of these two may be úsed with álmost équal propríety:—thus, for exámple, we may write eíther *diī* or *dí, diīs* or *dís, deēst* or *dêst,* as mónosyllables; and, in like mánner, eíther, *iī′dĕm* or *í′dĕm, iīs′dĕm* or *ís′dĕm, deē′rō* or *dé′rō, deē′rĭt* or *dé′rĭt,* as díssyllables: and so forth. But sómetimes it is nécessary to retaín both vówels in the cháracter of an impróper díphthong.

[7] The definítion of *Cæsúra,* here gíven, is cértainly véry vague, and incorréct. *Cæsúra* sígnifies "*a cútting off,*" and is the name applíed to ány fínal sýllable that remaíns áfter a pérfect foot in póetry,—withoút réference to the quántity of the sýllable so remaíning. On évery cæsúral sýllable there is nécessarily, in scánning *Heröíc* and *Elegíac* Vérses, a greáter stress of voice laid, than there would be upón the same sýllable, if it did not begín a foot. This stress, or (as it is términed) *métrical íctus,* togéther with the intervérbal pause which fóllows, the póets considered a suffícient plea in some ínstances for the exténsion of a short quántity in the cæsúral sýllable. An unelíded long vówel or díphthong, in the cæsúra áfter the fourth foot of an hexámeter, partícularly in próper names, has a most pleásing effect befóre an inítial vówel or díphthong,—províded (ónly) that vérses of this descríption are not too fréquently repeáted.

[8] A síngle line in póetry is cálled a verse, and consísts of two or more feet, eíther pérfect or incompléte, which feet or parts of a foot must in reáding the verse be dûly atténded to, that the hármony be neíther destróyed nor léssened.

Vérses sómetimes take their name from the feet which móstly predóminate in them; as the *Dáctylic, Iámbic, Trocháïc, Anapæ̂stic, Choriámbic, &c.:* and sómetimes álso from the númber of feet, or the númber of meásures, in them; as, *Dímeter, Trímeter, Tetrámeter, Pentámeter,*

spōndæ'ŭm pĕcūlĭā'rĭtĕr sĭ'bĭ vīn'dĭcăt; rĕ'lĭquī hūnc, vĕl īl'lŭm, prŏ'ŭt vŏ'lŭmŭs: ŭt,

1 2 3 4 5 6
*Tĭ'tўrĕ | tū pă'tŭ|læ rĕ'cŭ|bāns sŭb | tēg'mĭnĕ | fā'gī.*

Rĕpĕrī'tŭr ălĭquān'dŏ spōndæ'ŭs ĕ'tĭăm ĭn quīn'tō lŏ'cō:[10] ŭt,

1 2 3 4 5 6
*Cā'ră Dĕ|ūm sŏ'bŏ|lēs, māg'|nūm Jŏ'vĭs | īncrē|mēn'tŭm.*

Ūl'tĭmă cūjūscūn'quĕ vēr'sūs sўl'lăbă hăbē'tŭr cōmmū'nĭs.[11]

---

*Hexámeter, &c.* Not unfréquently, too, a verse bórrows its appellátion from the name of its invéntor, as the *Alcáïc,* the *Sápphic,* the *Anacreóntic;* else from the súbject which it célebrates, as the *Heróïc* or *Elegíac.*

A verse wánting one sýllable, at the end, to compléte the meásure is cálled *Cataléctic:* a verse defícient by two sýllables at the end, *Brachycataléctic:* a verse wánting one sýllable at the begínning, *Acéphalous:* a verse háving neíther defíciency nor redúndancy, *Acataléctic:* and a verse háving a redúndant sýllable or a redúndant foot at the end, *Hypercataléctic* or *Hypérmeter.*

9 The *Heróïc* (or *Dáctylic Hexámeter*) Verse consísts of six feet; whereóf the fifth is génerally a dáctyle, and the sixth a spóndee:—the óther feet, that is, the first, sécond, third, and fourth, may be eíther spóndees, or dáctyles, at pleásure. In Dáctylic Hexámeter vérses the feet ought to run ínto one anóther; for when the words and the feet end togéther throughoút a verse, there is no hármony whatéver. If áfter the first, and álso the sécond, and (in like mánner) the third foot, or áfter a majórity of these three, a sýllable remaín, the rhythm is, by far, more agreéable than when there is an ábsence of one or more of these cæsúral sýllables.

10 A spóndee séldom cónstitutes the fifth foot of an heróic verse excépt in sólemn, or majéstic, or moúrnful descríptions. Vérses, which have a spóndee in the fifth place, are cálled *Spondáïc;* but of these the too fréquent recúrrence is the fárthest from an órnament to póetry,—whereás a spare and a judícious use of them is one of its greátest beaúties.

11 The sense of these words is in some degreé ambíguous:—for, it is assúredly úntrue that the last sýllable of évery verse is cómmon, and yet it is true that, in mány kinds of verse, the last sýllable may be eíther long, or short, at pleásure, withoút much ínjury in the one ínstance, or advántage in the óther, to the rhythm. For exámple, the last foot of évery heróic verse ought to be a spóndee; but a tróchee may be substituted for a spóndee, becaúse the métrical pause at the end of the line cómpensates, in some meásure, for the shórtness of the last sýllable: in like mánner a pýrrhic is unobjéctionable in lieu of an iámbus in the last foot of ány iámbic verse. Again, évery sápphic verse should términate with a tróchee, but, insteád of a tróchee, a spóndee may be úsed withoút détriment to the rhythm.

Vĕr'sŭs Ĕlĕgī'ăcŭs, quī ĕt Pĕntă'mĕtrī[12] nō'mĕn hă'bĕt, ē dŭ'plĭcī cōn'stăt pēnthēmĭ'mĕrī ; quā'rŭm prĭ'ŏr dŭ'ōs pĕ'dēs, dāctў'lĭcōs, spōndĭ'ăcōs, vĕl āltĕrŭ'trōs cōmprĕhēn'dĭt, cŭm sўl'lăbā lōngā ; āl'tĕrā, ĕ'tĭăm, dŭ'ōs pĕ'dēs, sĕd ōmnĭ'nō dāctў'lĭcōs cŭm sўl'lăbā ĭ'tĕm lōn'gā : ŭt,

1 2 C 3 4 C
*Rēs ēst | sōllĭ'cĭ|tī | plē'nă tĭ | mō'rĭs ă | mŏr.*[13] Ovid.

[12] The *Elegíac* or (*Dáctylic Pentámeter*) *Verse* consísts (as its name índicates) of five feet, of which the first two may be eíther *dáctyles* or *spóndees*, fóllowed by a *long sýllable*, which must close a word, divíding the verse ínto équal pórtions or halves ; then come *two dáctyles*, and agaín a *sýllable*, which with the cæsúral sýllable befóre méntioned cónstitutes an intercépted *spóndee*. The áncients were divíded in their opínion respécting the true scánsion of this verse,—some of them máking the *third foot a spóndee*, and the *last two feet*, *ánapæsts*. Whichéver be the mode of scánning adópted, the constrúction of the verse is the same. Insteád of a sýllable long by úsage or by posítion, we sómetimes find a sýllable léngthened by cæsúra in the míddle of a Pentámeter, but this is álways a blémish :—a mónosyllable, howéver, eíther long in itsélf, else réndered long by posítion, is unobjéctionable in the conclúsion of the first hémistich. An elegíac verse is génerally precéded by, and coúpled with, an hexámeter ; and should términate with a *díssyllable*, and a *full stop :* a trísyllable is admíssible, but a mónosyllable must be rejécted in the conclúsion of a Pentámeter, unless it occásions the elísion of the fínal sýllable of a díssyllable. A word of four sýllables is not an unharmónicus énding, though inférior in cádence to a díssyllable. The feet of an elegíac verse ought to run ínto one anóther like those of heróïcs.

[13] In addítion to the observátions which we have alreády made on *Heróïc* and *Elegíac* Verse, we shall (briéfly) nótice a few of the fóllowing : *Iámbic*, *Trochắïc*, *Anapǽstic*, *Iónic*, and the more cómmon sorts of *Lýric Verse*.

1. *Iámbics.*

An Iámbic Verse, when pure, consísts of iámbuses ónly, two feet álways cónstituting a meásure. The conclúding sýllable of évery meásure (the last perháps excépted) receíves on it an émphasis or a *métrical íctus*,—and ought thérefore to be eíther an accénted sýllable, else a fínal sýllable. Iámbic verse is found of várious lengths, from the *tetrámeter* down to the *díméter catalḗctic*, cálled álso *Anacreóntic :* but the more cómmon lengths are the *díméter* or *trímeter acatalḗctic*. Insteád of an iámbus in the odd pláces, a spóndee was at first admítted ; and, áfterwards, an ánapæst or a dáctyle : and in all the éven pláces (excépt the last) a tríbrach óften occúrs for an iámbus. The cómic póets, howéver, and Phǽdrus, admít all these feet indiscríminately ínto évery place excépt the last, and moreóver ány feet isóchronal with these : nor do they rejéct the amphímacer, the ámphibrach, and some óthers.

2. *Trocháïcs.*

As an *iámbus* is the véry revérse of a *tróchee*, so Trocháïc Vérses are the véry revérse of Iámbic Vérses : for, if the first half foot of a pure

## PRIMARUM AC MEDIARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vōcā'lĭs ān'tĕ dŭ'ās cōnsŏnān'tēs aūt dŭ'plĭcĕm ĭn ĕā'dĕm dīctĭō'nĕ, ŭbĭ'quĕ pŏsĭtĭō'nĕ lōn'gă ēst: ŭt, *vēn'tŭs, āx'ĭs pă'trĭ'zŏ, cŭ'jŭs.* [See note 5, page 2, above,]

---

iámbic verse be táken from the begínning, and pláced at the end, the Iámbic is convérted ínto a Trocháïc. Or, in óther words, a Trocháïc Verse, when pure, has évery foot a tróchee : impúre or míxed Trocháïcs admít spóndees, dáctyles, tríbrachs, and perháps ánapæsts (though more rárely) in all the éven pláces.

### 3. *Anapǽstics.*

An *Anapǽstic* Verse is eíther *pure*, or *impúre;* that is, it consísts sólely of *ánapæsts*, or is made up in whole or in part of óther feet. As in *Iámbic* and *Trocháïc* Vérses, so in *Anapǽstics*, two feet cónstitute a meásure : but here évery meásure ought (if póssible) to términate togéther with a word, so that the vérses may at pleásure be wrítten of ány length from the monómeter úpwards, withoút the divísion of a word. Anapǽstic dímeters are (as the name impórts) vérses of two meásures each ; but they véry rárely occúr pure, spóndees béing admíssible ínto évery place, and dáctyles ínto the first foot (sómetimes, though séldom, ínto the sécond) of évery meásure. Hence it óften háppens, that, in anapǽstic vérses, not one foot of the verse is an ánapæst. The fínal sýllable of each acataléctic verse must have respéct to the inítial sýllable of the next line, as the vérses are línked togéther by the fígure cálled *Synapheía.* An *Anapǽstic Dímeter Cataléctic* is fréquently subjoined to a sýstem of *Anapǽstics*, by way of conclúsion,—or else of témporary reliéf to the ear ; and admíts a spóndee ínto the first and álso sécond foot, but has génerally the third foot pure, with a cæsúral sýllable óver.

### 4. *Iónics.*

An *Iónic* Verse *à mājō'rĕ* consísts whólly (when pure) of *májor iónic* feet : and, in like mánner, an *Iónic* Verse *à mĭnō'rĕ* consísts entírely (when pure) of *mínor iónic* feet. The more úsual length of the first spécies is three meásures and a half, each foot coúnting for a meásure. A doúble tróchee is admíssible ínto the sécond and third pláces, and sómetimes ínto the first. Moreóver, a long sýllable may be resólved ínto two short sýllables in ány one of the meásures. The *Iónic à mĭnōrĕ* is perháps never found impúre, and consísts génerally of four meásures, such, that withoút eíther a divísion of ány word, or a cláshing of ány sýllables, the verse may be shórtened to a monómeter, or exténded *ad líbitum.*

### 5. *Lýrics.*

*Lýric Vérses* are those which were sung to the músic of the lyre, and occúr of várious lengths and constrúction, béing sómetimes pórtions of one or more of the spécies alreády enúmerated, and sómetimes a partícular arrángement of feet accórding to the fáncy of the compóser. Here we shall nótice ónly the fóllowing few.

I. *The Sápphic*, which consísts of a tróchee, a spóndee, a dáctyle,

II. Quŏd sī cōn′sŏnāns prĭō′rĕm dīctĭō′nĕm claū′dăt, sĕquēn′tĕ ĭ′tĕm ā cōnsŏnān′tĕ ĭnchŏān′tĕ, vōcā′lĭs præcē′dēns ĕ′tĭăm pŏsĭtĭō′nĕ lōn′gă ĕ′rĭt ; ŭt,

*Mā′*jōr sūm quām *cuī pōs′*sĭt *fōrtū′nă nŏcē′rĕ.*

[Syl′lăbæ *-jŏr*, *sŭm*, *quăm*, ĕt *sĭt* pŏsĭtĭō′nĕ lōn′gæ sūnt.]

III. Ăt, sī prĭ′ŏr dīc′tĭŏ ĭn vōcā′lĕm brĕ′vĕm ēx′ĕăt, sĕ-

---

and two tróchees : in all, eléven sýllables. With the fifth half foot a word must términate, ótherwise the verse is faúlty. A Sápphic Stánza génerally contaíns three sápphic vérses fóllowed by an *Adónic*, that is, a dáctyle, and a spóndee or tróchee.

II. *The Phaleúcian* or *Hendecasýllabus*, which is (líkewise) a verse of five feet, and, as its name impórts, comprísés (in all) eléven sýllables. The first foot is a spóndee, sómetimes, but véry rárely, an iámbus, or a tróchee : the sécond, a dáctyle,—for which a spóndee may occásionally be súbstituted : and the remaíning three feet are tróchees.

III. *The Alcáïc májor*, which is a verse of four feet, with a long cæsúral sýllable áfter the sécond foot, which must álways be an iámbus : the first foot may be eíther an iámbus, or a spóndee ; and the last two feet are dáctyles.

IV. *The Alcáïc mínor*, which consísts of two dáctyles fóllowed by two tróchees. The *Cármen Horatiánum* (so cálled áfter Hórace who emplóyed it in a great mány of his Odes) has two *májor Alcáïcs* for the first two vérses of thé stánza, and an *Alcáïc mínor* álways for the fourth.

V. *The Asclépiad* or *Choriámbic Dímeter Intérposite*, which is made up of two choriámbuses interpósed betweén a spóndee and an iámbus or pýrrhic. Each choriámbus should términate with the terminátion of a word :—unléss the first choriámbus (at least) términate in this way, the verse is faúlty.

VI. *The Archilóchian Iámbic Dímeter Hypérmeter*, which contaíns four feet and a half : these are sómetimes (though rárely) all iámbuses : more cómmonly the first and third feet are spóndees. This verse cónstitutes the third of the stánza cálled *Cármen Horatiánum.*

VII. *The Archilóchian Trocháïc Heptámeter*, which álways consísts of the first four feet of a dáctylic hexámeter, fóllowed by three tróchees.

VIII. *The Choriámbic Trímeter Intérposite*, which is made up of three choriámbuses interpósed betweén a spóndee and an iámbus or pýrrhic,—with the same restríction as the *Asclépiad.*

IX. *The Glycónic*, which consísts of a spóndee and two dáctyles.

X. *The Pherecrátic*, which álso contaíns three feet, námely a dáctyle betweén two spóndees.

XI. *The Dáctylic Tetrámeter à pōstĕrĭō′rĕ*, which consísts of the last four feet of a dáctylic hexámeter.

XII. *The Dáctylic Trímeter Cathaléctic*, which consísts of two dáctyles and a cæsúral sýllable.—This verse is most cómmonly subjoíned to a dáctylic hexámeter.

XIII. *The Scazóntic*, which díffers from a trímeter iámbic verse simply in that it has a spóndee in the last place, and an iámbus in the fifth.

quēn′tĕ ā dŭā′bŭs cōnsŏnān′tĭbŭs īncĭpĭēn′tĕ,—īntēr′dŭm, sĕd ră′rĭŭs,—prōdŭ′cĭtŭr : ŭt,

*Ōccūl′tā*[14] *spŏ′lĭă.* Juv.

IV. Vōcā′lĭs brĕ′vĭs ān′tĕ mū′tăm, sĕquēn′tĕ lĭ′quĭdā, cōmmū′nĭs rēd′dĭtŭr :—ŭt, *pă′trĭs, vŏlŭ′crĭs.* Lōn′gă, vĕ′rō, nōn mūtā′tŭr :—ŭt, *ărā′trŭm, sĭmŭlā′crŭm.*

---

VŌCA′LĬS āntĕ āl′tĕrăm ĭn ĕā′dĕm dīctĭō′nĕ ŭbī′quĕ brĕ′vĭs ēst : ŭt, *Dĕ′ŭs, mĕ′ŭs, tŭ′ŭs, pĭ′ŭs.*

1. Ēxcĭ′pĭās gĕnĭtī′vōs ĭn *-īŭs*, sĕcūn′dăm prōnō′mĭnĭs fōr′măm hăbēn′tēs : ŭt, *ūnī′ŭs, īllī′ŭs, &c.* ŭ′bĭ *i* cōmmū′nĭs rĕpĕrī′tŭr : lĭ′cĕt ĭn *ăltĕ′rĭŭs* sēm′pĕr sĭt brĕ′vĭs, ĭn *ălī′ŭs* sēm′pĕr lōn′gă.

2. Ēxcĭpĭēn′dī sūnt, ĕ′tĭăm, gĕnĭtī′vī ĕt dătī′vī quīn′tæ dēclīnātĭō′nĭs, ŭ′bĭ *e* īn′tĕr gĕ′mĭnŭm *i* lōn′gă fĭt :—ŭt, *făcĭē′ī, ălĭō′quī nōn ; ŭt, rĕ′ī, spĕ′ī, fĭ′dĕī.*

*Fi-* ĕ′tĭăm ĭn *fī′ō* lōn′gă ēst, nĭ′sĭ sĕquūntŭr *e* ĕt *r* sĭ′mŭl ; ŭt, *fĭ′ĕrēm, fĭ′ĕrī* :[15] vĕ′lŭt,

*Ōm′nĭă jām* fī′ūnt, fĭ′ĕrī *quæ pōs′sĕ nĕgā′bām.* Ovid.

Dī′ŭs prī′măm sŷl′lăbăm hă′bĕt lōn′găm ; *Dĭā′nă* cōmmū′nĕm.

O′hē, īntērjēc′tĭō, prĭō′rĕm sŷl′lăbăm cōmmū′nĕm hă′bĕt.[16]

Vōcā′lĭs ān′tĕ āl′tĕrăm ĭn Græ′cĭs dīctĭō′nĭbŭs sŭbīn′dĕ lōn′gă fĭt :[17] ŭt,

*Dī′cĭ′tĕ,* Pīĕ′rĭdĕs.
*Rēs′pĭcĕ* Lāēr′tēn.

Ēt ĭn pōssēssī′vĭs Græ′cĭs : ŭt,

---

[14] This exámple is by no means proof that a short vówel is éver léngthened by posítion befóre two cónsonants begínning the next word : yet might séveral exámples corróborative of such fact be quóted from the póets. It is to be remémbered, howéver, that a mute and líquid begínning ány word can, in nówise, léngthen a precéding short vówel :—and hence it fóllows, that the first cónsonant must nécessarily be the létter *s*.

[15] In Plaútus and in Térence the first sýllable of *fĭ′ĕrī* and of *fĭ′ĕrĕt* is repeátedly found long.

[16] And in like mánner the first sýllable of ē′heū, *alas !* and of ī′ō, *hurráh !* are cómmon. To which may be ádded the próper name I′ō, *daúghter of I′nachus.*

[17] In véry mány Greek words, but espécially próper names, a vówel is long though immédiately fóllowed by a vówel : and in the Iónic díalect the pénult of the *génitive* and *accúsative* cáses of nouns in *-eŭs* is long, althoúgh short in the cómmon díalect.

*Ǣnēĭă nŭ′trīx.*
Rhŏdŏpēĭŭs *Ōr′pheūs.*

Ōm′nĭs dīphthōn′gŭs ă′pŭd Lătī′nōs lōn′gă ēst: ŭt, *aū′rŭm, neū′tĕr, mū′sǣ:* nĭ′sĭ *prǣ* sĕquēn′tĕ vōcā′lī: ŭt, *prǣī′rĕ, prǣŭs′tŭs, prǣām′plŭs.*[18]

---

Dērīvātī′vă ĕān′dēm, fĕ′rē, cŭm prīmĭtī′vīs quāntĭtā′tĕm sōrtĭūn′tŭr:—ŭt, *ămā′tŏr, ămī′cŭs, ămā′bĭlĭs,* prī′mā brĕ′vī ăb *ă′mō.*

Ēxcĭpĭūn′tŭr tă′mĕn paū′că, quǣ, ā brĕ′vĭbŭs dēdūc′tă, prī′-măm sўl′lăbăm prōdū′cūnt: ŭt,

*cō′mō cō′mĭs,* ā *cŏ′mă,*
*fō′mĕs,* ĕt *fōmēn′tŭm* ā *fŏ′vĕō,*
*hūmā′nŭs,* ăb *hŏ′mŏ,*
*jūcūn′dŭs,* ā *jŭ′vō,*
*jūmēn′tŭm,* ā *jŭ′vō,*
*jū′nĭŏr,* ā *jŭ′vĕnĭs,*
*lātēr′nă,* ā *lă′tĕō,*
*lēx lē′gĭs,* ā *lĕ′gō,*
*mō′bĭlĭs,* ā *mŏ′vĕō,*
*nō′nŭs,* ā *nŏ′vĕm,*
*rēx rē′gĭs, rēgī′nă,* ā *rĕ′gō,*
*sē′dēs,* ā *sĕ′dĕō,*
*tē′gŭlă,* ā *tĕ′gō,*
*trā′gŭlă,* ā *tră′hō,*
*vō′mĕr,* ā *vŏ′mō,*
*vōx vō′cĭs,* ā *vŏ′cō.*

Ĕt cōn′trā sūnt, quǣ, ā lōn′gīs dēdūc′tă, prī′măm cŏrrĭ′-pĭūnt: ŭt,

*ărē′nă, ărĭs′tă, ărūn′dō,* ăb *ā′rĕō,*
*ărūs′pēx,* ăb *ā′ră,*
*dĭ′cāx,* ā *dī′cō,*[19]
*dĭ′tĭō,* ā *dī′tĭs,*
*dĭsēr′tŭs,* ā *dīs′sĕrō,*
*dŭx dŭ′cĭs,* ā *dū′cō,*
*fĭ′dēs,* ā *fī′dō,*
*fră′gŏr, fră′gĭlĭs,* ā *frān′gō,*
*gĕ′nŭī,* ā *gīg′nō,*
*lŭcēr′nă,* ā *lū′cĕō,*
*nă′tō nă′tās,* ā *nā′tū,*
*nŏ′tō nŏ′tās,* ā *nō′tū,*
*pŏ′sŭī,* ā *pō′nō,*
*pŏ′tŭī,* ā *pōs′sŭm,*
*sŏ′pŏr,* ā *sō′pĭō.*[20]

Ĕt ă′lĭă nōnnūl′lă ēx ŭtrō′quĕ gĕ′nĕrĕ, quǣ rĕlīnquūn′tŭr stŭdĭō′sīs īn′tĕr lĕgēn′dŭm ōbsērvān′dă.

Cōmpŏ′sĭtă sīmplĭ′cĭŭm quāntĭtā′tĕm sĕquūn′tŭr:—ŭt, ā *lĕ′gō, lĕ′gĭs, pēr′lĕgō; lē′gō, lē′gās, āllē′gō:* ā *pŏ′tēns, īm′pŏtēns;* ā *sō′lŏr, cōnsō′lŏr.*

---

[18] Excépt álso the díphthong *æ* in Mǣō′tĭs, *Mæótic* or *Sarmátian*, which both O′vid and Séneca make short: but most óthers, long.

[19] So in like mánner mălē′dĭcŭs, *slánderous*, and mány óther words of the same kind and derivátion, have the pénult short.

[20] And símilarly vă′dŭm, *a ford*, from vā′dō, *I go*: and ăm′bĭtŭs, *a círcuit*, from āmbī′tŭm, *to encómpass.*

Ēxcĭpĭūn'tŭr tă'mĕn hæc brĕ'vĭă ā lōn'gīs ēnā'tă: *dē'jĕrō*, *pē'jĕrō*, ā *jū'rō; īn'nŭbă*, prō'nŭbă, ā *nū'bō*.

☞ Ōm'nĕ Prætĕ'rĭtŭm dīssy̆l'lăbŭm prĭō'rĕm hă'bĕt lōn'găm: ŭt, *lē'gī*, *ē'mī*, *mō'vī*.

1. Ēxcĭ'pĭās tă'mĕn, *bĭ'bī*, *dĕ'dī*, *scĭ'dī*, *stĕ'tī*, *stĭ'tī*, *tŭ'lī*, ĕt *fĭ'dī* ā *fīn'dō*.

2. Prĭ'măm Prætĕ'rĭtī gĕmĭnān'tĭă—prī'măm brĕ'vĕm hă'bēnt:—ŭt, *cĕ'cĭdī* ā *că'dō; cĕcī'dī* ā *cæ'dō; dĭ'dĭcī*, *fĕfĕl'lī*, *mŏmōr'dī*, *pĕpēn'dī*, *pŭ'pŭgī*, *tĕtēn'dī*, *tĕ'tĭgī*, *tŏtōn'dī*, *tŭ'tŭdī*.

☞ Sŭpī'nŭm dīssy̆l'lăbŭm prĭō'rĕm hă'bĕt lōn'găm: ŭt, *vī'sŭm*, *lā'tŭm*, *lō'tŭm*, *mō'tŭm*.

Ēx'cĭpĕ, *dă'tŭm*, *ĭ'tŭm*, *lĭ'tŭm*, *quĭ'tŭm*, *rŭ'tŭm*, *rŭ'tŭm*, *să'tŭm*, *sĭ'tŭm*, *stă'tŭm*;[21] ĕt *cĭ'tŭm* ā *cĭ'ĕō cĭ'ēs*:—năm *cī'tŭm* ā *cĭ'ō cīs* quār'tæ, prĭō'rĕm hă'bĕt lōn'găm

## ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Fīnī'tă prōdūcūn'tŭr: ŭt, *ă'mā*, *cōn'trā*, *ēr'gā*.

1. Ēxcĭ'pĭās *pŭ'tă*, *ĭ'tă*, *quĭ'ă*, *pōs'tĕă*, *ē'jă*,[22] ĭ'tĕm ōm'nēs că'sūs ĭn "*-a*," cūjūscūn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrĭnt gĕ'nĕrĭs, nŭ'mĕrī, aŭt dēclīnātĭō'nĭs: præ'tĕr vŏcātī'vōs ā Græ'cīs ĭn *-ās*: ŭt, *Ō Ænē'ā*, *Ō Thō'mā*: ĕt āblātī'vŭm prī'mæ dēclīnātĭō'nĭs; ŭt, *mū'sā*.

2. Nŭmĕrā'lĭă ĭn "*ginta*" fīnā'lĕm hă'bēnt cōmmū'nĕm, sĕd frĕquēn'tĭŭs lōn'găm: ŭt, *trīgīn'tă*.

II. In *b*, *d*, *t*, dēsĭnēn'tĭă, brĕ'vĭă sūnt: ŭt, *ăb*, *ăd*, *că'pŭt*.[23]

III. In *c* dēsĭnēn'tĭă prōdūcūn'tŭr: ŭt, *āc*, *sīc*, ĕt *hīc* ād-vēr'bĭŭm.

Sĕd dŭ'ō ĭn *c* cōrrĭpĭūn'tŭr: *nĕc* ĕt *dō'nĕc*.

Trĭ'ă sūnt cōmmū'nĭă; *făc*, prōnō'mĕn *hĭc*, ĕt neū'trŭm ē'jŭs *hŏc*, mŏ'dŏ nōn sĭt āblātī'vī că'sūs.

---

[21] Though the pénult of *stă'tŭm* is short, yet the first sýllable of the fúture párticiple *stātū'rŭs* is long.

[22] In mány schools an objéctionable práctice prevaīls, in respéct of the pronunciátion of fínal *a*:—I mean, the indiscríminate útterance of it to rhyme with *day*. As no pérson of ány taste éver says *Jamaícay* or *Américay*, so ought no pérson to say *Mū'sāy*, when he means *Mū'să*. Fínal *a* when short, should álways rhyme with the fínal sýllable of the En'glish próper names *Mártha* and *María*: fínal *a*, when long, may rhyme (accórding to the En'glish sound of the vówels) with *day*.

[23] Of course when a díphthong precédes ány of these mutes, as in haūd, *not*, or in aūt, *or*, the sýllable is long by the Rule, "*Om'nis diphthóngus ápud Latínos lónga est*:" and when a cónsonant precédes,—the vówel befóre the two cónsonants is long by *posítion*.

IV. *E* fīnī'tă brĕ'vĭă sūnt: ŭt, *mă'rĕ, pĕ'nĕ, lĕ'gĕ, scrī'bĕ.*

1. Ēxcĭpĭēn'dæ sūnt ōm'nēs vō'cēs quīn'tæ īnflēxĭō'nĭs ĭn *-e*:—ŭt, *fĭ'dē, dĭē*;[24] ū'nā cūm pārtĭ'cŭlīs īn'dĕ ēnā'tīs. ŭt, *hŏ'dĭē, quŏtī'dĭē, prī'dĭē, pōstrī'dĭē*:—ī'tĕm *quā're, quādē'rē, ĕā'rē,* ĕt sī'quă sūnt sĭmĭ'lĭă.

2. Ĕt sĕcūn'dæ ĭ'tĕm pērsō'næ sīngŭlā'rēs sĕcūn'dæ cōnjŭgātĭō'nĭs: ŭt, *dŏ'cē, mŏ'vē.*[25]

Prōdūcūn'tŭr ĕ'tĭăm mŏnŏsȳl'lăbă ĭn *e*:—ŭt, *mē, tē, sē*: præ'tĕr, *-quĕ, -nĕ, -vĕ,*[26] cōnjūnctĭō'nēs ēnclī'tĭcās.[27]

Quīn ĕt ādvēr'bĭă ĭn *-e*, ăb ādjēctī'vīs sĕcūn'dæ dēclīnātĭō'nĭs dēdūc'tă, *e* lōn'gŭm hă'bĕnt:—ŭt, *pūl'chrē, dōc'tē, vāl'dē* prō *vă'lĭdē.*[28]

Quĭ'bŭs āccē'dūnt *fēr'mē, fĕ'rē*[29]:—*bĕ'nĕ* tă'mĕn ĕt *mă'lĕ* cōrrĭpĭūn'tŭr ōmnī'nō.[30]

Pōstrē'mō, quæ ā Græ'cīs pĕr *η (ē'tă)* scrībūn'tŭr, nātū'-ră prōdūcūn'tŭr, cūjūscūn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrīnt cā'sūs, gĕ'nĕrĭs, aūt nŭ'mĕrī:—ŭt, *Lē'thē, Ānchī'sē, cē'tē, Tēm'pē.*

V. *I* fīnī'tă lōn'gă sūnt: ŭt, *dŏ'mĭnī, măgīs'trī, ămā'rī.* Præ'tĕr, *mĭ'hĭ, tĭ'bĭ, sĭ'bĭ, ŭ'bĭ, ĭ'bĭ,* quæ sūnt cōmmū'nĭă.[31].

*Nĭ'sĭ* vē'rō ĕt *quă'sĭ* cōrrĭpĭūn'tŭr.

Cū'jŭs ĕ'tĭăm sōr'tĭs sūnt dătī'vī ĕt vŏcātī'vī Græcō'rŭm, quō'rŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭs, sīngŭlā'rĭs, īn *-os* brĕ'vĕ[32] ēx'ĭt:—ŭt,

---

[24] The fínal sýllable of fā'mē, *by* or *with húnger*, is long; this noun béing of the fifth declénsion in the áblative case,—though of the third declénsion in all the óther cáses.

[25] But că'vĕ, *bewáre*, vă'lĕ, *farewéll*, vĭ'dĕ, *see*, sāl'vĕ, *hail*, and rēspōn'dĕ, *replý*, have the fínal *e* common.

[26] These three monosyllábic párticles are álways adjúnctive, and can néver (with corréctness) be úsed as séparate and distínct words.

[27] With these may be conjóined all syllábic párticles in *e* occásionally found at the end of cértain words; such as *-ptĕ, -cĕ, -tĕ, -dĕ*:—thus, *mĕā*p'tĕ, *hīc*'cĕ, *tū*'tĕ, *quām*'dĕ.

[28] But ádverbs in *e* derived from ádjectives of the third declénsion have the fínal sýllable short; as, fă'cĭlĕ, *eásily*. To which add īmpū'nĕ, *with impúnity*, a word of doúbtful derivátion: and hĕ'rĕ, *yésterday*.

[29] Líkewise *ŏ'hē*: the fínal sýllable, howéver, of *fĕ'rĕ* is, sómetimes, found short; as is álso that of tĕ'mĕrē, *ráshly*.

[30] To which add sŭpēr'nĕ, *úpwardly*, and īnfēr'nĕ, *dównwardly*.

[31] Líkewise the conjúnction *ŭ'tĭ*; and *cŭ'ĭ*, whenéver it occúrs as a díssyllable—which howéver is séldom. Neúters in *i* have the last sýllable short: as gūm'mĭ, *gum* or *gums*.

[32] Excépt, howéver, fínal *i* in the vócative case, síngular, of Greek nouns fórming their génitive in *-ēn'tŏs*: as, Sĭ'mŏĭ, Pȳ'rŏĭ.

dătī'vī, *Mīnō'ĭdĭ, Pāl'lădĭ, Phȳl'lĭdĭ ;* vŏcātī'vī, *Ălēx'ī, Ămăryl'lĭ, Dăph'nī.*[32]

VI. *L* fīnī'tă cōrrĭpĭūn'tŭr: ŭt, *ă'nĭmăl, Ān'nĭbăl, mĕl, pŭ'gĭl, cōn'sŭl.*

Præ'tĕr *nīl* (cōntrăc'tŭm ā *nĭ'hĭl*), *sāl* ĕt *sōl.*

Ĕt Hēbræ'ă (quæ'dăm) ĭn *-ēl:* ŭt, *Mĭ'chăēl, Gă'brĭēl, Ră'phăēl, Dă'nĭēl.*

VII. *N* fīnī'tă prōdūcūntŭr: ŭt, *Pæ'ān, Hȳ'mēn, quīn, Xĕ'nŏphōn, nōn, dæ'mōn.*

Ēx'cĭpĕ, *fōr'săn, fōr'sĭtăn, ăn, tă'mĕn, āt'tămĕn, vērūntămĕn,* ĕt *ĭn.*

Āccē'dūnt hīs ĕt vō'cēs īl'læ, quæ ăpŏ'cŏpēn pătĭūn'tŭr: ŭt, *mĕ'n'? vĭdĕ'n'? aūdī'n'?* Ĕ'tĭăm *ēx'ĭn, sŭb'ĭn, dē'ĭn, prō'ĭn, &c.*

In *-an* quŏ'quĕ ā nōmĭnātī'vīs ĭn *-ă :* ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, *Īphĭgĕnī'ă, Ægī'nă ;* āccūsātī'vō, *Īphĭgĕnī'ăn, Ægī'năn.*

Năm ĭn *-an* ā nōmĭnātī'vīs ĭn *-ās* prōdūcūn'tŭr:—ŭt, nō-mĭnātī'vō, *Ænē'ās, Mār'sȳās ;*——āccūsātī'vō, *Ænē'ān, Mār'sȳān.*

Nō'mĭnă ĭ'tĕm ĭn *-ĕn*,[34] quō'rŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭs *-ĭnĭs* cōrrēp'tŭm hă'bĕt: ŭt, *cār'mĕn, crī'mĕn, pēc'tĕn, tībī'cĕn, -ĭnĭs.*

Quæ'dăm ĕ'tĭăm ĭn *-in* pĕr *i*, ŭt, *Ălēx'ĭn :*[35] ĕt ĭn *-yn* pĕr *y*, ŭt *Ī'tȳn.*

Græ'că ĕ'tĭăm ĭn *-ŏn* pĕr *o* pār'vŭm, cūjūscūn'quĕ fŭ'ĕrīnt că'sūs:—ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, *Ī'lĭŏn, Pē'lĭŏn ;* āccūsātī'vō, *Caū'căsŏn, Pȳ'lŏn.*

VIII. *O* fīnī'tă cōmmū'nĭă sūnt: ŭt, *dī'cŏ, vīr'gŏ, pōr'rŏ.*[36] Sīc *dŏcēn'dŏ, lĕgēn'dŏ,* ĕt ă'lĭă gĕrūn'dĭă ĭn *-dŏ.*

Sĕd ōblī'quī că'sūs ĭn *o* sēm'pĕr prōdūcūn'tŭr: ŭt, dătī'vō, *dŏ'mĭnō, sēr'vō ;* āblātī'vō, *tēm'plō, dām'nō.*

Ĕt ādvēr'bĭă ăb ādjēctī'vīs dērīvā'tă; *tān'tō, quān'tō,*

---

33 This Rule of course inclúdes all dátive and áblative cáses plúral in *-sĭ :* as, *hērō'ĭsĭ, chĕ'lȳsĭ, schē'măsĭ.*

34 Greek accúsatives in *-en* from nouns in *-ē* or in *ēs* are long: as, *Pēnĕ'lŏpēn, Anchī'sēn, Dēmŏs'thĕnēn.*

35 And Greek dátive or áblative cáses plúral in *-sĭn ;*—as, *Trō'ăsĭn, Drȳ'ăsĭn, chă'rĭsĭn, ē'thĕsĭn.*

36 Althoúgh, in the ténses of verbs, fínal *o* be cómmon, yet by the best wríters it was óftener úsed long, than short:—excépt the fínal *o* of vŏ'lō, *I will*, pŭ'tŏ, *I think* or *I suppóse*, scī'ŏ, *I know*, and nē'scĭō, *I know not*, which is séldom found long; and to which perháps might be ádded the fínal *o* of ĕ'rŏ, *I shall be*, and of ēs'tō, *be it*. The fínal *o* of cĕ'dŏ, *tell me*, is álways short; but let no one confoúnd *cĕ'dŏ* with cē'dō, *I yield.*

*lĭquĭdō*, *făl'sō*, *prī'mō*, *mănĭfĕs'tō*, &c. Præ'tĕr *sē'dŭlŏ*, *mū'tŭŏ*, *crē'brŏ*,[37] quæ sūnt cōmmū'nĭă.

Cæ'tĕrŭm *mŏ'dŏ* ĕt *quō'mŏdŏ*[38] sēm'pĕr cōrrĭpĭūn'tŭr.

*Cĭ'tŏ* quŏ'quĕ, ŭt ĕt *ām'bŏ*, *dŭ'ŏ*, *ĕ'gŏ*, āt'quĕ *hŏ'mŏ*, vīx lĕgūn'tŭr prōdūc'tă.[39]

Mŏnŏsȳl'lăbă tă'mĕn ĭn *o* prōdūcūn'tŭr: ŭt, *dō*, *stō*.

Ĭ'tĕm Græ'că pēr *ω* (*ōmĕ'gă*) cūjūs'mŏdī fŭ'ĕrīnt că'sūs: ŭt, nōmĭnātī'vō, *Săp'phō*, *Dī'dō*;—gĕnĭtī'vō, *Āndrŏ'gĕō*; āccūsātī'vō, *Ă'thō*: sīc ĕt *ĕr'gō* prō cau'sā.

IX. *R* fīnī'tă cōrrĭpĭūn'tŭr: ŭt, *Cæ'săr*, *pĕr*, *vĭr*, *ūx'ŏr*, *tŭr'tŭr*.

Prōdūcūn'tŭr au'tĕm, *fār*, *lār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*: *pār* quŏ'quĕ, cŭm cōmpŏ'sĭtīs; ŭt, *cōm'pār*, *īm'pār*, *dīs'pār*.[40]

Græ'că ĕ'tĭăm ĭn *-ēr*, quæ īl'līs ĭn *-ηρ* dē'sĭnūnt: ŭt, *ă'ēr*, *crā'tēr*, *chărāc'tēr*, *æ'thēr*, *sō'tēr*:—præ'tĕr *pă'tĕr*, ĕt *mā'tĕr*, quæ ă'pŭd Lătī'nōs ūl'tĭmăm brĕ'vĕm hă'bĕnt.

X. *S* fīnī'tă pă'rēs cŭm nŭ'mĕrō vōcā'lĭŭm hă'bĕnt tērmĭnātĭō'nēs: nēm'pĕ, *-as*, *-es*, *-is*, *-os*, *-us*, *-ys*.

I. *AS* fīnī'tă prōdūcūn'tŭr: ŭt, *ă'mās*, *Mū'sās*, *mājĕs'tās*, *bŏ'nĭtās*.

Præ'tĕr Græ'că quō'rŭm gĕnĭtī'vŭs sīngŭlā'rĭs ĭn *-dŏs* ĕx'ĭt: ŭt, *Ār'căs*, *Pāl'lăs*; gĕnĭtī'vō, *Ār'cădŏs*, *Pāl'lădŏs*.[41]

Ĕt, præ'tĕr āccūsātī'vōs (plūrā'lēs) nō'mĭnŭm crēscēn'tĭŭm:—ŭt, *hē'rōs*, *hērō'ŏs*, *Phȳl'līs*, *Phȳl'lĭdŏs*,—āccūsātī'vō plūrā'lī, *hērō'ăs*, *Phȳl'lĭdăs*.

II. *ES* fīnī'tă lōn'gă sūnt:—ŭt, *Ānchī'sēs*, *sē'dēs*, *dŏ'cēs*, *pă'trēs*.

1. Ēxcĭpĭūn'tŭr nō'mĭnă ĭn *-ĕs* tēr'tĭæ īnflēxĭō'nĭs,—quæ pēnūl'tĭmăm gĕnĭtī'vī crēscēn'tĭs cōrrĭ'pĭūnt: ŭt, *mī'lĕs*, *sĕ'gĕs*,

---

37 In like mánner pōstrē'mō, *últimately* or *lástly*, and sē'rō, *late*, have the fínal *o* cómmon: as has álso the conjúnction vē'rō, *but*.

38 With the óther cómpounds of *mŏ'dŏ*: as *pōst'mŏdŏ*, *dūm'mŏdŏ*, *quōdām'mŏdŏ*: álso, īm'mŏ, *yea* or *nay*.

39 Of these, the last four have the fínal sýllable cómmon,—and perháps óftener short than long:—yet séveral ínstances might be quóted, partícularly of *ām'bŏ* and *dŭ'ŏ*, in the neúter as well as the másculine génder, with the fínal *o* long. On the óther hand, with *cĭ'tŏ* may be joíned, īl'lĭcŏ, *yónder*, prŏfēc'tŏ, *in fact*, dē'nŭŏ, *anéw*, as háving the last sýllable séldom or néver long.

40 The fínal sýllable of ány cómpound of *pār* is cómmon: though, perháps, préferably long.

41 And Greek nouns in *-as* forming their génitive in *-ătŏs* or *-ătĭs*:—as ă'nās, *a duck* or *drake*; bū'cĕrās, *fénugreek*.

*dī′vĕs.* Sĕd *ă′rĭēs, ă′bĭēs, pă′rĭēs, Cĕ′rēs,* ĕt *pēs* ū′nā cŭm cōmpŏ′sĭtīs, ŭt, *bĭ′pēs, trĭ′pēs,* lōn′gă sūnt.

2. *ĔS,* quŏ′quĕ, ā *sŭm,* ū′nā cŭm cōmpŏ′sĭtīs cŏrrĭ′pĭtŭr: ŭt, *pŏ′tĕs, ăd′ĕs, prō′dĕs, ŏb′ĕs*:—quĭ′bŭs *pĕ′nĕs* ādjūn′gī pŏ′tēst.

3. Ĭ′tĕm, neū′tră,—ĕt nōmĭnātī′vī plūrā′lēs Græcō′rŭm: ŭt, *hīppŏ′mănĕs, căcŏē′thĕs, Cȳclō′pĕs, Nāĭ′ădĕs.*

III. *IS* fīnī′tă brĕ′vĭă sūnt:—ŭt, *Pă′rĭs, pā′nĭs, trīs′tĭs, hĭ′lărĭs.*

1. Ēx′cĭpĕ ōblī′quōs cā′sūs plūrā′lēs ĭn *-is,*[42] quī prōdūcūn′tŭr:—ŭt, *mū′sīs* ā *mū′să; mēn′sīs* ā *mēn′să; dŏ′mĭnīs; tēm′plīs;* ĕt *quīs* prō *quĭ′bŭs.*

2. Ī′tĕm, prōdūcēn′tĭă pēnūl′tĭmăm gĕnĭtī′vī crēscēn′tĭs: ŭt, *Sām′nīs, Să′lămīs;* gĕnĭtī′vō, *Sāmnī′tĭs, Sălămī′nĭs.*

3. Ād dĕ hūc quæ ĭn *-is* cōntrāc′tă ēx *-eis* dē′sĭnūnt, sī′vĕ Græ′că,—sī′vĕ Lătī′nă; cūjūscūn′quĕ fŭ′ĕrīnt nŭ′mĕrī aūt cā′sūs: ŭt, *Sĭ′mŏīs, Pȳ′rŏīs, pār′tīs, ōm′nīs,*—ē *Sĭ′mŏeīs, Pȳ′rŏeīs, pār′teīs, ōm′neīs.*

4. Ēt mŏnŏsȳl′lăbă ĭ′tĕm ōm′nĭă; ŭt, *vīs,*[43] *līs*:—præ′tĕr *ĭs* ĕt *quĭs* nōmĭnātī′vōs; ĕt *bĭs.*[44]

5. Īs′tīs āccē′dūnt sĕcūn′dæ pērsō′næ sīngŭlā′rēs vērbō′rŭm ĭn *-is,* quō′rŭm sĕcūn′dæ pērsō′næ plūrā′lēs dē′sĭnūnt ĭn *-ī′tĭs,* pēnūl′tĭmā prōdūc′tā; ū′nā cŭm fŭtū′rīs ōptātī′vī ĭn *-ris*:—ŭt, *aū′dīs, vĕ′līs, dĕ′dĕrīs*: plūrā′lĭtĕr *aūdī′tĭs, vĕlī′tĭs, dĕdĕrī′tĭs.*

IV. *OS* fīnī′tă prōdūcūn′tŭr:—ūt, *hŏ′nōs, nĕ′pōs, dŏ′mĭnōs, sēr′vōs.*

Præ′tĕr *cōm′pŏs, īm′pŏs,* ĕt *ŏs ōs′sĭs.*

Ēt Græ′că pĕr *o* pār′vŭm: ŭt, *Dē′lŏs, Chă′ŏs, Pāl′lădŏs, Phȳl′lĭdŏs.*

V. *US* fīnī′tă cōrrĭpĭūn′tŭr:—ŭt, *fă′mŭlŭs, rē′gĭŭs, tēm′pŭs, ămā′mŭs.*

Ēxcĭpĭūn′tŭr prōdūcēn′tĭă pēnūl′tĭmăm gĕnĭtī′vī[45] crēscēn′tĭs: ŭt, *să′lūs, tēl′lūs;* gĕnĭtī′vō, *sălū′tĭs, tēllū′rĭs.*

---

[42] And all ádverbs deríved from those cáses: as, īmprī′mīs, *chiéfly* or *in the first place;* grā′tīs, *freély*:—álso fŏ′rīs, *abroád.*

[43] And their cómpounds: as, quām′vīs, *althoúgh,* ŭtĕr′vīs, *which of the two you like.*

[44] To which may be ádded the ádverb or preposítion cĭs, *on this side.*

[45] The word pă′lūs, *a marsh* or *pool,* increáses long in the génitive case, and has the fínal sýllable long in the nóminative and vócative cases síngular. In Hórace's Art of Póetry we find *pă′lŭs* with the last sýllable short, a noun of the sécond or fourth declénsion like lă′cŭs, *a lake.*

Lōn′gæ sūnt, ĕtĭăm, ōm′nēs vō′cēs quār′tæ īnflēxĭō′nĭs īn *-us*,—præ′tĕr nōmĭnātī′vŭm ĕt vŏcātī′vŭm sīngŭlā′rēs: ŭt, gĕnĭtī′vō sīngŭlā′rī, *mă′nūs;* nōmĭnātī′vō, āccūsātī′vō, vŏcātī′vō plūrā′lī, *mă′nūs.*

Hīs āccē′dūnt ĕ′tĭăm mŏnŏsȳl′lăbă: ŭt, *crūs*, *thūs*, *mūs*, *sūs.*

Ĕt Græ′că ĭ′tĕm per *-ους* (*-ous*) dīphthōn′gŭm, cūjūscūn′quĕ fŭ′ĕrīnt că′sūs: ŭt, nōmĭnātī′vō, *Pān′thūs*, *Mĕlām′pūs;* gĕnĭtī′vō, *Sāp′phūs*, *Clī′ūs.*

Āt′quĕ pĭ′īs cūnc′tīs vĕnĕrān′dūm nō′mĕn Ĭē′sūs.

VI. *YS* fīnī′tă brĕ′vĭă sūnt: ŭt, *Tē′thȳs*, *Ĭ′tȳs*, *chlă′mȳs.*

Ēx′cĭpĕ că′sūs plūrā′lēs ĭn *-ȳs* cōntrāc′tōs ĕx *-ȳĕs* vĕl *-ȳăs*: ŭt, *Ĕrīn′nȳs* prō *Ĕrīn′nȳĕs* vĕl *Ĕrīn′nȳăs.*[46]

XI. Pōstrē′mō, *u* fīnī′tă prōdūcūn′tŭr ōm′nĭă: ūt, *mă′nū*, *gĕ′nū*, *ămā′tū*, *dĭ′ū.*[47]

---

[46] Nouns álso in *-ys* increásing long in the génitive have the fínal sýllable long: as, Trā′chȳs, *Trachínia*, a small coúntry and town of Phthiótis.

[47] The old ádverb *nē′nŭ* for nōn, *not*, and the old prepositíon *īn′dŭ* for *in*, which occúr in most of the eárlier aúthors, have the fínal *u* short. To which may be ádded últimate sýllables in *-ŭs*, with the *s* elíded; as, plē′nŭ′, *full*, for plē′nŭs: of this last sort of elísion, mány ínstances occúr in the póets príor to the Augústan age, and in some éven of that éra.

END OF PROSODY.

# PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS;

OR THE

# RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF NOUNS

CONSTRUED.

---

The words in the paréntheses are understoód, and, in construing, ought to be suppliéd.

---

Própria (nómina) *próper names* quæ *which* tribuúntur *are assígned* máribus *to males or the male kind*, dícas *you may call* máscula *másculine;* ut *as* sunt *are* (nómina) Divórum *the names of the heáthen Gods*, Mars (*génitive* Mártis), *the God of war;* Bácchus (*génitive* Bácchi), *the God of wine*, Apóllo (*génitive*, Apóllinis), *the God of wísdom;* (nómina) virórum *the names of men;* ut *as*, Cáto (*génitive* Catónis), *a nóble Róman*, Virgílius (*génitive*, Virgílii, *vócative*, Virgĭ'li), *the póet Vírgil:* (nómina) fluviórum *the names of rívers;* ut *as* Tíbris (*génitive*, Tíbridis, *accúsative*, Tíbrim, *vócative* Tíbrĭ), *the Tíber;* Oróntes (*génitive*, Oróntis), *a ríver by Ántioch:* (nómina) ménsium *the names of months;* ut *as*, Octóber (*génitive*, Octóbris, *áblative*, Octóbri), *the month of Octóber:* (nómina) ventórum *the names of winds;* ut *as*, Libs (*génitive*, Líbis), *the south-west wind*, Nótus (*génitive*, Nóti), *the south wind*, Aúster (*génitive*, Aústri), *the south wind.*

Própria nómina *próper names* referéntia *denóting* fœmíneum séxum *the fémale sex* tribuúntur *are gíven* fœmíneo géneri *to the féminine génder;* síve *whéther* sunt *they are* (nómina) Deárum *the names of Góddesses;* ut *as*, Júno (*génitive*, Junónis), *Júpiter's wife*, Vénus (*génitive* Véneris), *the Góddess of beaúty:* muliébria (nómina) *fémale names, or the names of wómen;* ut *as*, Ánna (*génitive*, Ánnæ), *Ánn;* Philótis (*génitive* Philótidis), *Phílote:* (nómina) úrbium *the names of cíties;* ut *as*, Élis (*génitive*, Élidis), *a cíty of Pelopponnésus*, O'pus *génitive*, Opúntis), *a cíty of Lócris:* (nómina) regiónum *the names of coúntries;* ut *as*, Græcia (*génitive*, Græciæ), *Greece*, Pérsis (*génitive*, Pérsidis), *Pérsia:* ítem

*líkewise* nómen *the name* ínsulæ *of an ísland;* ceù *as,* Créta (*génitive,* Crétæ), *the ísland of Crete,* Británnia (*génitive,* Británniæ), *Brítain,* Cýprus (*génitive,* Cýpri), *Cýprus.*

Támèn *but* quǽdam (nómina) *cértain names* úrbium *of cities* sunt *are* excipiénda *to be excépted;* ut *as,* ísta máscu-lina (nómina) *these másculine nouns;* Súlmo (*génitive,* Sulmónis), *a town in I'taly,* Ágragas (*génitive,* Agragántis), *a town in Sícily:* quǽdam neutrália (nómina) *some neúter nouns;* ut as, Árgos (*génitive* Árgeos *vèl* Árgi), *a cíty in Peloponnésus;* Tíbur (*génitive,* Tíburis), *a cíty in I'taly;* Prænéste (*génitive,* Prænéstis, *áblative,* Prænéste), *a cíty of I'taly;* et *álso* Ánxur (*génitive,* Ánxuris), *a cíty of I'taly,* quod *which* dat *gives* utrúmque génus *éither génder of the two, that is, both the másculine and neúter génder.*

Appellatíva (nómina) *appéllative or cómmon names* árborum *of trees* érunt *will be* muliébria *féminine:* ut *as,* álnus (*génitive,* álni), *an álder-tree,* cupréssus (*génitive,* cupréssi), *a cýpress-tree,* cédrus (*génitive,* cédri), *a cédar-tree.*

Spínus (*génitive,* spíni), *a sloe-tree or a black-thorn* (est) mas *is másculine,* oleáster (*génitive,* oleástri), *a wild ólive-tree* (est) mas *is másculine.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* et *álso* neútra *of the neúter génder,* síler (*génitive,* síleris), *an ósier, or a wíthy-tree,* súber (*génitive,* súberis), *a cork-tree,* thus (*génitive,* thúris), *a fránkincense-tree,* róbur (*génitive,* róboris), *an oak,* átquè *and* ácer (*génitive,* áceris), *a máple-tree.*

Étiam *álso* (nómina) vólucrum *the names of birds;* ceù *as,* pásser (*génitive,* pásseris), *a sparrow,* hirúndo (*génitive,* hirúndinis), *a swallow:* (nómina) ferárum *the names of wild beasts;* ut *as,* tígris (*génitive,* tígridis *vèl* tígris), *a tiger,* vúlpes (*génitive,* vúlpis), *a fox:* et *and* (nómina) píscium *the names of físhes;* ut *as,* óstrea, (*génitive,* óstreæ), *an óyster,* cétus (*génitive,* céti), *a whale,* sunt *are* dícta *cálled* (nómina) epicœ́na *nouns épicene,* quíbus (nomínibus) *to which nouns* vox ípsa *the terminátion itsélf* féret *will bring* áptum génus *the right génder.*

Áttamèn *but* (id est) notándum *it is to be obsérved* ex cúnctis (nomínibus) *of all the names* súprà *abóve méntioned,* átquè *and* réliquis (nomínibus) *of nouns that remaín, or of those that fóllow,* ómne (nómen) *that évery noun* quod *which* éxit in -um *ends in -um,* seù *whéther* (sit) Grǽcum (nómen) *it be a Greek noun,* síve *or* Latínum (nómen) *a Látin noun,*

ésse *is* neútrum génus *of the neúter génder:* sic *álso* nómen *a noun* invariábile *undeclíned.*

Nómen *a noun* non créscens *not increásing* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case:* ceù *as*, cáro cárnis *flesh*, cápra cápræ *a she-goat*, núbes núbis *a cloud*, est *is* muliébre génus *of the féminine génder.*

Múlta nómina *mány nouns* virórum *of men, that is, denóting the óffices of men* in -ă, *énding in -ă*, dicúntur *are cálled* máscula *másculine:* ut *as*, scríba (*génitive*, scríbæ), *a scribe*, ássecla (*génitive*, ásseclæ), *a page*, scúrra (*génitive* scúrræ), *a buffoón*, et *and* rábula (*génitive*, rábulæ), *a péttifogger*, líxa (*génitive*, líxæ), *a sútler*, lanísta (*génitive*, lanístæ), *a máster of gladiátors.*

Quot (nómina) *as many nouns as* príma declinátio *the first declénsion* Græcórum *of the Greeks* fúndit *pours out, or makes to end* in -ās, et *and* in -ēs; et *and* quot (Latína nómina) *as mány Látin nouns as* fíunt *are derívéd* ab íllis *from them* per -ă *énding in -ă*, (sunt) máscula *are másculine;* ut *as*, sátrapas sátrapa (*génitive*, sátrapæ), *a Pérsian nóbleman;* athlétes athléta (*génitive*, athlétæ), *a wréstler.*

I'tem *álso* (hæc nómina) legúntur *these nouns are read* máscula *of the másculine génder*, vérres (*génitive*, vérris), *a boar-pig*, natális (*génitive*, natális), *one's birth-day*, aquális (*génitive*, aquális), *a éwer.*

(Nómina) náta *nouns descénded or compoúnded* ab ásse *of the word "AS" a Róman coin or pound*, ut *as*, centússis (*génitive*, centússis), *a húndred pence or pounds-weight:* conjúnge (his) *join únto these* liénis (*génitive*, liénis), *the spleen*, et *and* órbis (*génitive*, órbis), *ány round thing*, cállis, (*génitive*, cállis), *a path*, caúlis (*génitive*, caúlis), *a stalk*, fóllis (*génitive*, fóllis), *béllows*, cóllis (*génitive*, cóllis), *a hill*, ménsis (*génitive*, ménsis), *a month*, et *and* énsis (*génitive*, énsis), *a sword*, fústis (*génitive*, fústis), *a club*, fúnis, (*génitive*, fúnis), *a rope*, cénchris (*génitive*, cénchris), *a kind of sérpent*, pánis (*génitive*, pánis), *bread*, crínis (*génitive*, crínis), *hair*, et *and* ígnis (*génitive*, ígnis), *fire*, cássis (*génitive*, cássis), *a toil or net*, fáscis (*génitive*, fáscis), *a fággot*, tórris (*génitive*, tórris), *a fire-brand*, séntis (*génitive*, séntis), *a thorn*, píscis (*génitive*, píscis), *a fish*, et *and* únguis (*génitive*, únguis), *a nail of the hand or foot*, et *álso* vérmis (*génitive*, vérmis), *a worm*, véctis (*génitive*, véctis), *a léver*, póstis (*gé-*

*nitive,* póstis), *a door-post;* et *álso* áxis (*génitive,* áxis), *an áxle-tree* sociétur *may be joíned.*

(Nómina finíta) in -ĕr *nouns énding in -ĕr,* ceù *as,* vénter (*génitive,* véntris), *the belly;* (nómina finíta) in -ŏs vèl -ŭs, *nouns énding in -ŏs or in -ŭs;* ut *as,* lógos (*génitive,* lógi), *a word,* ánnus (*génitive,* ánni), *a year,* (sunt) máscula *are másculine.*

At *but* (hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* fœmínei géneris *of the féminine génder,* máter (*génitive,* mátris), *a móther,* húmus (*génitive,* húmi), *the ground,* dómus (*génitive,* dómûs *vèl* dómi), *a house,* álvus (*génitive,* álvi), *a paunch,* et *and* cólus (*génitive,* cóli *vèl* cólûs), *a dístaff or whorl,* et *álso* fícus (*genitive,* fícûs), quártæ (declinatiónis) *fícus of the fourth declénsion* pro *for* frúctu *the fruit, that is, a fig,* átquè *and* ácus (*génitive* ácûs), *a needle,* pórticus (*génitive,* pórticûs), *a pórch,* átquè *and* tríbus (*génitive,* tríbûs), *a tribe,* sócrus (*génitive,* sócrûs), *a móther-in-law,* núrus (*génitive,* núrûs), *a daúghter-in-law,* et *and* mánus (*génitive,* mánûs), *a hand,* ídus (*génitive,* íduum), *the ides of a month;* hùc *to these* ánus (*génitive,* ánûs), *an old wóman* est addénda *is to be ádded,* hùc *to these* mýstica vánnus *the mýstical fan* Iácchi *of Bácchus.*

Júngas *you may* (*álso*) *join* his *to these* Grǽca (nomina) *Greek nouns* verténtia *changing* -ŏs in -ŭs, *-ŏs ínto -ŭs;* papýrus (*génitive,* papýri *vèl* pápyri), *páper,* antídotus (*génitive,* antídoti), *an ántidote or prevéntive,* cóstus (*génitive,* cósti), *the herb zédoary,* diphthóngus (*génitive,* diphthongi), *a díphthong,* býssus (*génitive,* býssi), *fine flax,* abўssus (*génitive,* abýssi), *an abýss or a bóttomless pit,* crystállus (*génitive,* crystálli), *crystal,* sýnodus (*génitive,* sýnodi), *an assémbly,* sapphírus (*génitive,* sapphíri), *a sápphire stone,* erémus (*génitive,* erémi), *a désert,* et *and* Árctus (*génitive,* Árcti), *a set of stars cálled the Bear,* cum *with* múltis áliis (nomínibus) *mány óther nouns,* quæ *which* nùnc *at this time* perscríbere *to write at large* est lóngum *is tédious.*

Nómen *a noun* (finítum) in -ĕ *énding in ĕ,* si *if* gígnit -ĭs *it begéts or makes -ĭs in the génitive case,* (est) neútrum *is neúter,* ut *as,* máre (*génitive,* máris), *the sea,* réte (*génitive,* rétis), *a net;* et *and* ádde *add* quot (nómina) *howéver mány or whatéver nouns* légas *you read* (finíta) in -ŏn *énding in -ŏn,* fléxa per -ī *inflécted by -ī, that is, máking -ī in the gé-*

*nitive case,* ut *as,* bárbiton (*génitive,* bárbiti), *a harp or lute.*

Hippómanes (*génitive,* hippómanis), *a ráging húmour in mares* est *is* neútrum génus *of the neúter génder,* et *and* cacöéthes (*génitive,* cacöéthis), *an évil hábit or cústom* (est) neútrum *is néuter,* et *álso* vírus (*génitive,* víri), *poíson,* pélagus (*génitive,* pélagi), *the sea:* vúlgus (*génitive,* vúlgi), *the cómmon peóple* módò *sómetimes* (est) neútrum *is neúter,* módò *sómetimes* mas *is másculine.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* incérti géneris *of the doúbtful génder,* tálpa (*génitive,* tálpæ), *a mole,* et *and* dáma (*génitive,* dámæ), *a deer,* canális (*génitive,* canális), *a chánnel,* et *and* cýtisus (*génitive,* cýtisi), *hádder,* bálanus (*génitive,* bálani), *the fruit of the palm-tree,* clúnis (*génitive,* clúnis), *a búttock,* fínis (*génitive,* fínis), *an end, or a límit,* pénus (*génitive,* péni *vèl* pénûs), *all kinds of provision,* ámnis (*génitive,* ámnis), *a ríver,* pámpinus (*génitive,* pámpini), *a vine leaf,* et *and* córbis (*génitive,* córbis), *a básket,* línter (*génitive,* líntris), *a bark,* tórquis (*génitive,* tórquis), *a chain,* spécus (*génitive,* spécûs *rárìùs* spéci), *a cave,* ánguis (*génitive,* ánguis), *a snake,* fícus dans fíci *fícus gíving fíci, that is, making fíci in the génitive case,* pro mórbo *for a diseáse,* átquè *and* phasélus (*génitive,* phaséli), *a pínnace,* lécythus (*génitive,* lécythi), *an oil cruse,* àc *and* átomus (*génitive,* átomi), *an átom,* gróssus (*génitive,* gróssi), *a green fig,* phárus (*génitive,* phári), *a watch-tówer,* et *and* paradísus (*génitive,* paradísi), *páradise.*

(Nómen) compósitum *a noun compoúnded* à vérbo *of a verb* dans -ă *gíving -ă, that is, énding in -ă,* est *is* commúne duórum (génerum) *the cómmon of two génders:* Grajúgena (*génitive,* Grajúgenæ), *a Grécian-born* à *from* gígno *I begét,* agrícola (*génitive,* agrícolæ), *a fármer* à *from* cólo *I till,* ádvena (*génitive,* ádvenæ), *a stránger* à *from* vénio *I come,* mónstrant *show* id *that.*

Ádde *add* sénex (*génitive,* sénis *and sómetimes* sénicis), *an old man or wóman,* auríga (*génitive,* aurígæ), *a charioteér,* et *and* vérna (*génitive,* vérnæ), *a slave by birth,* sodális (*génitive,* sodális), *a compánion,* vátes (*génitive,* vátis), *a próphet or bard,* extórris (*génitive,* extórris), *a bánished man or wóman,* patruélis (*génitive,* patruélis), *a coúsin-gérman,* átquè *and* perduéllis (*génitive,* perduéllis), *an ópen énemy in*

*war*, affīnis (*génitive*, affīnis), *one allied by márriage*, júvenis (*génitive*, júvenis), *a young pérson*, téstis (*génitive*, téstis), *a witness*, cívis (*génitive*, cívis), *a cítizen*, cánis (*génitive*, cánis, *génitive plúral*, cánum), *a dog or bitch*, hóstis (*génitive*, hóstis), *an énemy*.

Nómen *a noun* est *is* muliēbre génus *of the féminine génder* si *if* penúltima sýllaba *the last sýllable éxcept one* genitívi (cásûs) *of the génitive case* crescéntis *increásing* sónat *sounds* acúta *sharp*, *that is*, *if it be accénted*: vélùt *as* hæc (nómina) *these nouns* píetas pietátis *píety*, vírtus virtútis *vírtue* mónstrant *show*.

Quǽdam nómina *cértain nouns* monosýllaba *of ónly one sýllable* dicúntur *are cálled* máscula *másculine*: sal (*génitive*, sális), *salt*, sol (*génitive*, sólis), *the sun*, rēn (*génitive*, rénis), *a kídney*, et *and* splēn (*génitive*, splénis), *the spleen*, Cār (*génitive*, Cáris), *a Cárian*, Sēr (*génitive*, Séris, *accúsative*, Séra), *a Chínese*, vĭr (*génitive*, víri), *a man or husband*, vās vádis *a súrety*, ās (*génitive*, ássis), *a pound weight*, mās (*génitive*, máris), *the male kind*, bēs (*génitive*, béssis), *eight oúnces*, Crēs (*génitive*, Crétis), *a Crétan or man of Crete*, præs (*génitive*, prǽdis), *a súrety for móney*, et *and* pēs (*génitive*, pédis), *the foot*, glīs *a dórmouse* hábens *háving* glíris genitívo *glíris in the génitive case*, mōs (*génitive*, móris), *a mánner*, flōs (*génitive*, flóris), *a flówer*, rōs, (*génitive*, róris), *dew*, et *álso* Trōs (*génitive*, Trōïs), *a Trójan or man of Troy*, mūs (*génitive*, múris), *a mouse*, dens (*génitive*, déntis), *a tooth*, mons (*génitive*, móntis), *a móuntain*, pons (*génitive*, póntis), *a bridge*, et *and* símùl *álso* fons (*génitive*, fóntis), *a foúntain*, seps (*génitive*, sépis), pro serpénte *seps for a sérpent*, *líkewise*, *an eft*, et *and* gryps (*génitive*, grýphis), *a gríffin*, Thrax (*génitive*, Thrácis), *a Thrácian*, rex (*génitive*, régis), *a king*, grex (*génitive*, grégis), *a flock*, et *and* Phryx (*génitive*, Phrýgis), *a Phrýgian*.

Étiàm *álso* polysýllaba *nouns of more than one sýllable* (finíta) in -n *énding in -n* sunt *are* máscula *másculine*; ut *as*, Acárnan (*génitive*, Acarnánis), *an Acarnánian*, *that is*, *a man of Acarnánia*, líchēn (*génitive*, lichénis), *a tétter or ríngworm*, *álso*, *the herb cálled líver-wort*, et *and* délphīn (*génitive*, delphínis), *a dólphin*: et *álso* (nómina finíta) in -o *nouns énding in -o* signántia *sígnifying* córpus *bódy or bódily súbstance*; ut *as*, léo (*génitive*, leónis), *a lion*, curcúlio

(*génitive*, curculiónis), *the weásand or gúllet:* sîc *álso* sénio (*génitive*, senionis), *the númber six*, térnio (*génitive*, terniónis), *the númber three*, sérmo (*génitive*, sermónis), *a discoúrse.*

(Nómina finíta) in -ēr, -ŏr, et -ōs, *nouns énding in -ēr, -ŏr, and -ōs*, (sunt) máscula *are másculine;* ceù *as*, crátēr, (*génitive*, cratéris), *a bowl*, cónditŏr (*génitive*, conditóris), *a buílder*, hérōs (*génitive*, heróïs), *a héro:* his (nomínibus) *to these* (*nouns*) conjúnge *conjoín* tórrens (*génitive*, torréntis), *a tórrent, or, land flood*, néfrens (*génitive*, nefréntis), *a young pig*, óriens (*génitive*, oriéntis), *the east*, átquè *and* clíens (*génitive*, cliéntis), *a clíent*, átquè *and* bídens instruméntum *the word* "bídens" *an ínstrument or fork with two prongs*, cum plúribus (nomínibus) *with mány nouns* (finíta), in -dens *énding in* -dens: ádde *add* (*to these*) gígas (*génitive*, gigántis), *a gíant*, élephas (*génitive*, elephántis), *an élephant*, ádamas (*génitive*, adamántis), *a díamond*, átquè *and* Gáramas (*génitive*, Garamántis), *a Garamántian, or, a man of Líbya*, átquè *and* tápes (*génitive*, tapétis), *tápestry*, átquè *and* lébes (*génitive*, lebétis), *a caúldron*, sîc *so* et *álso* mágnes (*génitive*, magnétis), *a mágnet or a loádstone*, átquè *and* únum nómen *one noun* quíntæ (declinatiónis) *of the fifth declénsion*, merídies (*génitive*, meridiéï), *noon or mid-day:* et *álso* (nómina) quæ *the nouns which* componúntur *are compoúnded* ab *of* ásse *a pound weight*, ut *as*, dódrans (*génitive*, dodrántis), *nine oúnces*, sémis (*génitive*, semíssis), *half a pound.*

(Hæc) máscula (nómina) *these másculine nouns* jungántur *may be joíned*, Sámnīs (*génitive*, Samnítis), *a Sámnite*, hýdrops (*génitive*, hydrópis), *the drópsy*, et *and* thórax (*génitive*, thorácis), *the breast or chest:* júngas *you may join* quóquè *álso* (hæc) máscula (nómina) *these másculines*, vérvex (*génitive*, vervécis), *a wéther sheep*, phœ́nix (*génitive*, phœnícis), *a phœ́nix*, et *and* bómbyx (*génitive*, bombýcis), pro *for* vermículo *a silk-worm:* Áttamèn *yet* ex his (nomínibus) *of these* (*nouns*) sýrēn (*génitive*, syrénis), *a mérmaid*, nécnon *álso* sóror (*génitive*, soróris), *a síster*, úxor (*génitive*, uxóris), *a wife*, sunt *are* muliébre génus *of the féminine génder.*

Et *álso* hæc nómina *these nouns* monosýllaba *of one sýllable* sunt *are* neutrália *neúter:* mel (*génitive*, méllis), *hóney*, fel (*génitive*, féllis), *gall*, lac (*génitive*, láctis), *milk*, far (*génitive*, fárris), *bread-corn*, vēr (*génitive*, véris), *the spring*, æs (*génitive*, ǽris), *brass*, cor (*génitive*, córdis), *the heart*, vās vásis

*a véssel*, ŏs óssis *a bone*, et *and* ōs óris *the mouth*, rūs (*génitive*, rúris), *the coúntry*, thūs (*génitive*, thúris), *fránkincense*, jūs, (*génitive*, júris), *right*, *álso grúel or broth*, crūs (*génitive*, crúris), *the leg*, pūs (*génitive*, púris), *corrúption*.

Et *álso* polysýllaba (nómina) *nouns of séveral sýllables, that is, of more than of one sýllable* (finíta) in ăl *énding in -ăl*, átquè *and* in -ăr *énding in -ăr:* ut *as*, cápităl (*génitive*, capitális), *a priest's veil*, láqueăr (*génitive*, laqueáris), *a roof or céiling:* álec (*génitive*, alécis), *a sharp pickle* (est) neútrum *is neúter*,—álex (*génitive*, alécis), *a hérring* (est) muliébre (génus) *is of the féminine génder*.

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these* (*names or*) *nouns are* dúbii géneris *of doúbtful génder;* scrobs (*génitive*, scróbis), *a ditch*, sérpens (*génitive*, serpéntis), *a sérpent*, búbo (*génitive*, bubónis), *an owl*, rúdens (*génitive*, rudéntis), *a cáble*, grus (*génitive*, grúïs), *a crane*, pérdix (*génitive*, perdícis), *a pártridge*, lynx (*génitive*, lýncis), *a lynx or an ounce, a sort of spótted wolf*, límax (*génitive*, limácis), *a snaíl*, stirps (*génitive*, stírpis), *the word stirps* pro trúnco *for the trúnk or bódy of a tree* et *and* calx pédis *the heel of the foot*.

Ádde *add* díes (*génitive*, diéï), *a day*, tántùm *ónly* ésto *let it be* mas *másculine* secúndo número *in the sécond or plúral númber*.

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* commúne (génus) *of the cómmon génder:* párens (*génitive*, paréntis), *a párent, fáther or mother*, átquè *and* aúctor (*génitive*, auctóris), *an aúthor*, ínfans (*génitive*, infántis), *a babe, or an ínfant*, adoléscens (*génitive*, adolescéntis), *a young man or wóman*, dux (*génitive*, dúcis), *a leáder*, íllex (*génitive*, illégis), *an oútlaw*, hǽres (*génitive*, hærédis), *an heir*, éxlex (*génitive*, exlégis), *an oútlaw*.

(Nómina) creáta *nouns compoúnded* à frónte *of* frons *the fórehead;* ut *as*, bífrons (*génitive*, bifróntis), *one with two fáces*, cústos (*génitive*, custódis), *a keeper*, bōs (*génitive*, bóvis, *génitive plural*, bóum, *dátive plúral*, bóbus *vèl* búbus), *an ox, a bull or cow*, fūr (*génitive*, fúris), *a thief*, sūs (*génitive*, súïs), *a swine*, átquè *and* sacérdos (*génitive*, sacerdótis), *a priest or priéstess*.

Nómen *a noun* est *is* mas *másculine*, si *if* penúltima *the last sýllable excépt one* genitívi (cásûs) *of the génitive case*, crescéntis *increásing* sit *be* grávis *flat:* ut *as* sánguis *blood* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case* sánguĭnis.

Hyperdissýllabon (nómen) *let a noun of more than two sýllables* (finítum) in -do *términating in -do*, quod (nómen) *which noun* dat *gives or makes* -dĭnis *the énding -dĭnis* in genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, átquè *and* (hyperdissýllabon nómen finítum) in -go *ány hyperdissýllable noun énding in -go*, quod (dat) *which gives or makes* -gĭnis *the terminátion -gĭnis in the génitive case* sit *be* fœmínei géneris *of the féminine génder*:—dulcédo *sweétness* fáciens *máking* dulcédinis, mónstrat *demónstrates or shows* id *that* tíbi *to you*, átquè *and* compágo (*génitive*, compáginis), *a joint or joíning* (mónstrat) id *shows* (*to you*) *that or the same thing*.

Ádjice *add* vírgo (*génitive*, vírginis), *a vírgin or maíden*, grándo (*génitive*, grándinis), *hail*, fídes (*génitive*, fídĕï), *faith*, cómpēs (*génitive*, cómpedis), *a fétter*, tégĕs (*génitive*, tégetis), *a mat*, et *and* ségĕs (*génitive*, ségetis), *corn-land*, árbŏr vèl árbōs (*génitive*, árboris), *a tree*, átquè *and* hýems (*génitive*, hýemis), *wínter*: sîc *so* chlámys (*génitive*, chlámydis), *a cloak or mántle*, et *and* síndon (*génitive*, síndonis), *fine línen*, Górgon (*génitive*, Górgonis, *accúsative*, Górgona), *Medusa's head*, ícon (*génitive*, íconis, *accúsative*, ícona), *an image*, et *and* Amázon (*génitive*, Amázonis, *accúsative*, Amázona), *an Ámazon*.

Græcula (nómina) *Greek nouns* finíta *énding* in -ăs vèl in -ĭs *in -ăs or in -ĭs*, ut *as*, lámpăs (*génitive*, lámpadis), *a lamp*, iáspĭs (*génitive*, iáspidis), *a jásper*, cássis, (*génitive*, cássidis), *a hélmet*, cúspis (*génitive*, cúspidis), *the point of a weápon*: ítèm *álso* múlier (*génitive*, mulíĕris), *a woman*, et *and* pécus *cáttle* dans *gíving or máking* pécudis (genitívo cásu) *pécudis in the génitive case*.

Ádde *add* his (nomínibus) *únto these* (*nouns*) fórfex (*génitive*, fórficis), *a pair of shears or scíssars*, péllex (*génitive*, péllicis), *a hárlot*, cárex (*génitive*, cáricis), *sedge*, átquè *and* símùl *álso* supéllex (*génitive*, supelléctilis), *hoúsehold-fúrniture*, appéndix (*génitive*, appéndicis), *an appéndage*, hýstrix (*génitive*, hýstricis), *a pórcupine*, coxéndix (*génitive*, coxéndicis), *the hip*, átquè *and* fílix (*génitive*, fílicis), *fern*.

Nómen *a noun* (finítum) in -ă *énding in -ă*, sígnans *sígnifying* rem *a thing* non animátam *not ánimate, that is, a thing withoút life*, est *is* neutrále génus *of the neúter génder*; ut *as*, probléma (*génitive*, problématis), *a próblem or a quéstion propósed*: (nómina et finíta in) -ĕn *nouns álso énding in -ĕn*;

ut *as*, ómen (*génitive*, óminis), *a tóken of good or bad luck:* (nómina finíta in) ăr *nouns énding in ăr ;* ut *as*, júbar (*génitive*, júbaris), *a súnbeam ;* (nómen) dans -ŭr, *a noun gíving -ŭr, that is, énding in -ŭr ;* ut *as*, jécur (*génitive*, jécoris *vél* jecínoris), *the líver ;* (nómina in) -ŭs, *nouns in -ŭs ;* ut *as*, ónus (*génitive*, óneris), *a búrden:* (nómina finíta in) -pŭt *nouns énding in -pŭt ;* ut *as*, ócciput (*génitive*, occípitis), *the hínder part of the head.*

Áttamen *but* ex his (nomínibus) *of these* (*nouns*) pécten (*génitive*, péctinis), *a comb,* fúrfur (*génitive*, fúrfuris), *bran,* sunt *are* máscula *másculine.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* neútra *of the neúter génder*, cadáver (*génitive*, cadáveris), *a cárcase*, vérber (*génitive*, vérberis), *a stripe*, íter (*génitive*, itíneris), *a jóurney*, súber (*génitive*, súberis), *a cork*, túber (*génitive*, túberis), pro *for* fúngo *a múshroom*, et *and* úber (*génitive*, úberis), *a dug or teat*, gíngiber (*génitive*, gingíberis), *gínger*, et *and* láser (*génitive*, láseris), *the herb bénjamine*, cícer (*génitive*, cíceris), *a vetch*, et *and* píper (*génitive*, píperis), *pépper*, átquè *and* papáver (*génitive*, papáveris), *a póppy*, et *álso* síser (*génitive*, síseris), *a pársnep.*

Áddas *you may add* his (nomínibus) *únto these* (*nouns*) neútra *the neúters* ǽquor (*génitive*, ǽquoris), *a lével súrface or a plane superfícies*, mármor (*génitive*, mármoris), *márble*, atquè *and* ádor (*génitive*, ádoris *vèl* adóris), *fine wheat*, átquè *and* pécus *cáttle* quándò *when* fácit *it makes* pécoris in genitívo (cásu), *pécoris in the génitive case.*

(Hæc nómina) sunt *these nouns are* dúbii géneris *of the doúbtful génder*, cárdo (*génitive*, cárdinis), *a hinge*, márgo (*génitive*, márginis), *the márgin, brink, or brim of a thing*, cínis (*génitive*, cíneris), *áshes or cínders*, óbex (*génitive*, óbicis), *a bolt*, fórceps (*génitive*, fórcipis), *a pair of tongs*, púmex (*génitive*, púmicis), *a púmice-stone*, ímbrex (*génitive*, ímbricis), *a gútter-tile*, córtex (*génitive*, córticis), *the rind or bark of a tree or shrub*, púlvis (*génitive*, púlveris), *dust*, átquè *and* ádeps (*génitive*, ádipis), *fat.*

Adde *add* cúlex (*génitive*, cúlicis), *a gnat*, nátrix (*génitive*, nátricis), *a wáter-sérpent*, et *and* ónyx (*génitive*, ónychis), *an ónyx, a sort of précious stone*, cum próle *with its óffspring or cómpounds*, átquè *and* sílex, (*génitive*, sílicis), *a flint*, quámvis *although* úsus *use* vult *wishes or will have* hæc

(nómina) *these nouns* méliùs *ráther* dícier *to be cálled* máscula *másculine.*

Is'ta (nómina) *these nouns* sunt *are* commúnis géneris *of the cómmon génder, that is, are indífferently másculine or féminine;* vígil (*génitive*, vígilis), *a séntinel*, púgil (*génitive*, púgilis), *a boxer, or champion*, éxul (*génitive*, éxulis), *a bánished man or wóman*, præsul (*génitive*, præsulis), *a prélate*, hómo (*génitive*, hóminis), *a man or wóman*, némo (*génitive*, néminis), *nóbody*, mártyr (*génitive*, mártyris), *a mártyr*, Lígur (*génitive*, Líguris), *a Ligúrian*, aúgur, (*génitive*, aúguris), *a divíner by birds, or a sóothsayer*, et *and* Árcas (*génitive*, Árcădis *vèl* Árcădos), *an Arcádian*, antístĕs (*génitive*, antístitis), *a chief priest or priéstess*, mílĕs (*génitive*, mílitis), *a sóldier*, pédes (*génitive*, péditis), *a foótman or foot-wóman*, intérprĕs (*génitive*, intérpretis), *an intérpreter*, cómĕs (*génitive*, cómitis), *a cómpanion on a joúrney*, hóspĕs (*génitive*, hóspitis), *a host or lándlord, álso, a guest:* sîc *so* álĕs (*génitive*, álitis), *ány great bird*, præsĕs (*génitive*, præsidis), *a président*, prínceps (*génitive*, príncipis), *a prince or príncess*, aúceps (*génitive*, aúcupis), *a fówler*, équĕs (*génitive*, équitis), *a hórseman or horse-wóman*, óbsĕs (*génitive*, óbsidis), *a hóstage:* átquè *and* múlta ália nómina *mány óther nouns* quæ *which* creántur *are fórmed or derívèd* à vérbis *from verbs:* ut *as* cónjux (*génitive*, cónjugis), *a húsband or wife*, júdex, (*génitive*, júdicis), *a judge*, víndex (*génitive*, víndicis), *an avénger*, ópifex (*génitive*, opíficis), *a wórkman*, et *and* arúspex (*génitive*, arúspicis), *a divíner by the éntrails at sácrifice.*

---

Adjectíva *adjectives* habéntia *háving* duntáxat *only* únam vócem *one terminátion*, ut, *as*, félix (*génitive*, felícis), *háppy*, aúdax (*génitive*, audácis), *bold*, rétinent *keep* ómne génus *évery génder* sub úná (vóce) *únder that one énding;* si *if* cádant *they fall* sub *únder* gémină vóce *a doúble terminátion*, vélùt *as* ómnis *all* et *and* ómne *all*, príor vox *the fórmer word* (*of the two*) est *is* commúne (génus) duórum (génerum) *the cómmon of two génders, that is, both másculine and féminine*, áltera vox *the sécond word* (est) neútrum (génus) *is neúter;* at *but* si *if* váriant *they váry* tres vóces *the three terminátions or éndings;* ut *as*, sácer, sácra, sácrum, *sácred;* príma vox

*the first word* est *is* mas *masculine*, áltera *the sécond*, fœmina *féminine*, tértia *the third*, neútrum (génus) *neúter*.

*Obser.* 1.—At *but* sunt (nómina) *there are some nouns* quæ *which* vocáres *you would call* substantíva *súbstantives* própè *in a mánner* fléxu *by their declíning:* támèn *yet* (sunt) repérta *they are found* (ésse) *to be* adjectiva *ádjectives* natúrâ *by náture* átquè *and* úsu *by use*. Tália *such* sunt *are* paúper (*génitive*, paúperis), *poor*, púber (*génitive*, púberis), *ripe of age*, cum *with* dégener (*génitive*, degéneris), *degénerate*, úber (*génitive*, úberis), *fruítful*, et *and* dívĕs (*génitive*, dívitis), *rich*, lócuplēs (*génitive*, locuplétis), *weálthy*, sóspĕs (*génitive*, sóspitis), *safe*, cómĕs (*génitive*, cómitis), *accómpanying or atténding*, átquè *and* supérstĕs (*génitive*, supérstitis), *survíving:* cum *with* paúcis áliis (nomínibus) *a few óthers* (*nouns*), quæ *which* jústa léctio *due reáding* docébit *will teach*.

*Obser.* 2.—Hæc (adjectíva) *these ádjectives* gaúdent *like* adscíscere *to take* síbi *únto themsélves* quémdam próprium fléxum *a cértain pecúliar infléxion or mánner of declíning*, campéster *chámpaign*, vólucer *swift*, céleber *fámous*, céler *speédy*, átquè *and* salúber *whólesome;* júnge *join* pedéster, *belónging únto a foótman*, equéster *belónging to a hórseman*, et *and* ácer *sharp;* júnge *join* palúster *márshy*, àc *and* álacer *cheérful*, silvéster *woódy:*

At *but* tu *you* variábis *shall váry or declíne* hæc (adjectíva) *these ádjectives* sîc *thus:* hic céler, *in the másculine*, hæc céleris, *in the féminine*, hoc célere neútro (génere) *hoc célĕre in the neúter génder;* aùt *or* álitèr *ótherwise* sîc *thus;* hic àtquè hæc céleris *for the másculine and féminine*, rúrsum *again* hoc célere est *hoc célĕre is* neútrum (génus) tíbi *the neúter génder for you*.

---

## NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR,

### CONSTRUED.

(Nómina) quæ *those nouns which* váriant *change* génus *their génder* aùt *or* fléxum their *declénsion*, (et) quæcúmque (nómina) *and whatsoéver nouns* novato rítu *by or áfter a new mánner* defíciunt *fall short* vèl *or* súperant *exceéd in declíning*, súnto *let them be* (*cálled*) heteróclita *héteroclites, or nouns irrégular*.

Cérnis *you perceive or see* hæc (nómina) *these nouns* variántia *várying* pártim *in part* génus *their génder,* àc *and* fléxum *their declíning:* Pérgamus (*génitive,* Pérgami), *the cíty of Pérgamus* gígnit *makes* Pérgama *the cítádel of Troy* in plurâli número *in the plúral númber.*

Príor númerus *the fórmer or síngular númber* dat *gives* his (nomínibus) *únto these nouns* neútrum génus *the neúter génder,* álter (númerus) *the óther, or plúral númber,* utrúmque *both the másculine and neúter;* rástrum (*génitive,* rástri), *a rake, or hárrow,* cum *with* fréno (*nóminative,* frénum), *the bit of a brídle,* fílum (*génitive,* fíli), *a thread,* átquè símùl *and álso* capístrum (*génitive,* capístri), *a hálter:* ítèm *álso* Árgŏs (*génitive,* Árgĕŏs vèl Árgi), *Árgos, a town in Greece,* et *and* cœ́lum (*génitive,* cœ́li), *heáven,* sunt *are* neútra *neúter* síngula *síngulars, that is, in the síngular númber,* sèd *but* aúdi *hear or obsérve,* vocitábis *you shall say* duntáxat *ónly* cœ́lōs, et *and* Árgōs (*in the plúral númber*) máscula *másculine:* sèd *but* fréna *neúter,* et *and* frénōs *másculine,* quo pácto *on which condítion, or áfter which mánner* (Latíni) fórmant *they* (*the Látins*) *form* et *álso* cǽtera *the rest, that is, of the nouns abóve-méntioned, námely,* rástrum, fílum, *and* capístrum.

Plurális númerus *the plúral númber* sólet *is wont* áddere *to add* his (nomínibus) *to these nouns* utrúmque génus *eíther génder of the two, that is, both génders, the másculine and neúter;* síbilus (*génitive,* síbili), *a híssing,* átquè *and* jócus (*génitive,* jóci), *sport,* lócus (*génitive,* lóci), *a place.*—Júngas *you may join* his (nomínibus) *únto these* (*nouns*) quóquè *álso* plúrima (nómina) *véry mány or mány more* (*nouns*).

Propágo (nóminum) *the stock* (*of nouns*) quæ *which* séquitur *fóllows* est *is* mánca *deféctive* cásu *in case* vèl *or* número *in númber.*

(Nómina) quæ *nouns which* váriant *váry* núllum cásum *no case;* ut *as,* fās *divíne law,* nîl *nóthing,* níhil *nóthing,* ínstăr *resémbling in size or appeárance:* et *and* múlta (nómina) *mány nouns* (finíta) in -ū *énding in ū,* símùl *álso* in -i *énding in ĭ:* ut *as,* sunt *are* hæc *these* átquè *both* córnu *a horn,* átquè *and* génu *the knee;* sîc *so* gúmmĭ *gum,* frúgĭ *thrifty;* sîc *so* Témpē *a pléasant vale in Théssaly,* tot *so mány,* quot, *how mány,* et *and* ómnes números *all númbers, that is, nouns of númber* à tríbus *from three* ad céntum *to a húndred,* vocábis *you shall call* aptóta *áptotes.*

Átquè *and* nomen *a noun* cui vox *to which the vócable or díction* cádit úna *falls one or síngle, that is, which hath ónly one case* est *is cálled* monoptóton *a monóptote ;* ceù *as*, nóctu *by night,* nátu *by birth*, jússu *by órder*, injússu *withoút órder*, símùl *álso* ástu *by craft*, prómptu *in reádiness*, permíssu *with permíssion or leave :* légimus *we have read* ástus plurâli (número) *ástus in the plúral númber :* légimus, *we have read* infícias *a deníal,* sèd *but* éa vox *that case* sóla *alóne* est repérta *is found.*

(Nómina) sunt *those nouns are* (cálled) diptóta *díptotes,* quíbus *to which* dúplex flexúra *a doúble fléxure or twófold declíning* remánsit *has remaíned, that is, nouns which have ónly two cáses :* ut *as,* fors *chance* dábit *will give or make* fórte *by chance*, séxto (cásu) *in the sixth or áblative case,* quóquè *álso* spóntis *of choice* spónte *by choice :* et *and* júgeris *of an ácre* dat *gives or makes* júgere *by an ácre*, séxto (cásu) *in the sixth or áblative case*, aútèm *and* vérberis *of a stripe* vérbere *by a stripe*, quóquè *álso* suppétiæ *aid* dant *gives or makes* suppétias *aid or súccour*, quárto (cásu) *in the fourth, or the accúsative case ;* tantúndem *just so much* dat *makes* tantídem *of just so much*, et *and* símùl *also* ímpetis *of an attáck* dat *makes* ímpete *by an attáck*, (ablatívo cásu) *in the áblative case ;* sîc *so* repetundárum *of illégal exáctions* repetúndis *by illégal exáctions.* Vérberis *of a stripe*, cum *with* júgere *by an ácre* sérvant *keep* quátuor cásus *four cáses* in áltero número *in the óther or plúral númber.*

(Nómina) vocántur *nouns are cálled or námed* triptóta *tríptotes* quíbus *in which* infléctis *you declíne* tres cásus *three cases :* sîc *so* est *it is* nóstræ ópis *of or in our pówer*, légis *you read or meet with* fer ópem *bring assístance*, átquè *and* dígnus *wórthy* ópe *of aid or help ;* flécte *declíne* préci *to práyer*, átquè *and* précem *práyer*, et *and* blándus pétit *he complaisánt courts, that is, complaisántly woos* amícam *his místress* préce *with entreáty or entreáties :*—àt *but* frúgis *of fruit* cáret *wants* tántùm *ónly* récto (cásu) *the straight case or the nóminative*, et *and álso* ditiónis *of rule :* vox *the word* vis *force* est *is* íntegra *entire*, nísì *unless* fórtè *perháps* datívus (cásus) *the dátive case* désit *be wánting :* Júngas *you may join* his (nomínibus) *to these* (*nouns*) vícis *of a turn*, átquè *and* vícem *a turn*, et *and* více *by a turn :* quóquè *álso* plus *more* hábet *hath* plúris *of more*, et *and* plus *more*, quárto

(cásu) *in the fourth, or accúsative case:* álter númerus *the óther or plúral númber*) dátur *is gíven* ómnibus his (nomínibus) *to all these nouns.*

Nótes *you may note* (*or obsérve*) cúncta própria (nómina) *all próper names,* quíbus *to which* est *there is* natúra *a náture, that is, which have a náture, or an ímport,* coércens *restraíning them* nè fúerint *lest they be, that is, from béing* plúrima *mány or plúrals;* et *and* múlta ália (nómina) *mány óther nouns* occúrrent tíbi *will meet you* legénti *reáding, that is, will fall in your way in reáding,* rárò *séldom* excedéntia *exceéding* prímum númerum *the first, or síngular númber.*

(Hæc) máscula (nómina) *these másculines* sunt *are* conténta *contént with or confíned to* secúndo número *the sécond or plúral númber* tántùm *ónly:* mánes (*génitive,* mánium), *the spírits of the depárted, or ghosts,* majóres (*génitive,* majórum), *áncestors,* cancélli (*génitive,* cancellórum), *láttices,* líberi (*génitive,* liberórum), *chíldren,* et *and* ántes (*génitive,* ántium), *the fore ranks of vines,* léndes, (*génitive,* léndium), *nits,* èt *and* lémures (*génitive,* lémurum), *spéctres,* símùl *álso* fásti (*génitive,* fastórum), *régisters or ánnals,* átquè *and* minóres (*génitive,* minórum), *yoúngers or postérity,* natáles (*génitive,* natálium), cùm *when* assígnant *it assígns or sígnifies* génus *extráction, or kíndred;* ádde *add* penátes (*génitive,* penátum), *hoúsehold gods,* et *and* lóca (*génitive,* locórum), *pláces, that is, the names of pláces* plurály (número) *in or of the plúral númber,* quáles *such as,* átquè *both* Gábii (*génitive,* Gabiórum), *a city in I'taly,* átquè *and* Lócri (*génitive,* Locrórum), *the Lócrians or inhábitants of Lócris,* et *and* quæcúnque (nómina) *whatéver nouns* símilis ratiónis *of like sort or kind* légas *you may read* pásssìm *here and there, that is, in aúthors.*

Hæc (nómina) *these nouns* sunt *are* fœmínei géneris *of the féminine génder,* átquè *and* secúndi númeri *of the plúral númber:* exúviæ (*génitive,* exuviárum), *cast gárments or ány thing stript off from the bódy,* pháleræ (*génitive,* phalerárum), *horse-tráppings,* átquè *and* grátes (*génitive, deféctive*), *thanks,* manúbiæ (*génitive,* manubiárum), *the spoils of war,* et *and* ídus (*génitive,* íduum), *the ides of a month,* ántiæ (*génitive,* antiárum), *a fórelock,* et *and* indúciæ (*génitive,* induciárum), *a truce;* símùl *álso* átquè *both* insídiæ (*génitive,* insidiárum), *an ámbush,* átquè *and* mínæ (*génitive,* minárum), *threats,*

excúbiæ (*génitive,* excubiárum), *watch by day or night,* nónæ (*génitive,* nonárum), *the nones of a month,* núgæ (*génitive,* nugárum), *trífles,* átquè *and* trícæ (*génitive,* tricárum), *toys,* caléndæ (*génitive,* calendárum), *the cálends of a month,* quisquíliæ (*génitive,* quisquiliárum), *the sweépings or réfuse of ány thing,* thérmæ (*génitive,* thermárum), *a hot-bath,* cúnæ (*génitive,* cunárum), *a crádle,* díræ (*génitive,* dirárum), *cúrses,* átquè *and* exéquiæ (*génitive,* exequiárum), *fúneral rites,* fériæ (*génitive,* feriárum), *hólidays,* et *and* inferiæ (*génitive,* inferiárum), *sácrifices perfórmed to the dead;* sîc *so* átquè *both* primítiæ (*génitive,* primitiárum), *the first fruits of the year,* átquè *and* plágæ (*génitive,* plagárum), signántes *sígnifying* rétia (*génitive,* rétium), *nets,* et *and* válvæ (*génitive,* valvárum), *fólding-doors,* átquè *and* divítiæ (*génitive,* divitiárum), *ríches,* ítèm *álso* núptiæ (*génitive,* nuptiárum), *núptials or a márriage,* et *and* láctes (*génitive,* láctium), *the small guts:*—Thébæ (*génitive,* Thebárum), *Thebes,* et *and* Athénæ (*génitive,* Athenárum), *Áthens,* addántur *may be ádded:* quod génus *of which sort* invénias *you may find* et *álso* plúra nómina *more names* locórum *of pláces.*

Hæc neútra (nómina) *these neúter nouns* plurália *of the plúral númber* legúntur *are read* ráriùs *séldom* prímo (número) *in the first, or síngular númber;* mœ́nia (*génitive,* mœ́nium), *the walls of a cíty,* cum *with* tésquis (*the áblative of* tésqua, tesquórum), *rough and désert pláces,* præcórdia (*génitive,* præcordiórum), *the parts aboút the heart, álso, the mídriff or díaphragm,* lústra (*génitive,* lustrórum), *the dens* ferárum *of wild beasts,* árma (*génitive,* armórum), *arms of war,* mapália (*génitive,* mapálium), *Numídian cottages;* sîc *so* bellária (*génitive,* bellariórum), *júnkets;* múnia (*génitive,* muniórum), *an óffice of trust or charge,* cástra (*génitive,* castrórum), *a camp:* fúnus (*génitive,* fúneris), *a fúneral* pétit *requíres* jústa (*génitive,* justórum), *due rites or solémnities,* et *and* vírgo (*génitive,* vírginis), *a vírgin* pétit *requíres* sponsália (*génitive,* sponsaliórum), *espoúsals:* disértus (hómo) *an éloquent man* ámat *loves* róstra (*génitive,* rostrórum), *the púlpit,* átquè *and* púeri (*génitive,* puerórum), *chíldren* géstant *cárry* crepúndia (*génitive,* crepundiórum), *ráttles,* átquè *and* infántes (*génitive,* infántum), *babes or ínfants* cólunt *use* cunábula (*génitive,* cunabulórum), *crádles, that is, lie in crádles:* aúgur (*génitive,* aúguris), *a soóthsayer,* consúlit *consults* éxta

(*génitive,* extórum) *the éntrails*, et *and* absólvens *finishing his sácrifice* súperis (díis) *to the supérnal gods, that is, to the gods abóve* recántat *chants óver* effáta (*génitive,* effatórum), *their decreés :*—fésta (*génitive,* festórum), *the feasts* déûm (*for* deórum) *of the gods*, ceù *as* Bacchanália (*génitive,* Bacchanáliûm *vèl* Bacchanaliórum), *feasts dédicated to Bácchus*, póterunt *will be áble, that is, will be próper* júngi *to be joíned.* Quod si *and if* léges *you shall read* plúra (nómina) *more nouns or names of the same sort, or descríption,* lícet (ut) repónas *it is gránted* (*that*) *you place them, that is, you may place them* quóquè *álso* hâc clásse *in this rank or class.*

Hæc (nómina) *these nouns* sunt *are* símùl *at one and the same time* et *both* quárti *of the fourth* átquè *and* secúndi fléxûs *of the sécond declénsion :* énìm *for* laúrus *a báy-tree* fácit *makes* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, laúri *of a báy-tree* et *and* laúrûs *of a báy-tree ;* sîc *so do* quércus *an oak*, pínus, *a píne-tree*, fícus *the word fícus* pro *for* frúctu *the fruit, that is, a fig*, àc *and* (pro) árbore *for the tree as well, that is, a fig-tree :*—sîc *álso* cólus (*génitive,* cóli *vèl* cólûs), *a dístaff*, átquè *and* pénus (*génitive,* péni *vèl* pénûs), *all kinds of víctuals or provísions*, córnus (*génitive,* córni *vèl* córnûs), quandò *when* habétur árbor *it is had or réckoned a tree, that is, when it sígnifies the tree, námely, the córnel or wild chérry-tree ;* sîc *so* lácus (*génitive,* láci *vèl* lácûs), *a lake*, átquè *and* dómus (*génitive,* dómi *vèl* dómûs), *a house ;* lícèt *althoúgh* hæc (nómina) *these nouns* nèc recúrrant *neíther recúr, that is, are not found* ubíquè *in évery ínstance, or at all times.*

Léges *you will read* quóquè *álso* plúra (nómina) *more nouns* his *than these*, quæ *which* relínquas *you may leave* júre *of right* príscis *to the áncients, that is, which you may well enoúgh leave to the áncients.*

# AS IN PRÆSENTI,

OR,

# THE RULES FOR VERBS

## CONSTRUED.

---

As in præsénti (témpore) *the terminátion -ās in the sécond pérson síngular of the présent tense of a verb* fórmat *forms* perféctum (témpus) in -ā'vī *the préter-pérfect tense in -ávi:* ut *as*, no nās *I swim*, návi; vócito vócitās *I call óften*, vocitávi. Déme *take awáy or excépt* lávo *I wash*, lávi; júvo *I help*, júvi; átquè *and* néxo *I knit*, néxŭi; et *and* séco *I cut*, quod (fácit) *which makes* sécŭi; néco *I kill*, quod (fácit) *which makes* nécŭi; vérbum *the verb* míco *I glítter*, quod (fácit) *which makes* mícŭi; plíco *I fold*, quod (fácit) *which makes* plícŭi; fríco *I rub*, quod *which* dat *gives or makes* frícŭi: sîc *so* dómo *I tame*, quod *which* (fácit) *makes* dómŭi; tóno *I thúnder*, quod (fácit) *which makes* tónŭi; vérbum *the verb* sóno *I sound*, quod (fácit) *which makes* sónŭi *in the préterite tense;* crépo *I crack*, quod (dat) *which gives* crépŭi; véto *I forbid*, quod *which* dat *gives* vétŭi; átquè *and* cúbo *I lie alóng*, cúbŭi: hæc (vérba) *these verbs* rárò formántur *are rárely or séldom fórmed* in -ávi. Do dās *I give* vult *will* formáre *form* rítè *by cústom*, dĕ'di; sto stās *I stand*, stĕ'ti.

Es in præsénti *the terminátion -ēs in the sécond pérson síngular of the présent tense of a verb* fórmat *forms* perféctum *the preterpérfect tense* dans -ŭī (*by*) *giving -ui;* ut *as* nígreo nígres *I grow black*, nígrŭi: éxcipe *excépt* júbeo *I bid*, jússi: sórbeo *I sup up* hábet *has* sórbŭī, quóquè *álso* sórpsi; múlceo *I stroke gently*, múlsi: lúceo *I shine* vult *will have* lúxi; sédeo *I sit*, sédi; átquè *and* vídeo *I see* vult *will have* vídi; sèd *but* prándeo *I dine* (fácit) prándi *makes prándi;* strídeo *I screak*, strídi; suádeo *I advíse*, suási; rídeo *I laugh*, rísi, et *and* árdeo *I am on fire* hábet *hath* ársi.

Príma sýllaba *the first or leáding sýllable* his quátuor

(vérbis) *in these four verbs* ínfrà *belów or following* geminátur *is doúbled:* námquè *for* péndeo *I hang down* vult *will have* pĕpéndi; átquè *and* mórdeo *I bite*, mŏmórdi; spóndeo *I betróthe* vult *will* habére *have* spŏpóndi; átquè *and* tóndeo *I clip or shear*, tŏtóndi.

Si *if* l vèl r *the létter l or r* stet *stand* ánte *befóre* -gĕō, -gĕō *the terminátion -geo* vértitur *is chánged* in -si *ínto -si:* ut *as* úrgeo *I urge*, úrsi: múlgeo *I milk* dat *gives or makes* múlsi, quóquè *álso* múlxi; frígeo *I am cold*, fríxi; lúgeo *I mourn*, lúxi; et *and* aúgeo *I increase or augment* hábet *has* aúxi.

Fléo flēs *I weep* dat *makes* flévi; léo lēs I *anoint*, lévi; átquè *and* (vérbum) índè nátum *a verb thence oríginating, that is, its cómpound* déleo *I wipe out*, delévi; pléo plēs, *I fill*, plévi; néo *I spin*, névi.

Mánsi formátur *the preterpérfect tense mánsi is fórmed* à *from* máneo *I tárry;* tórqueo *I twist* vult *will have* tórsi; hǽreo *I stick*, hǽsi.

Veo *the terminátion -veo* fit *is made* -vi: ut *as*, férveo *I am hot*, férvi; níveo *I wink or béckon*, et *and* (vérbum) sátum *a verb sprung* índè *from thence, that is, its cómpound* conníveo *I wink* póscit *requíres* -nívi et *and* -níxi; cíeo *I stir up*, cívi; átquè *and* víeo *I bind*, viévi.

Ter'tia (conjugátio) *the third conjugátion* formábit *will form* prætéritum (témpus) *the preterpérfect tense* ut *as* maniféstum *is mánifest or shown* hîc *here.*

Bo *the terminátion -bo* fit *is made* -bi: ut *as* lámbo *I lick*, lámbi: éxcipe *excépt* scríbo *I write*, scrípsi; et *and* núbo *I marry*, núpsi: antíquum (vérbum) *the áncient or old verb* cúmbo *I lie down* dat *gives or makes* cúbui.

Co *the énding or terminátion -co* fit *is made* -ci: ut *as* vínco *I cónquer or overcóme*, víci: párco *I spare* vult *will have* pepérci et *and* párci: díco *I say*, díxi; quóquè *álso* dúco *I lead*, dúxi.

Do *the terminátion -do* fit *is made* -di: ut *as* mándo *I eat*, mándi: sèd *but* scíndo *I cut or slash* dat *gives* scĭ'di; fíndo *I cleave*, fĭ'di; fúndo *I pour out*, fū'di; átquè *and* túndo *I pound*, tútŭdi; péndo *I weigh*, pĕpéndi; téndo *I bend*, tĕténdi; átquè *and* júnge *join* cádo *I fall*, quod *which* fórmat *forms* cécidi; cǽdo *the verb cǽdo* pro *for* vérbero *I beat*, cecídi; cédo *the verb cédo* pro *for* discédere *to depárt*, sívè *or* dáre lócum *to give place*, céssi: vádo *I go*, rádo *I shave,*

lædo *I hurt*, lúdo *I play*, dívido *I divíde*, trudo *I thrust*, claúdo *I shut*, plaúdo *I clap hands*, ródo *I gnaw*, ex -do *from -do*, sémper *álways* fáciunt -sī *make -si*.

Go *the términátion -go* fit *is made* -xi ; ut *as* júngo *I join*, júnxi : sèd *but* r *the létter r* ánte *befóre* -go vult *will have* -si ; ut *as* spárgo *I sprinkle*, spársi : légo *I read* fácit *makes* légi ; et *and* ágo *I act*, égi : tángo *I touch* dat *gives or makes* tétigi ; púngo *I prick*, púnxi ; átquè *and* púpugi : frángo *I break* dat *gives* frégi ; págo, *the verb págo for* pacíscor *I cóvenant* vult *will have* pépigi ; étiàm *álso* pángo *I fásten*, pégi, sèd *but* úsus *use or cústom* máluit *had ráther* (*form*) pánxi.

Ho *the términátion -ho* fit *is made* -xi : ceù *as*, tráho *I draw*, tráxi, dócet *shows ;* et *and* ého *I cárry*, véxi.

Lo *the términátion -lo* fit *is made* -ui : ceù *as* cólo *I till*, cólui :—éxcipe *excépt* psállo *I play on an ínstrument* cum p *with the létter p*, et *and* sállo *I seáson with salt*, síne p *withoút the létter p*, nàm *for* utrúmque (vérbum) *eíther of the two* fórmat tíbi *forms to you* -li, *that is, both of those verbs make -li in the preterpérfect tense :* véllo *I pluck* dat *gives* vélli, quóquè *álso* vúlsi : fállo, *I deceíve*, fefélli ; céllo *the verb céllo* pro *for* frángo *I break*, céculi ; átquè *and* péllo *I drive awáy*, pépuli.

Mo *the términátion -mo* fit *is made* -ui ; ceù *as*, vómo *I vómit*, vómui : sèd *but* émo *I buy* fácit *makes* émi : cómo *I deck the hair* pétit *requíres* cómpsi ; prómo *I draw out*, prómpsi : ádjice *add* démo *I take awáy*, quod *which* fórmat *forms* démpsi *in the préterite ;* súmo *I take*, súmpsi ; prémo *I press*, préssi.

No *the términátion -no* fit *is made* -vi : ceù *as*, síno *I súffer or permít*, sívi :—éxcipe *excépt* témno *I contémn*, témpsi : stérno *I strew*, dat *gives* strávi ; spérno *I despíse*, sprévi ; líno *I smear óver*, lévi, intérdùm *sómetimes* líni et *and* lívi ; quóquè *álso* cérno *I discérn*, crévi ; gígno *I begét*, póno *I put*, cáno *I sing*, dant *make* génui, pósui, cécini.

Po *the términátion -po* fit *is made* -psi : ut *as* scálpo *I scratch*, scálpsi :—éxcipe *excépt* rúmpo *I break*, rúpi ; et *and* strépo *I screak*, quod *which* fórmat *forms* strépui ; crépo *I crack*, quod *which* dat *gives* crépui.

Quo *the términátion -quo* fit *is made* -qui : ut *as* línquo *I leave*, líqui :—démito *take awáy or excépt* cóquo *I cook or dress meat*, cóxi.

Ro *the terminátion -ro* fit *is made* -vi: ceù *as* séro, pro *for* plánto *I plant* et *and* sémino *I sow*, sévi; quod (vérbum) *which* (*verb*) sígnans *signifying* órdino *I set in órder* dábit *will give* (*or make*) sémpèr *álways* méliùs *ráther* sérui; vérro *I brush* vult *will have* vérri, et *and* vérsi; úro *I burn*, ússi; géro *I bear*, géssi; quǽro *I seek*, quæsívi; téro *I beat or bruise*, trívi; cúrro *I run*, cucúrri.

So *the terminátion -so* formábit *will form* -sívi, vélutì *as* arcésso *I send for*, incésso *I attáck*, átquè *and* lacésso *I provóke* próbant *prove:* sèd *but* tólle *take awáy* (*or excépt*) capésso *I take in hand*, quod *which* fácit *makes* capéssi, átquè *and* capessívi; átquè (tólle) *and* (*excépt*) facésso *I despátch*, facéssi; et *álso* víso *I go to see*, vísi: sèd *but* pínso *I pound or grind* habébit *will have* pínsui.

Sco *the terminátion -sco* fit *is made* vi: ut *as* pásco *I feed cáttle*, pávi: pósco *I demánd or requíre* vult *will have* popósci; dísco *I learn* vult *wíshes* fórmare *to form, that is, forms* dídici: quinísco *I nod the head*, quéxi.

To *the énding or terminátion -to* fit *is made* -ti: ut *as* vérto *I turn*, vérti: sèd *but* actívum (vérbum) sísto *let the áctive verb sísto*, pro *for* fácio stáre *I make to stand*, notétur *be marked*, nàm *for* dat *it gives* júre *by right* stíti: mítto *I send* dat *gives* mísi; péto *I ask* vult *will* formáre *form* petívi; stérto *I snore*, hábet *has* stértui; méto *I mow*, méssui.

Ex'i *the terminátion -éxi in the préterite* fit *is made* ab *from* -écto: ut *as* flécto *I bend*, fléxi:—nécto *I knit* dat *gives* néxui, átquè *and* hábet *has* (*álso*) néxi; étiàm *likewise* pécto *I comb* dat *gives or makes* péxui: hábet *it hath* quóquè *álso* péxi.

Vo *the énding or terminátion -vo* fit *is made* -vi: ut *as* vólvo *I roll*, vólvi: éxcipe *excépt* vívo *I live*, víxi.

Xo *the énding or terminátion -xo* fit *is made* -ui: ut *as* téxo *I weave*, quod *which* habébit *will have* téxui, *I wove, or have woven* mónstrat *shows.*

Cio *the terminátion -cio* fit *is made* -ci: ut *as* fácio *I do or make*, féci; quóquè *álso* jácio *I cast or throw*, jéci; antíquum (vérbum) *the old verb* lácio *I allure*, léxi; quóquè *álso* spécio *I behóld*, spéxi.

Dio *the terminátion -dio* fit *is made* -di: ut *as* fódio, *I dig*, fódi *I dug, or have dug.*

Gio *the terminátion -gio* (fit *is made*) -gi: ceù *as* fúgio, *I flee* (fúgi *I fled, or have fled*).

Pio *the terminátion -pio* fit *is made* -pi: ut *as* cápio *I take,* cépi: éxcipe *excépt* cúpio *I cóvet or desíre,* (cu)pívi; et *and* rápio *I snatch,* rápui; sápio *I sávour or taste,* sápui, átquè *and* sapívi.

Rio *the terminátion -rio* fit *is made* -ri: ut *as* pário *I bring forth young,* péperi.

Tio *the terminátion -tio makes* -ssi, géminans s *doúbling the letter s:* ut *as* quátio *I shake,* quássi, quod *which* víx reperítur *is scárcely found* in úsu *in use.*

Déniquè *fínally* -uo *the énding or terminátion -uo* fit *is made* -ui: ut *as* státuo *I eréct,* státui: plúo *I rain* fórmat *forms* plúvi, sívè *or* plúi: sèd *but* strúo *I build or pile up* (fácit) *makes* strúxi; flúo *I flow,* flúxi.

Quar'ta (conjugátio) *the fourth conjugátion* dat -īs *gives or makes -īs, in the présent tense of the indícative mood áctive,* -ívi *in the preterpérfect:*—ut *as* scío scis *I know,* scívi, mónstrat tíbi *shows to you:* excípias *you may excépt* vénio *I come* dans *gíving* véni; et *and* véneo *I am sold,* vénĭī; raúcio, *I am hoarse,* raúsi: fárcio *I stuff,* fársi; sárcio *I patch,* sársi; sépio *I hedge,* sépsi; séntio *I perceíve,* sénsi; fúlcio *I prop,* fúlsi: ítèm *álso* haúrio *I draw,* dat *gives* haúsi; sáncio, *I estáblish,* sánxi; víncio *I bind,* vínxi; sálio, *the verb sálio,* pro *for* sálto *I leap,* sálui; et *and* amício *I clothe,* amícui.

Sim'plex (vérbum) *ány símple verb* et *and* (súum) compositívum (vérbum) *its cómpound* dat *gives or makes* ídem prætéritum (témpus) *the same preterpérfect tense:* ut *as* dócui *I taught,* edócui, *I taught pérfectly,* mónstrat *shows.* Sed *but* sýllaba *the sýllable* quam *which* símplex (vérbum) *the símple verb* sémpèr *álways* géminat *doúbles* non geminátur *is not doúbled* compósito (vérbo) *in the compoúnd verb:* prætérquàm *excépt* (in) his tríbus (vérbis) *in these three,* præcúrro *I run before,* excúrro *I run out,* repúngo *I prick agaín;* átquè *and* (in vérbis) rítè creátis *in verbs ríghtly fórmed or compoúnded* à *of* do *I give,* dísco *I learn,* sto *I stand,* pósco *I requíre or demánd.*

(Vérbum) compósitum *a verb compoúnded* à *of* plíco *I fold,* cum *with* sub, vèl *or* nómine *a noun,* ut *as* ísta (vérba) *these,* súpplico *I beseéch,* multíplico *I múltiply,* gaúdet *delights* formáre *to form, that is, forms* -plicávi: ápplico *I applý,* cómplico *I fold up,* réplico *I fold back, or lay ópen,* et *and* éxplico *I unfóld,* fórmant *make* quóquè *álso* -ui, *in addítion to -ávi.*

Quámvis *althoúgh* símplex (vérbum) *the símple verb* óleo *I smell* vult *will have* ólui, támèn *yet* quódvìs compósitum (vérbum) *ány* (*that is, évery*) *compoúnd verb* índè *from thence or thereóf* formábit *will form* méliùs *ráther* olévi; àt *but* rédolet *it casts a scent* séquitur *fóllows* fórmam *the form* símplicis (vérbi) *of the símple verb*, átquè *and* súbolet *it smells a líttle*.

Omnia (vérba) compósita *all the verbs compoúnded* à *of* púngo *I prick* formábunt *will form* -púnxi; únum (hórum) *one of these*, repúngo *I prick agaín*, vult *will have* (re)púpugi átquè *and* intérdùm *sómetimes* repúnxi.

(Vérbum) nátum *ány verb compoúnded* à *of* do *I give*, quándò *when* est *it is* tértia infléxio *the third infléxion or conjugátion*, ut *as* áddo *I add*, crédo *I beliéve*, édo *I set forth*, dédo *I yield up*, réddo *I restóre*, pérdo *I lose*, ábdo *I put awáy*, vèl *or* óbdo *I set agaínst*, cóndo *I build*, índo *I put in*, trádo *I delíver*, pródo *I betráy*, véndo *I sell*, (dat) *gives or makes* -dĭdī; àt *but* únum (vérbum ex his vérbis) *one of these*, abscóndo *I hide*, *makes* abscóndi. (Vérbum) nátum *ány verb sprung or derívèd* à *from* sto stās, *I stand*, habébit *will have* -stĭti.

Hæc simplícia vérba *these símple or prímitive verbs*, si *if* componántur *they be compoúnded*, mútant *change* prímam vocálem *the first vówel* (et *both*) præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense*, átquè *and* prætériti (témporis) *of the preterpérfect tense*, in -e *ínto -e*: dámno *I condémn*, lácto *I súckle*, sácro *I dédicate*, fállo *I deceíve*, árceo *I drive awáy*, trácto *I hándle*, fatíscor *I am weáry*, vétus (vérbum) *the old word* cándo *I burn*, cápto *I lie in wait*, jácto *I throw*, pátior *I súffer*, átquè *and* grádior *I step*, pártio *I divíde*, cárpo *I crop or I cull*, pátro *I achiéve or I finish*, scándo *I climb*, spárgo *I sprínkle*; átquè *and* pário *I prodúce young*, cújus dúo náta (vérba) *whose two compoúnds* cómperit *he knows for cértain* et *and* réperit *he finds* dant *give or make the preterpérfect tense* per -i *in -i*: sèd *but* cǽtera (vérba índè náta) *the rest* per -ui *in ui*; vélùt *as* hæc (vérba) *these*, aperíre *to ópen*, operíre *to cóver*.

Hæc dúo compósita (vérba) *let these two cómpounds* à *of* pásco pávi *I feed cáttle*, compésco *I pásture in cómpany or togéther with*, dispésco *I drive from pásture*, noténtur *be nóted* habére *to have, that is, be obsérved as háving* tántùm *ónly* -péscui; cǽtera *the rest*, ut *as*, epásco *I eat up*, servábunt

*will keep or obsérve* úsum *the cústom or úsage* símplicis (vérbi) *of the símple verb.*

Hæc (vérba) *these verbs*, hábeo, *I have*, láteo *I lie hid*, sálio *I leap*, státuo *I eréct*, cádo *I fall*, lǽdo *I hurt*, et *and* tángo *I touch*, átquè *and* cáno *I sing;* sîc *so* quǽro *I seek*, cǽdo cecídi *I beat*, sîc *álso* égeo *I want*, téneo *I hold fast*, táceo *I am sílent*, sápio *I sávour*, átquè *and* rápio *I snatch*, si *if* componántur *they be compoúnded*, mútant *change* prímam vocálem *the first vówel* in i *into -i:* ut, *as*, rápio *I snatch*, rápui; erípio *I take áway by force*, erípui: (verbum) nátum *a verb sprung or deríved* à *from* cáno *I sing, that is, any compoúnd of* cáno, dat *gives or makes* prætéritum *the preterpérfect tense* per -ui *in ui*, ceù *as* cóncino *I sing in cóncert*, concínui.

Sîc *álso* displíceo *I displeáse* à *of* pláceo *I please:* sèd *but* hǽc dúo *these two compoúnd verbs*, compláceo *I please vástly*, cum *with* perplácco *I please véry much*, bénè sérvant *well keep, that is, álways obsérve or fóllow* úsum *the úsage* símplicis (vérbi) *of the símple verb.*

(Vérba) compósita *verbs compoúnded, that is, the cómpounds* à *of* vérbis *the verbs* cálco *I tread*, sálto *I leap or dance*, mútant *change* -a per -u *the létter a ínto -u;* concúlco *I tread upón*, incúlco *I tread in*, resúlto *I reboúnd*, demónstrant *show* id *that* tíbi *to you.*

(Vérba) compósita *verbs compoúnded, that is, the cómpounds* à *of* claúdo *I shut*, quátio *I shake*, lávo *I wash*, rejíciunt -a *cast áway the létter -a:* occlúdo *I shut agaínst*, exclúdo *I shut out*, à *from* claúdo *I shut*, dócet *teáches or shows* id *this:* átquè *and* percútio *I strike*, excútio *I strike out*, à *from* quátio *I shake:* à *from* lávo, *I wash*, (verba) náta *the verbs deríved, that is, the cómpounds* próluo *I drench*, díluo *I wash out* (dócent id, *teach or show it.*)

Si *if* compónas *you compoúnd* (hæc vérba) *these verbs*, ágo *I act*, émo *I buy*, sédeo *I sit*, régo, *I rule*, frángo, *I break*, et *and* cápio *I take*, jácio *I cast*, lácio *I allúre*, spécio *I behóld*, prémo *I press*, pángo *I fásten*, mútant *they change* síbi *for themsélves* prímam vocálem *the first vówel* præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense* in -i *ínto -i*, núnquàm *néver* prætériti (témporis) *of the preterpérfect tense:* ceù *as of* frángo *I break*, refríngo *I break ópen*, refrégi; incípio *I begín*, incépi, à *of* cápio *I take:* sèd *but* paúca (vérba) *let a few* noténtur *be márked*, námquè *for* pérago *I fínish* séquitur

*fóllows* súum símplex (vérbum) *its own símple verb*, átquè *and* sátago *I am búsy:* átquè *and* dégo *I lead on or pass, or, I live*, ab *from* ágo *I act*, dat *gives* dégi : cógo *I bring togéther*, cöégi ; sîc *so* à *from* rêgo *I rule*, pérgo *I go fórward* (fácit) *makes* perréxi: quóquè *álso* súrgo *I rise* vult *will have* surréxi, médiâ sýllabâ *the míddle sýllable* præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense* adémptâ *béing táken awáy.*

Ísta quátuor compósita (vérba) *these four cómpounds* a *of* pángo *I fix or fásten* rétinent -a *keep the -a;* depángo *I fix in the ground*, oppángo *I fásten agaínst*, circumpángo *I fásten aboút*, átquè *and* repángo *I fásten agaín.*

Fácio *I make or do* váriat *chánges* nîl *nóthing*, nísì *unléss* præpósito præeúnte *a preposítion góing befóre it, that is, when it is compoúnded with a preposítion :* olfácio *I smell out* dócet *teáches or demónstrates* id *that*, cum *with* calfácio *I make hot*, átquè *and* infício *I inféct.*

(Vérba) náta *verbs sprung or descénded* à *from* légo *I read, that is, the cómpounds of légo*, re, per, præ, sub, trans, a præeúnte *the prepositions, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, góing befóre*, sérvant *keep* vocálem *the vówel* præséntis (témporis) *of the présent tense:* cǽtera (compósita vérba à légo) *the rest of the cómpounds of légo* mútant *change it, námely, the vówel -e*, in -i *ínto i;* de quíbus (compósitis vérbis) *of which* hæc (vérba quæ sequúntur) *these* tántùm *ónly*, intélligo *I understánd*, díligo *I love*, négligo *I negléct*, fáciunt *make* prætéritum (témpus) *their preterpérfect tense* léxi ; ómnia réliqua (compósita vérba à légo) *all the rest*, légi.

Nunc *now* díscas *you may learn* formáre *to form* supínum *the súpine* ex prætérito (témpore) *from the preterpérfect tense.*

Bi *the terminátion -bi* súmit *takes* síbi *to itsélf* -tum : námquè *for* sîc *so* bĭ'bi *I drank* fit *is made* bíbitum.

Ci *the terminátion -ci* fit *is made* -ctum ; ut *as* víci *I cónquered or overcáme*, víctum, testátur *téstifies or shows*, et *and* íci *I smote* dans *máking* íctum ; féci *I made or did*, fáctum ; quóquè *álso* jéci *I threw or cast*, jáctum.

Di *the terminátion -di* fit *is made* -sum ; ut *as* vídi *I saw*, vísum : quǽdam (supína) *some* géminant s *doúble the létter s;* ut *as* pándi *I ópened*, pássum, sédi *I sat*, séssum ; ádde *add* scídi *I cut*, quod *which* dat *gives* scíssum ; átquè *and* fídi *I cleft*, físsum ; quóquè *álso* fódi *I dug*, fóssum.

Hic *here* étiàm *álso* advértas *you may mark*, quód *that*

príma sýllaba *the first sýllable*, quam *which* prætéritum (témpus) *the preterpérfect tense* vult *wíshes* gemınári *to be doúbled, that is, will have doúbled*, non geminátur *is not doúbled* supínis *in the súpines:* átquè id *and this* tŏtóndi *I clípped or shore*, dans *máking* tónsum, dócet *teáches or shows;* átquè *and* cecídi *I beat*, quod *which* dat *gives* cǽsum; et *and* cécidi *I fell*, quod *which* (dat *gives*) cásum; átquè *and* tĕténdi *I bent*, quod *which* (hábet) *has* ténsum et *álso* téntum; tútudi *I poúnded*, túnsum; átquè *and* dédi *I gave*, quod *which* júre *by right* póscit *requíres* dátum: átquè *and* mŏmórdi *I bit* vult *will have* mórsum.

Gi *the terminátion -gi* fit *is made* -ctum; ut *as* légi *I have read*, léctum; pégi *I fástened* átquè *and* pépigi *I cóvenanted* dant *give or make* páctum; frégi *I broke*, fráctum; quóquè *álso* tétigi *I toúched*, táctum; égi *I ácted*, áctum: púpugi *I pricked*, púnctum; fúgi *I fled* dat *gives or makes* fúgitum.

Li *the terminátion -li* fit *is made* -sum; ut *as* sálli *the préterite of* sállo, stans *stánding* pro *for* cóndio sále *I seáson with salt*, sálsum; pépuli *I drove awáy* dat *gives or makes* púlsum; céculi *I broke*, cúlsum; átquè *and* feféllí *I deceíved*, fálsum; vélli *I plúcked* dat *gives* vúlsum; quóquè *álso* túli *I bore* hábet *has* látum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, *the terminátions -mi, -ni, -pi, and -qui*, fórmant *form* -tum, vélùt *as* (id est) maniféstum *is mánifest* hîc *here:* émi *I bought*, émptum; véni *I came*, véntum; cécini *I sang* à *from* cáno *I síng*, cántum; cépi *I took* à *from* cápio *I take*, cáptum; quóquè *álso* cœ́pi *I begán*, cœ́ptum; rúpi *I brake or broke* à *from* rúmpo *I break*, rúptum; quóquè *álso* líqui *I left*, líctum.

Ri *the terminátion -ri* fit *is made* -sum: ut *as* vérri *I brúshed*, vérsum:—éxcipe *excépt* péperi *I brought forth young*, pártum.

Si *the énding -si* fit *is made* -sum: ut *as* vísi *I went to see*, vísum: támèn *but* mísi *I sent* formábit *will form* míssum, s gemináto *the létter s béing doúbled:*—éxcipe *excépt* fúlsi *I própped*, fúltum; haúsi *I drew*, haústum; sársi *I pátched*, sártum; quóquè *álso* fársi *I stúffed*, fártum; újssi *I burnt*, ústum; géssi *I cárried or bore*, géstum: tórsi *I wreáthed* requírit *requíres or hath* dúo (supína) *two súpines* tórtum, et *and* tórsum; indúlsi *I indúlged*, indúltum átquè *and* indúlsum.

Psi *the terminátion -psi* fit *is made* -tum: ut *as* scrípsi *I wrote,* scríptum; quóquè *álso* scúlpsi *I engráved,* scúlptum.

Ti *the terminátion -ti* fit *is made* -tum: námquè *for* stéti *the préterite stéti* à *from* sto *I stand,* átquè *and* stíti *the préterite stíti* à *from* sísto *I make to stand,* ámbo *both* rítè *by right* dant *give* státum: támèn *but* éxcipe *excépt* vérti *I túrned,* vérsum.

Vi *the terminátion -vi* fit *is made* -tum: ut *as* flávi *I blew,* flátum: éxcipe *excépt* pávi *I fed cáttle,* pástum: lávi *I wáshed* dat *gives* lótum, intérdùm *sómetimes* laútum, átquè *and* lavátum; potávi *I drank* fácit *makes* pótum, intérdùm *sómetimes* et *álso* potátum: sèd *but* fávi *I fávoured* (fácit) *makes* faútum; cávi *I bewáred or I took care,* caútum. A *from* séro sévi *I sow* rítè fórmes *you may ríghtly form* sátum: lívi *I besmeáred* átquè *and* líni *I besmeáred* dant *give* lítum; sólvi *I loósened* à *from* sólvo *I loósen,* solútum; vólvi *I rólled* à *from* vólvo *I roll,* volútum: singultívi *I sóbbed* vult *will have* singúltum: véneo, vénis, vénivi *I am sold,* vénum; sepelívi *I búried,* rítè *by right,* sepúltum.

(Vérbum) quod *a verb that* dat *gives or makes* -ui dat *gives or makes* -ĭtum: ut *as* dómui *I támed,* dómitum: éxcipe *excépt* quódvis vérbum *what verb you like, that is, évery verb* in -uo *ending in -uo,* quíà *becaúse* sémpèr formábit *it (námely, ány verb of that terminátion) will álways form* -ui in -útum *-ui ínto útum;* ut *as* éxui *I put off,* exútum: déme *take awáy or excépt* rúi, à *from* rúo *I rush,* dans *máking* rúitum: sécui *I cut* vult *will have* séctum; nécui *I slew,* néctum; átquè *and* frícui *I rúbbed,* fríctum; ítèm *álso* míscui *I míngled,* místum: átquè *and* amícui *I clóthed* dat *gives* amíctum: tórrui *I roásted* hábet *has* tóstum; dócui *I taught,* dóctum; átquè *and* ténui *I held,* téntum; consúlui *I consúlted,* consúltum; álui *I noúrished or fed,* áltum, átquè *and* álitum: sîc *so* sálui *I leáped,* sáltum; cólui *I tílled,* quóquè *álso* occúlui *I hid,* cúltum; pínsui *I poúnded or ground* hábet *has* pístum; rápui *I snátched,* ráptum; átquè *and* sérui *I have set in órder,* à *from* séro *I set in órder,* vult *will have* sértum:—sîc *so* quóquè *álso* téxui *I wove* hábet *has* téxtum.

Sèd *but* hæc (vérba) *these verbs* mútant *change* -ui in -sum *-ui ínto -sum:* nàm *for* cénseo *I judge* hábet *hath* cénsum; céllui *I broke,* célsum: méto méssui *I reap* hábet *has* quóquè

*álso* méssum : ítèm *líkewise* néxui, *I knítted* hábet *has* néxum, sîc *so* quóquè *álso* péxui *I cómbed*, péxum.

Xi *the terminátion -xi* fit *is made* -ctum : ut *as* vínxi *I bound*, vínctum : quínque (vérba) *five verbs* abjíciunt n *cast awáy the létter n ;* ut *as* fínxi *I fórmed or fáshioned* fíctum ; mínxi *I made wáter*, míctum ; ádjice *add* pínxi *I painted* dans *gíving* píctum ; strínxi *I strípped or réndered bare*, stríctum ; quóquè *álso* ríuxi *I grínned*, ríctum. Fléxi *I bent*, pléxi, *I twísted*, fíxi *I fástened*, dant *give or make* -xum ; et *and* flúo *I flow*, flúxum.

Quódquè compósitum supínum *évery cómpound súpine* formátur *is fórmed* ut *as* (súum) símplex (supínum) *its own símple súpine*, quámvìs *though* éadem sýllaba *the same sýllable* non stet *may not stand, that is, does not contínue* sémpèr *álways* utríque (supíno) *to éither súpine of the two, that is, to them both.* (Vérba) compósita *verbs compoúnded* à *of* túnsum *to pound, that is, the cómpounds of túnsum*, n démptâ *the létter n béing táken awáy*, (fáciunt) *make* -túsum : (vérbum compósitum) *ány cómpound* à *of* rúitum *to rush*, médiâ i *the míddle létter i* démptâ *béing táken awáy*, fit *is made* -rútum ; et *and* quóquè *álso* à *of* sáltum *to leap*, súltum. (Vérba) compósita *the cómpounds* à *of or from* séro *I sow* quándò *whenéver* fórmat *it forms* sátum dant *give or make* -sĭtum.

Hæc (supína) *these súpines* cáptum *to take*, fáctum *to do*, jáctum *to cast or throw*, ráptum *to snatch*, mútant -a per -e *change -a ínto -e ;* et *and* cántum *to sing*, pártum *to bring forth young*, spársum *to sprínkle*, cárptum *to crop or cull*, quóquè *álso* fártum *to stuff.*

Vérbum *the verb* édo *I eat*, compósitum *compoúnded, that is, when it is compoúnded*, non fácit *makes not* -éstum, sèd *but* -ésum : únum (vérbum compósitum ab édo) *one of its cómpounds* duntáxat *ónly* cómedo *I eat up*, formábit *will form* utrúmque *éither one or the óther, that is, both -ésum and -éstum.*

A *from* nósco *I know* (hæc) dúo (compósita vérba) *these two cómpounds* tántùm *ónly* cógnitum *to know* et *and* ágnitum *to know again or to recognise* habéntur *are had or are found ;* cǽtera (compósita vérba à nósco) *the rest* dant *give or make* nótum :—nóscitum *the súpine nóscitum* jàm *now* est *is* in núllo úsu *in no use, that is, such súpine is not now in use.*

Ver'ba in -or *verbs énding in -or* admíttunt *admít or take*

prætéritum (témpus) *their preterpérfect tense* ex posterióre supíno *from the látter (or sécond) súpine*, -u vérso *the fínal -u béing túrned* per -us *ínto -us*, et *and* sum vèl fúi *the auxíliary, sum or fúi*, consociáto *béing línked or jóined with it, that is, béing ádded to the new terminátion ;* ut *as* à *from or of* léctu *to be read* (formátur) *is fórmed* léctus sum vèl fúi *I have been read.* At *but* hórum (verbórum) *of these verbs* nùnc *sómetimes* est *there is* depónens (vérbum) *a verb depónent*, nùnc *at óther times* est *there is* commúne (vérbum) *a cómmon verb* notándum *to be nóted or obsérved:* nàm *for* lábor *I glide or slide* dat *gives* lápsus; pátior *I súffer*, pássus, et *and* (vérba) náta éjus *verbs sprung from it, that is, its cómpounds*, ut *as*, compátior *I súffer togéther with*, fórmans compássus *fórming compássus*, átquè *and* perpétior *I endúre* (fórmans *fórming*) perpéssus: fáteor *I own or conféss* dat *gives* fássus, et *and* (vérba) náta índè *ány verbs oríginating from thence, that is, all its cómpounds;* ut *as* confíteor *I conféss or acknówledge*, fórmans *fórming* conféssus; átquè *and* diffíteor *I denỳ or disavów* (fórmans *fórming*) difféssus:—grádior *I step* dat *gives or makes* gréssus, et *and* (vérba) náta índè *ány verbs oríginating from thence, that is, its cómpounds;* ut *as* digrédior *I step asíde*, digréssus: júnge *join* fatíscor *I am weáry*, féssus sum; métior *I mete or meásure*, ménsus sum; et *and* útor *I use*, úsus.

Ordior *the verb órdior* pro *for* téxo *I weave* dat *gives or makes* ordítus, pro *for* incépto *I begín*, órsus; nítor *I strive* (fácit *makes*) nísus, vèl *or* níxus sum; et *and* ulcíscor *I avénge or I revénge* , últus: símùl *álso* iráscor *I am ángry*, irátus; átquè *and* réor *I think or I suppóse*, rátus sum; oblivíscor *I forgét*, vult *will have* oblítus sum; frúor *I enjóy*, óptat *wíshes or choóses* frúctus, vèl *or* frúitus: júnge *join or add* miseréri *to have píty*, misértus.

Túor *I see*, et *and* túeor *I defénd*, non vult *wíshes not, that is, will not have* tútus, sèd *but* túitus sum: ádde *add* locútus, à *from or of* lóquor *I speak ;* et *and* ádde *add* secútus, à *of or from* séquor *I fóllow.*

Expérior *I try*, fácit *makes* expértus; pacíscor *I cóvenant or bárgain*, gaúdet *delíghts* formáre *to form, that is, will form* páctus sum; nancíscor *I get*, náctus; apíscor *I obtaín*, quod *which* est *is* vétus vérbum *an old verb*, áptus sum; úndè *from whence* adipíscor *I get*, adéptus.

Júnge *join or add* quéror *I complain*, quéstus; júnge *join or add* proficíscor *I go*, proféctus; expergíscor *I awáke*, experréctus sum; et *and* quóquè *álso* hæc (vérba) *these verbs*, comminíscor *I devíse*, comméntus; náscor *I am born*, nátus; átquè *and* mórior *I die*, mórtuus; átquè *and* órior *I rise*, quod *which* fácit *makes* prætéritum (témpus) *its preterpérfect tense*, órtus.

Hæc (vérba) *these verbs* hábent *have* prætéritum (témpus) *a preterpérfect tense* actívæ (vócis) *of the áctive*, et *and* passívæ vócis *of the pássive voice:* cœ́no *I sup*, fórmat tíbi *forms to you* cœnávi *I súpped*, et *and* cœnátus sum *I súpped;* júro *I swear*, jurávi, et *and* jurátus; átquè *and* póto *I drink*, potávi *I drank*, et *and* pótus; títubo *I stúmble*, titubávi *I stúmbled*, vèl *or* titubátus.

Prándeo *I dine* dat *gives* prándi, et *and* pránsus sum, pláceo *I please*, plácui, et *and* plácitus: suésco *I accústom*, vult *will have* suévi, átquè *and* suétus.

Núbo *I márry* (hábet *has*) núpsi, átquè *and álso* núpta sum; méreor *I desérve*, méritus sum, vèl *or* mérui: ádde *add* líbet *it pleáses*, líbuit, líbitum; et *and* ádde *add* lícet *it is allówed, or it is láwful*, quod *which* (fácit) *makes* lícuit, lícitum; tǽdet *it weáries*, quod *which* dat *gives or makes* tǽduit, et *and* pertǽsum: ádde *add* púdet *it ashámes or it ashámeth*, fáciens *máking* púduit, átquè *and* púditum; átquè *and* píget *it irks or grieves*, quod *which* fórmat tíbi *forms for you* píguit *it írked*, átquè *and* pígitum, *it írked.*

Neútro-passívum (vérbum) *a neúter-pássive verb* fórmat tíbi *forms for you* prætéritum (témpus) *its preterpérfect tense* sîc *thus, or in the mánner fóllowing;* gaúdeo *I am glad*, gavísus sum; fído *I trust*, físus; et *and* aúdeo *I dare*, aúsus sum; fío *I becóme or am made*, fáctus; sóleo *I am wont*, sólitus sum.

(Hæc vérba) fúgiunt *these verbs flee or avoíd* prætéritum (témpus) *a preterpérfect tense, that is, want the préterite:* vérgo *I verge or bend*, ámbigo *I doubt*, glísco *I spread*, fatísco *I chink*, pólleo I *am válid or pówerful*, nídeo *I shine:* ad hæc (vérba) *to these* (áddas *you may add*) inceptíva (vérba) *incéptive verbs;* ut *as* puerásco *I verge tówards chíldhood:*— et *and* passíva (vérba) *pássive verbs*, quíbus *in which* actíva (vérba) *the áctives* caruêre *wánted, that is, of which the áctive voices want* supínis *the súpines;* ut *as* métuor *I am dreáded,*

tímeor, *I am feáred:* (ádde *add*) ómnia meditatíva (vérba) *all méditative or desíderative verbs*, præter *excépt* partúrio *I am in lábour or chíldbirth*, esúrio *I am húngry;* quæ dúo (vérba) *which two verbs* sérvant *keep* prætéritum (témpus) *the preter-pérfect tense.*

Hæc vérba *these vèrbs* rárò *séldom* aut *or* núnquàm *néver* retinébunt *will retaín or keep, that is, will have* supínum *a sú-pine;* lámbo *I lick*, míco mícui *I glítter*, rúdo *I bray*, scábo *I claw*, párco pĕpérci *I spare*, dispésco *I drive from pásture*, pósco *I requíre or I demánd*, dísco *I learn*, compésco *I re-straín*, quinísco *I nod the head*, dégo *I lead on or pass*, ángo *I throttle*, sûgo *I suck*, língo *I lick*, níngo *I snow*, átquè *and* sátago *I am búsy*, psállo *I play on an ínstrument*, vólo *I am wílling*, nólo *I am unwílling*, málo *I am more wílling or would ráther*, trémo *I trémble*, strídeo, strído, *I screak*, fláveo *I am yéllow*, líveo *I am black and blue*, ávet *he cóvets*, páveo *I dread*, connívco *I connive with or wink at*, férvet *it is hot.*

(Vérbum) compósitum *a verb compoúnded* à *of* núo *I nod;* ut *as* rénuo *I refúse:* à *of* cádo *I fall;* ut *as* áccido *I fall upón*, præter *excépt* óccido *I fall down*, quod *which* fácit *makes* occásum, átque *and* récido *I fall back*, recásum: réspuo *I refúse*, línquo, *I leave*, lúo *I pay*, métuo *I fear*, clúo *I shine or am fámous*, frígeo *I am cold*, cálveo *I am bald*, et *and* stérto *I snore*, tímeo *I fear:* sîc *so* lúceo *I shine;* et *and* árceo *I repél or drive awáy*, cújus *whereóf* (*or of which verb*) com-pósita (vérba) *the cómpounds* hábent *have* -ércitum:—sîc *so* (vérba) náta *verbs sprung or deríved* à *from* grúo *I cry like a crane*, ut *as*, íngruo *I inváde:* et *and* quæcúmque neútra (vérba) *whatsoéver neúters* secúndæ (conjugatiónis) *of the sécond conjugátion* formántur *are fórmed* in -ui: excípias *you may excépt* óleo *I smell*, dóleo *I am in pain or I grieve*, pláceo *I please*, átquè, *and* tácco *I am sílent*, páreo *I obéy;* ítèm *álso* cáreo *I want*, nóceo *I hurt*, jáceo *I lie exténded*, át-què *and* láteo *I am hid or conceáled*, et *álso* váleo *I am well or in health*, cáleo *I am hot:* námquè *for* hæc (vérba) *these verbs* gaúdent *delíght* supíno *in a súpine, that is, these verbs have one súpine.*

# SYNTAXIS,

OR,

# THE RULES OF GRAMMAR

## CONSTRUED.

---

Personále vérbum *a pérsonal verb or a verb pérsonal, that is, a verb which has díferent pérsons* concórdat *agreés* cum *with* nominatívo (cásu) *its nóminative case* número *in númber* et *and* persónâ *in pérson:* ut *as,* vía *the way* ad *to* bónos móres *good mánners* est *is* núnquàm séra *néver (too) late.*

Nominatívus (cásus) *the nóminative case* pronóminum *of prónouns* ràrò exprímitur *is séldom expréssed* nísì *unléss* grátiâ *for the sake* distinctiónis *of distínction,* aùt *or* émphasis *of énergy of expréssion:* ut *as,* vos *ye* damnâstis (*for* damnavístis) *have condémned (me);* quásì *as though* dícat *he should say,* némo prætéreà *no one else.* Tu *thou* es *art* patrónus *our pátron,* tu *thou* párens *our fáther,* (*líterally, párent,*) si *if* tu *thou* déseris *forsáke us* periĭmus (*for* perívimus) *we pérish* (*líterally, we have pérished*), *or are undóne;* quásì *as though* dícat *he should say,* tu *thou* es patrónus *art our pátron* præcípuè *chíefly or in an espécial mánner,* et *and* præ *befóre* áliis (*all*) *óthers.* (Ílle) fértur *he is repórted* designâsse (*for* designavísse) *to have commítted* (*líterally, to have plótted or márked out*) atrócia flagítia *atrócious víllanies, that is, hórrid crimes.*

Aliquándò *sómetimes* orátio *a séntence* est *is* nominatívus (cásus) *the nóminative case* vérbo *to a verb:* ut, *as* dĭdicísse *to have learnt* ingénuas ártes *the ingénuous arts, that is, the líberal sciences* fidélitèr *fáithfully or thóroughly* emóllit *sóftens much* móres *the mánners,* nèc *nor* sínit (éos) *súffers them* ésse *to be* féros *brútal or rude.*

Aliquándò *sómetimes* advérbium *an ádverb* cum *with* geni-

tìvo (cásu) *a génitive case* (est nominatívus cásus vérbo *is the nóminative to a verb*) :—ut *as,* pártìm virórum *part of the men* cecidérunt *fell, that is, were kílled or slain* in béllo *in war or the war.*

Vérba *verbs* infinitívi módi *of the infínitive mood* frequéntèr *fréquently or óftentimes* státuunt *set* ánte se *befóre them* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* pro *for or insteád of* nominatívo (cásu) *a nóminative,* conjunctióne *the conjúnction* quòd *that* vèl *or* ut *to the end that* omíssâ *béing omítted or left out:* ut *as,* gaúdeo *I rejoíce or I am glad* te *that thou* rediísse (*for* redivísse) *have retúrned, that is, art retúrned* incólumem *safe.*

Vérbum *a verb* pósitum *pláced* inter *betweén* dúos nominatívos (cásus) *two nóminative cáses* diversórum numerórum *of dífferent númbers* pótest *can or may* concordáre *agreé* cum *with* alterútro (illórum) *eíther one of them:* ut *as,* íræ *the quárrels* (*literally, ángers*) amántium *of lóvers* (*líterally, of pérsons lóving*) est *is* integrátio *the renéwal* amóris *of love.* Péctus (*her*) *breast* quóquè *álso* fíunt *becómes* róbora *oak* (*líterally, oaks*).

Nómen *a noun* multitúdinis *of múltitude* singuláre *síngular, that is, ány colléctive noun of the síngular númber,* júngitur *is joíned* quandóque *sómetimes* plurâli vérbo *to a plúral verb:* ut *as,* pars *part* (*of them*) abiêre (*for* abivêre) *have gone, that is, are gone awáy.* Utérque *each or both of the two* deludúntur *are delúded or beguíled* dólis *with tricks, that is, are gúlled by decéptions.*

Impersonália (vérba) *impérsonal verbs* non hábent *have not* nominatívum (cásum) *ány nóminative* enunciátum *expréssed* (*in Látin*) :—ut, *as,* tædet me *it wearies me, that is, I am weáry or tíred* vítæ *of life.* Est *it is* pertæsum *altogéther weárisome, that is, I am quite tíred or sick* conjúgii *of wédlock.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives,* participia *párticiples,* et *and* pronómina *prónouns* concórdant *agreé* cum substantívo *with their súbstantive,* génere *in génder,* número *in númber,* et *and* cásu *in case* :—ut *as,* rára ávis *a scarce or an uncómmon bird* in térris *in the lands, that is, in the world,* átquè *and* simíllima *very* (*much*) *like únto* nígro cýcno *a black swan.*

Aliquándò *sómetimes* orátio *a séntence* súpplet *súpplies* lócum *the place* substantívi *of a súbstantive,* adjectívo *the ádjective* pósito *being put* in neútro génere *in the neúter génder* :—ut *as,*

audíto *it béing heard, or it háving been heard,* régem *that the king* profícisci *was set out* Dorobérniam *for Dóver.*

Relatívum *the rélative* concórdat *agreés* cum *with* antecedénte *its antecédent,* génere *in génder,* número *in númber,* et *and* persónâ *in pérson :*—ut *as,* quis *who* est *is* bónus vir *a good man?* (Vir) qui *the man who* sérvat *keeps* consúlta *the decreés* pátrum *of the fáthers or sénators,* (vir) qui *the man who* (sérvat) *keeps* léges *the laws* átquè *and* júra *the órdinances or rites.*

Aliquándò *sómetimes* orátio *a séntence* pónitur *is put* pro *for* antecedénte *the antecédent :*—ut, *as,* véni *I came* ad éam *to her* in témpore *in time or in seáson,* quod (negótium) *which* est *is* prímum (negótium) *the first or main thing* ómnium rérum *of all things, that is, the chief búsiness or concérn of all.*

Relatívum *a rélative* collocátum *pláced* ínter *betweén* dúo substantíva *two súbstantives* diversórum génerum *of dífferent génders* et *and* (diversórum) numerórum (*of dífferent*) *númbers* concórdat *agreés* intérdùm *at times* cum *with* posterióre (substantívo) *the látter (súbstantive) :*—ut *as,* hómines *men* tuéntur *regárd* íllum glóbum *that globe* quæ *which* dícitur *is cálled* térra *the earth.*

Aliquándò *sómetimes* relatívum *the rélative* concórdat *agreés* cum *with* primitívo (nómine) *the prímitive noun,* quod *which* subauditur *is understoód* in possessívo (nómine) *in the posséssive :*—ut *as,* ómnes (hómines) *all men* (cœpérunt) dícere *begán to say* ómnia bóna (vérba) *all good or hópeful words,* et *and* laudáre *to praise or to extól* méas fortúnas *my lúcky stars or good fórtune* qui habérem *who had* gnátum *a son* prædítum *endúed* táli ingénio *with such a disposítion.*

Si *if* nominatívus (cásus) *a nóminative case* interponátur *be put betweén* relatívo *the rélative* et *and* vérbo *the verb,* relatívum *the rélative* régitur *is góverned* à *by* vérbo *the verb,* aút *or* ab áliâ dictióne *by some óther word* quæ *which* locátur *is pláced* in oratióne *in the séntence,* cum vérbo *with the verb :*—ut *as,* grátia *fávour* ábest *is wánting, thát is, thanks are lost* ab offício *in a kíndness* quod *which* móra *báckwardness* tárdat *retárds,—that is, which tárdiness or deláy keeps back.* Cújus númen *whose divínity or divíne will and présence* adóro *I adóre.*

Quúm *when* dúo substantíva *two súbstantives* divérsæ signi-

ficatiónis *of a different signification* concúrrunt *meet togéther,* postérius (substantívum) *the látter* (*súbstantive*) pónitur *is put* in genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case:* ut *as,* ámor *the love or the líking* númmi *of móney* créscit *increáses* quántùm *as much as* pecúnia ípsa *the móney itsélf* créscit *increáses.*

Hic genitívus (cásus) *this génitive case* aliquándò *at times* vértitur *is chánged* in datívum (cásum) *into the dátive:*—ut *as* (ílle) est *he is* páter *a fáther* úrbi *to the cíty,* átquè *and* marítus *a húsband* úrbi *to the cíty; that is, he is the fáther and húsband of the cíty.*

Adjectívum *an ádjective* in neútro génere *in or of the neúter génder* pósitum *put* síne substantívo *withoút a súbstantive,* póstulat *requíres* aliquándò *sómetimes* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case:*—ut *as,* paúlulum pecúniæ *véry líttle of móney, that is, véry líttle móney.*

Intérdùm *sómetimes* genitívus (cásus) *the génitive case* pónitur tántùm *is set alóne,* prióre substantívo *the fórmer súbstantive of the two* subaudíto *béing understoód* per ellípsin *by the fígure ellípsis:* ut *as,* úbì *when* véneris *you shall have come, that is, when you are come* ad Diánæ *to Diána's* íto *turn* ad déxtram (mánum) *to the right hand:* subaúdi *understánd* témplum *témple; that is, when you cóme to the témple of Diána, turn to the right.*

Dúo substantíva *two súbstantives* ejúsdem réi *of the same thing, that is, respécting the same affáir,* ponúntur *are put or pláced* in eódem cásu *in the same case:*—ut *as,* ópes *ríches,* irritaménta malórum *the incéntives of évils or of vice,* effodiúntur *are dug out* (*of the earth*).

Laus *praise,* vitupérium *díspraise,* vèl *or* quálitas *the quálity* réi *of a thing,* pónitur *is put* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case,* étiam *álso* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case:* —ut *as,* púer *a boy* ingénui vúltûs *of an ingénuous cóuntenance or áspect,* átquè *and* ingénui pudóris *of an ingénuous báshfulness or módesty.* Vir *a man* núllâ fíde *of no fidélity or intégrity, that is, a man of no hónesty or príncíple.*

O'pus *need or neédfulness* et *and* úsus *use or occásion* éxigunt *requíre* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case:*—ut *as,* ópus est nóbis *there is need to us, that is, we have need* túâ auctoritáte *of your authórity.* Non accépit *he received not, that is, he would not receíve* pecúniam *móney* ab íis *from them,* quâ (pecúniâ) *of which,* (*námely, móney,*) ésset *there could be*

*or there was* níhil úsûs *nóthing of occásion, that is, no need* síbi *únto him: in óther words, of which he had no need, or for which he had no occásion.*

Aútèm *but* ópus *the word ópus* vidétur *seems* quandóquè *sómetimes* póni *to be put* adjectívè *ádjectively* pro *for* necessárius *nécessary:*—ut *as,* dux *a leáder* et *and* aúctor *an advíser* est *is* ópus *nécessary* nóbis *for us.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives* quæ *which* signíficant *sígnify* dēsidérium *desíre,* nōtítiam *knówledge,* mĕmóriam *mémory,* tĭmórem *fear,* átquè *and* contrária *things cóntrary, that is, the cóntraries or ópposites* íis *to these,* éxigunt *requíre* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case:* ut *as,* natúra *the náture* hóminum *of men, that is, of mánkind,* est *is* ávida *fond* nŏvitátis *of nóvelty.* Mens *a mind* prǽscia *préscient or foreknówing* futúri *of the fúture or of that which is to come.* Ésto *be thou* mémor *míndful* brévis ǽvi *of the short age, that is, of the shórtness of life.* Ímmemor *unmíndful* benefícii *of a kindness.* Imperítus rérum *unskílled of things, that is, unacquáinted with the world.* Rúdis bélli *rude or aúkward of war, that is, ígnorant of wárfare.* Tímidus deórum *feárful of the gods.* Impávidus súi *feárless of himsélf.* Cum plúrimis áliis (adjectívis) *with mány óther ádjectives* quæ *which* dénŏtant *denóte or decláre* affectiónem *afféction or pássion* ánimi *of mind.*

Verbália adjectíva *vérbal ádjectives, that is, ádjectives deríved from verbs,* in -ax *énding in -ax,* étiàm *líkewise* éxigunt *requíre* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case:*—ut *as,* aúdax ingénii *bold of dispòsítion, that is, bold by náture* Témpus *time* édàx *consúmptive* rérum *of things; meáning, time ís the eáter or consúmer of all things.*

Partitíva nómina *pártitive nouns,* numerália (nómina) *númerals or nouns of númber,* comparatíva (nómina) *compáratives or nouns of the compárative degreé,* et *and* superlatíva (nómina) *supérlatives,* et *álso* quǽdam adjectíva *cértain ádjectives* pósita *put* partitívè *pártitively* éxigunt *requíre* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* à quo (genitívo cásu) *from which génitive (that is, from the noun which they requíre to be in the génitive case)* et mutuántur *they álso bórrow* génus *their own génder:*—ut *as,* áccipe *take* útrum hórum *which of these two* mávis *you would ráther.* Rómulus fúit *Rómulus was* prímus (rex) *the first* Romanórum régum *of the Róman kings.* Déxtra (mánus) *the right* est *is* fórtior (mánus) *the*

*strónger* mánuum *of the hands.* Médius (dígitus) *the míddle fínger* est *is* longíssimus (dígitus) *the lóngest* digitórum *of the fíngers.* Sáncte (déus) deórum *O hóly of gods, that is, O sácred déity,* séquimur te *we fóllow thee.*

Aútèm *but* (hæc nómina) usurpántur *they are usúrped or úsed* et *álso* cum *with* his præpositiónibus *these prepositions* à, ab, de, è, ex, ínter, ánte:—ut *as,* tértius *the third* ab Ænéâ *from Ænéas.* Sólus *the ónly one* de súperis *of the gods abóve.* Álter *one* è vóbis *of you* (*two*) es *art* déus *a god.* Prímus *the first* ínter *amóng* ómnes *all.* Prímus *the first* ánte ómnes *befóre all.*

Secúndus *the ádjective secúndus* (*sígnifying, sécond or inférior to*) aliquándò *sómetimes* éxigit *requíres* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* haùd secúndus *not inférior or sécond* últi *to any one* véterum *of the áncients* virtúte *in válour.*

Interrogatívum *an interrógative* et *and* redditívum éjus *its rédditive or respóndent, that is, the word that ánswers to it* érunt *will be, that is, must be* ejúsdem cásûs *of the same case* et *and* (ejúsdem) témporis (*of the same*) *tense,* nísì *unléss or excépt* vóces *words* váriæ constructiónis *of a dífferent constrúction* adhibeántur *be adhíbited or made use of:*—ut *as,* quárum rérum *of what things* est *is there* núlla satíetas *no satíety or fúlness?* Dīvĭtĭárum *of ríches.* Nĕ *whéther* accúsas *do you accúse* (*me*) fúrti *of theft,* àn *or* homicídii *of hómicide or múrder?* Utróquè *of both, námely, of theft and of múrder.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives* quíbus *by which* cómmodum *advántage,* incómmodum *dísadvantage,* similitúdo *líkeness,* dissimilitúdo *únlikeness,* volúptas *pleásure,* submíssio *submíssion,* aùt *or* relátio *relátion* ad áliquid (negótium) *to ány thing* significátur *is sígnified,* póstulant *require* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:* ut *as,* si *if* fácis *you do* (*or take care*) ut *that* sit *he be* idóneus *sérviceable* pátriæ *to his coúntry,* útilis *úseful* ágris *únto the lands.* Túrba *a crowd, or múltitude,* grávis *troúblesome* pácì *to the peace,* átquè *and* inimíca *hóstile or avérse* plácidæ quiéti *to plácid ease, that is, to unrúffled tranquíllity or quíetness.* Símilis *like* pátri *his fáther.* Cólor *the cólour* qui *which* érat *was* álbus *white* est *is* nùnc *now* contrárius *cóntrary or revérse* álbo *to white.* Jucúndus *pleásant or delíghtful* amícis *to his friends.* Súpplex *súppliant or submíssive* ómnibus (homínibus) *to all.* Pöéta *a póet* est *is* finítimus *véry near akín* oratóri *to an órator.*

Hùc *híther* referúntur *are reférred* nómina *nouns* compósita *compoúnded* ex præpositióne con (pro cum) *of the prepositíon con* (*for* cum):—ut *as*, contubernális *a cómrade or one of the same class*, commílito *a féllow-sóldier*, consérvus, *a fellow-sérvant*, cognátus *a kínsman by birth.*

Quǽdam (adjectíva) *some* ex his (adjectívis) *of these*, quæ *which* signíficant *sígnify* similitúdinem *líkeness*, jungúntur *are joíned* étiàm *álso* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case:* ut *as*, (hómo) quem *he whom* métuis *you fear* érat *was* par *the módel or ímage* hújus *of this man, that is, he was like this man in size and appeárance.* Es *you are* símilis *the like* dómini *of your máster, that is, you resémble your máster.*

Commúnis *cómmon*, aliénus *strange or fóreign*, immúnis, *free*, jungúntur *are joíned* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case*, datívo (cásui) *to a dátive;* et *álso* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative* cum *with* præpositióne *a prepositíon:* ut *as*, est *it is* commúne *a cómmon próperty* ómnium animántium *of all líving creátures, that is, it is cómmon to all ánimals.* Mors *death* est *is* commúnis *cómmon* ómnibus (animálibus) *to all.* Hoc (negótium) *this* est *is* commúne *cómmon* míhi *to me* cum te *with thee, that is, cómmon to you and me.* Non aliéna *not unfít for* consílii *the desígn.* Aliénus ambitióni (*a man*) *strange to ambítion, that is, an énemy or a stránger to ambítion.* Non aliénus *not avérse* à *from* stúdiis *the stúdies, that is, to the stúdies* Scævolæ *of Scǽvola.* Dábitur *it shall be gíven or gránted* vóbis *to you* ésse *to be* immúnibus *free* hújus máli *of this míschief, that is, exémpt from this calámity.* Caprifícus *the wild fíg-tree* est *is* immúnis *free* ómnibus *to all.* (Nos) súmus *we are* immúnes *free* ab íllis mális *from those évils.*

Nátus *born*, cómmodus *convénient*, incómmodus *inconvénient*, útilis *úseful*, inútilis *úseless or unsérviceable*, véhemens *eárnest*, áptus *fit*, cum *with* múltis áliis (adjectívis) *mány óther ádjectives*, jungúntur *are joíned* intérdùm *sómetimes* étiàm *líkewise* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case* cum *with* præpositióne *a prepositíon:*—ut *as*, nátus *born* ad glóriam *to or for glóry.* Útilis *úseful or prófitable* ad éam rem *to that affaír or púrpose.*

Verbália (adjectíva) *vérbal ádjectives, or ádjectives derívcd from verbs* (finíta) in -bĭlĭs *énding in -bilis* accépta *táken* passívè *pássively*, et *álso* participiália (adjectíva) *partícipial*

*ádjectives* (finíta) in -dus *énding in -dus*, póstulant *require* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case*:—ut *as*, íners lúcus *a slúggish or a heávy grove, that is, a thick grove* penetrábilis *pénetrable* núlli ástro *to no star, that is, not pénetrable by the rays of ány of the heávenly bódies.* O Júli, *O Július,* memoránde míhi *wórthy únto me to be méntioned, that is, wórthy or desérving of méntion by me* post *áfter* núllos sodáles *none (of my) compánions or acquaíntances.*

Mensúra *the meásure* magnitúdinis *of mágnitude or of quántity* subjícitur *is subjoíned to or is put áfter* adjectívis *ádjectives* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case,* ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case,* et *and* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*:—ut *as,* túrris *a tówer* álta *high* céntum pédes *a húndred feet, meáning, a tówer one húndred feet high.* Fons *a fóuntain or well* látus *wide* tríbus pédibus *three feet,* áltus *deep* trigínta (pédibus) *thírty feet, meaning, a spring three feet wide and thírty feet deep.* Área *a floor* láta *broad* dénûm (*for* denórum) pédum *ten feet, or a floor ten feet broad.*

Accusatívus (cásus) *an accúsative case* aliquándò *sómetimes* subjícitur *is subjoíned to or put áfter* adjectívis *ádjectives* et *and* participíis *párticiples,* úbi *where* præposítio secúndum *the preposítion secúndum* vidétur *seems* subintélligi *to be understoód*:—ut *as,* símilis *like* Déo *to a god* ōs *as to his coúntenance or vísage* átquè *and* húmeros *as to his shoúlders, that is, in his cárriage of himsélf, and in his size.* Demíssus *cast down* vûltum *as to his look.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives* quæ *which* pértinent *pertaín or reláte* ad cópiam *to plénty* vèl *or* (ad) egestátem *to want,* éxigunt *requíre* intérdùm *sómetimes* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case,* intérdùm *sómetimes* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case*: —ut *as,* dívĕs *rich* équûm (*for* equórum) *of hórses, or, in hórses,* dívĕs *rich* pictáï véstis *of píctured vésture, that is, in embroídered raíment,*—et *and* aúri *of gold.* Ámor *love* est *is* fæcundíssimus *véry fécund or abúndant* et *both* mélle *with or of hóney* et *and* félle *with or of gall.* Éxpers fraúdis *void of deceít.* Beátus *háppy or aboúnding* grátiâ *in fávour.*

Adjectíva *ádjectives,* et *and* substantíva *súbstantives,* régunt *góvern* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case* significántem *sígnifying* caúsam *the cause,* et *and* fórmam *the form,* vèl *or* módum *the mánner* réi *of a thing*:—ut *as,* pállidus *pale* írâ *with ánger.* Grammáticus *a grammárian* nómine *in name.*

re *in reálity* bárbarus *a barbárian.* Cǽsar Troiánus *Cǽsar a Trójan* orígine *by descént.*

Dígnus *wórthy*, indígnus *unwórthy*, prǽditus *endúed*, cáptus *táken or disábled*, conténtus *contént*, extórris *bánished*, frétus *relýing upón*, líber *free*, cum *with*, adjectívis *ádjectives* significántibus *sígnifying* prétium *price* éxigunt *requíre* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case*:—ut *as*, es *thou art* dígnus *wórthy* ódio *of hátred.* (Égo) qui habérem *I who had* gnátum *a son* prǽditum *endúed* táli ingénio *with such a disposítion.* Tálpæ *the moles* cápti óculis *táken in their eyes, that is, the blind moles* fodêre *have dug or éxcavated* cubília *their beds or holes.* Ábi *go your way* conténtus *contént* túâ sórte *with your lot.* Ánimus *a mind* líber *free* terróre *from fear.* Non venále *not púrchaseable, that is, not to be púrchased* gémmis *with gems or jéwels*, nèc *nor* aúro *with gold.*

Nonnúlla (adjectíva) *some or a few* hórum (adjectivórum) *of these* admíttunt *admít* intérdum *sómetimes* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case*:—ut *as*, indígnus *unwórthy* magnórum avórum *of his great áncestors.* Cármina *vérses* dígna *wórthy* Déæ *of a Góddess.* Extórris *bánished* régni *of the kíngdom, that is, bánished the kíngdom or from the realm.*

Comparatíva *compáratives*, cum *when* exponántur *they can be expoúnded or explaíned* per *by* (*the conjúnction*) quám *than*, admíttunt *admít, or receíve áfter them*, ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case*:—ut *as*, argéntum *sílver* est *is* vílius *more vile, or, of less válue*, aúro *than gold*, aúrum *gold* (est vílius, *is of less válue*) virtútibus *than heróic quálities or vírtue*: id est *that is*, quàm *than* aúrum *gold*, quàm *than* virtútes *heróic quálities or vírtue.*

Tánto *by so much*, quánto *by how much*, hôc *by this*, éo *by that*, et *and* quo *by which or by what*, cum *with* quibúsdam áliis (ablatívis) *some óthers*, quæ *which* signíficant *sígnify* mensúram *the meásure* excéssûs *of excéss, or, of exceéding*; ítèm *álso* ætáte *by age*, et *and* nátu *by birth*, jungúntur *are joíned* sǽpè *óftentimes* comparatívis *únto compáratives* et *and* superlatívis *to supérlatives*:—ut *as*, tánto *by so much*, (sum) péssimus pöéta (*am I*) *the worst póet* ómnium (pöetárum) *of all*, quánto *by how much* tu *thou* (es) óptimus patrónus (*art*) *the best pátron* ómnium (patronórum) *of all.* Quo plus *by what much* (*or how much*) *the more* hábent *they have*, éo plus *by that much* (*or by so much*) *the more* cúpiunt *do they covet*

*or desíre.* Májor *the greáter* ætáte *by age, that is, the élder,* et *and* máximus *the greátest* (ætáte) *by age, that is, the éldest.* Májor *greáter* nátu *by birth, that is, ólder;* et *and* máximus *greátest* (nátu) *by birth, or óldest.*

Méi *of me,* túi *of thee or you,* súi *of himsélf, hersélf, of itsélf, or themsélves,* nóstri *of us,* véstri *of you,* (némpè *námely,*) genitívi (cásus) *the génitive cáses* primitivórum (nóminum) *of the prímitive nouns,* ponúntur *are put or úsed* cùm *when* persóna *a pérson* significátur *is sígnified*:—ut *as,* lánguet *she lánguishes* desidério túi *with desíre of thee, that is, for want of thee.* Cára pígnora *dear plédges* súi *of himsélf.* Cæ̀cus ámor *the blind love* súi *of self, that is, the blind love of one's self.* Imágo nóstrî *the pícture of us, that is, of our pérson.*

Méus *mine,* túus *thine,* súus *his own, her own, its own, or their own,* nóster *ours,* véster *yours,* ponúntur *are úsed* cúm *when* áctio *áction,* vél *or* posséssio *the posséssion* réi *of a thing* significátur *is sígnified*:—ut *as,* fávet *she fávours* túo desidério *your wish or desíre.* Nóstra imágo *our pícture:* id est, *that is,* (imágo) quam (imáginem) *the pícture which* nos *we* possidémus *posséss.*

Hæc possessíva (pronómina, quæ sequúntur) *these posséssive prónouns,* méus *mine,* túus *thine,* súus *his own, her own, its own, or their own,* nóster *ours,* et *and* véster *yours,* recípiunt *receíve or take* post se *áfter them* hos genitívos (cásus) *these génitive cáses;* ipsíus *of himsélf, of hersélf, or of itsélf,* solíus *of him, her, or it alóne,* uníus *of one,* duórum *of two,* tríum *of three, &c.* ómnium *of all,* plúrium *of more,* paucórum *of few,* cujúsque *of évery one,* et *and álso* genitívos (cásus) *the génitive cáses* participiórum *of párticiples,* qui *which* referúntur *are reférred* ad primitívum (nómen) *to the prímitive word* subaudítum *understoód:* ut *as,* díxi *I said or affírmed* rempúblicam *that the state or cómmonwealth* ésse sálvam *was safe, that is, was sáved or presérved* méâ uníus óperâ *by my síngle sérvice* (*líterally, by my dóing of one or alóne*). Méum solíus peccátum *my offénce alóne* (*líterally, mine offénce of* (*me*) *ónly, or, the offénce of me indivídually,*) non pótest *cánnot* córrigi *be aménded.* Cùm *when, or whereás* némo *nobody* légat *reads* méa scrípta timéntis *the wrítings of me feáring* (*líterally, my wrítings of* (*me*) *feáring*) recitáre *to recíte or reheárse them* vúlgò *públicly or in públic.* Céperis

L 3

*you may have táken or fórmed* conjectúram *a conjécture, that is, you may guess* de túo stúdio ipsíus *from your stúdy of (you) yoursélf, that is, by your own indivídual stúdy.* Præstántior *more éxcellent* in súâ laúde cujúsque *in his own praise (that) of each: freély, each in his own skill.* Nóstrâ memóriâ ómnium *in our mémory (that) of us all, that is, in the mémory or recolléction of us all.* Respóndet *he ánswers* véstris laúdibus paucórum *to the praíses of you few: líterally, to your praíses (béing those) of (you) few.*

Súi *of himsélf, of hersélf, of itsélf, of themsélves,* et *and* súus *his own, her own, its own, or their own,* sunt *are* recíproca *reciprocals,* hoc est *that is,* reflectúntur *they are refléctéd, or have relátion,* sémpèr *álways* ad id *to that* quod *which* præcéssit *went befóre* præcípuum *chief or the most to be nóted* in senténtiâ *in the séntence:*—ut *as,* Pétrus *Péter* admirátur *admíres* se *himsélf* nímiùm *too much.* Párcit *he spares* súis erróribus *his (own) érrors.* Pétrus *Péter* rógat magnóperè *begs eárnestly* ne déseras se *that you desért him not, or, that you do not forsáke him.*

Hæc (tría) demonstratíva (pronómina) *these (three) demónstrative prónouns,* hic *this,* íste *that,* ílle *he, or that,* distinguúntur *are distínguished* sîc *thus;* hic *this* demónstrat *shows or points to* próximum *the neárest (pérson or thing)* míhi *to me;* íste *that* (demónstrat *shows or points to*) éum *him* qui *who* est *is* ápud te *by you;* ílle *he, or, that* (demónstrat *points to*) éum *him* qui *who* est *is* remótus *remóte or dístant* ab utróque *from both of us.*

Cúm *when* hic *this,* et *and* ílle *he or that,* referúntur *are reférred* ad dúo antepósita *to two things, or pérsons, set or góing befóre,* hic *this* refértur *is reférred* plerúmquè *génerally* ad postérius *to the látter,* ílle *he, or that,* ad príus *to the fórmer:* ut *as,* quocúnquè *which way soéver* aspícias *you look* est *there is* níhil *nóthing* nísì *unlèss or excépt* póntus *sea* et *and* áër *air:* hic *this or the látter* túmidus *túmid or swóllen* núbibus *with clouds,* ílle *that or the fórmer* mínax *threátening* flúctibus *with bíllows or waves.*

Substantíva vérba *súbstantive verbs;* ut *as,* sum *I am,* fórem *I might or would be,* fío *I am made, or I becóme,* exísto *I do exíst;* passíva vérba *pássive verbs* vocándi *of cálling;* ut *as,* nóminor *I am námed,* appéllor *I am cálled,* dícor *I am said,* vócor *I am cálled,* núncupor *I am námed;* et *and* (vérba)

simília *símilars, that is, óthers like* íis *to those;* ut *as,* vídeor *I am seen, or, I seem,* hábeor *I am accoúnted,* existimor *I am thought,* hábent *have* eósdem cásus *the same cáses* utrínque *on both sides of them:* ut *as,* Déus *God* est *is* súmmum bónum *the chief good.* Perpusílli *véry diminutive* (*or líttle*) *pérsons* vócantur *are cálled* náni *dwarfs.* Fídes *faith* habétur *is réckoned* fundaméntum *the foundátion* nóstræ religiónis *of our religion.* Natúra *náture* dédit *hath gránted* ómnibus (*homínibus*) *to all* ésse *to be* beátis *háppy.*

Ítem *líkewise* ómnia vérba *all verbs* férè *álmost or in a mánner* admíttunt *admít* post se *áfter them* adjectívum *an ádjective,* quod (adjectívum) *which* concórdat *agrees* cum *with* nominatívo cásu vérbi *the nóminative case of or to the verb,* génere *in génder,* et *and* número *in númber:* ut *as,* píi (hómines) *pious pérsons* órant *pray* táciti *sílent, that is, tácitly or in sílence.* Málus pástor *a bad shépherd* dórmit *sleeps* supínus *supíne, or, supínely, that is, with his face úpwards.*

Sum *I am,* póstulat *requíres* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* quótiès *as often as* signíficat *it sígnifies* possessiónem *posséssion,* offícium *dúty,* sígnum *sign,* aút *or* id *that* quod *which* pértinet *pertains or has respéct* ad quámpiam rem *to ány thing whatéver:* ut *as,* pécus *the cáttle* est *is* Melibœ́i *Melibœ́us's.* Est *it is* adolescéntis *the dúty of a young man* reveréri *to réverence* majóres nátu *his élders, or, his greáters by birth: in this séntence the word* offícium *dúty is omítted by the fígure ellípsis.*

Hi nominatívi (cásus) *these nóminative cáses* excipiúntur *are excépted:* méum *mine,* túum *thine,* súum *his, hers, its or theirs,* nóstrum *our,* véstrum *your,* humánum *húman,* belluínum, *brútal or wild-beast-like,* et *and* simília (adjectíva) *símilar ádjectives, or the like:* ut *as,* non est méum *it is not mine, or it becómes not me,* dícere *to speak* cóntra *agáinst* auctoritátem *the authórity* senátûs *of the sénate.* Est *it is* humánum *a húman thing or a húman fraílty* irásci *to be ángry.*

Vérba *verbs* accusándi *of accúsing,* damnándi *of condemning,* monéndi *of wárning,* absolvéndi *of acquítting,* et *and* simília (vérba) *símilar verbs, or the like of those,* póstulant *require* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case,* qui (genitívus cásus) *which* signíficat *sígnifies* crímen *the offence or charge:* —ut *as,* opórtet *it behóveth, or it is fit,* éum *that he* qui *who*

incúsat *accúses* álterum (hóminem) *anóther man* próbri *of dishónesty*, intuéri *look ínto* se ípsum *himsélf*, (Ílle) condémnat *he condémns* súum génerum *his own son-in-law* sceleris *of wíckedness.* Admonéto (tu) íllum *remínd him* pristinæ fortúnæ *of his fórmer fórtune or condítion.* Est absolútus *he was absólved or is acquítted* fúrti *of theft.*

Hic genitívus (cásus) *this génitive* vértitur *is túrned or chánged* aliquándò *sómetimes* in ablatívum (cásum) *into an áblative*, vèl *éither* cum *with* præpositióne *a preposítion*, vèl *or* síne *withoút* præpositióne *a preposítion :*—ut *as*, putávi *I thought* te *that you* ésse admonéndum *ought to be put in mind* de éâ re *of that mátter.* Si *if* es *you are* iníquus júdex *an iníquitous or a pártial judge* in me *tówards me*, égo *I* condemnábo *will condémn* te *you* eódem crímine *of the same crime or offénce.*

Utérque *both*, núllus *none*, álter *the óther*, neúter *neíther of the two*, álius *anóther*, ámbo *both*, et *and* superlatívus grádus *the supérlative degreé* jungúntur *are joíned* vérbis *to verbs* id génus (*of*) *that kind*, non nísì *not unléss*, *that is*, *ónly* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case* ut *as*, accúsas (éum) *do you accúse* (*him*) fúrti *of theft*, àn *or* stúpri *of dishónesty?* Utróque *of both* vèl *or* de utróque *of both* (*those crimes*)*:* ambóbus *of them both* vè *or* de ambóbus *of them both :* neútro *of neíther of the two* vèl *or* de neútro *of neíther of the two.* Accusáris *you are accúsed* de plúrimis (crimínibus) *of véry mány things* símùl *at once.*

Sátago *I am búsy aboút a thing*, miséreor *I commíserate*, et *and* miserésco *I píty*, póstulant *requíre* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case :* ut *as*, is *he* sátagit *is búsy or has his hands full* suárum rérum *of his own concérns or búsiness.* O'ro *I pray you* miserére *píty* tantórum labórum *so great distrésses ;* miserére *have píty on* ánimæ *a soul* feréntis *súffering* non dígna *things not wórthy*, *that is*, *unmérited or undesérved afflíctions.* Et *and* miserésce *píty* túi géneris *your own spécies or fámily.*

Reminíscor *I remémber*, oblivíscor *I forgét*, mémini *I remémber*, recórdor *I call to mind*, admíttunt *admít* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case*, aùt *or* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case :*—ut *as*, reminíscitur *he remémbers* dátæ fídei *his gíven faith*, *that is*, *his plédged troth*, *or prómise.* Est *it is* próprium *a thing próper*, *that is*, *the próperty* stultítiæ *of fólly* cérnere *to discérn* vítia aliórum (hóminum) *the faults of*

*óthers*, oblivísci *to forgét* suórum (vitiórum) *its own.* Fáciam *I will make or cause* (*you*) ut memíneris *that you remémber, that is, to remémber* hújus lóci *this place* sémpèr *álways.* Juvábit *it will be a pleásure* ólìm *hereáfter* meminisse *to recáll to mind* hæc *these things.* Recórdor *I do remémber* hújus mériti *this fávour* in me *tówards me.* Si *if* recórdor *I recolléct* rítè *ríghtly* audíta *the things heard, that is, the words which I heard.*

Pótior *I gain or enjóy* júngitur *is joíned* aùt *eíther* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case,* aùt *or* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case:* ut *as,* Románi *the Rómans* sunt potíti *gaíned* signórum *the bánners or stándards* et *and* armórum *the arms or weápons of war.* Tróës *the Trójans* egréssi *béing lánded or debárked* potiúntur *enjóy* optátâ arénâ *the wíshed-for sand or shore.*

O'mnia vérba *all verbs* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case* éjus réi *of that thing,* cui *to or for which* áliquid *ány thing* acquíritur *is gótten* aùt *or* adímitur *is táken awáy:* —ut *as,* nèc séritur *it is neíther béing sown,* nèc *nor* métitur *is it béing mown, that is, there is neíther sówing nor mówing,* míhi *for me* ístìc *there, or in that mátter.* Quis cásus *what áccident* adémìt te *hath táken thee awáy* míhi *to me, that is, from me?*

Vérba *verbs* várii géneris *of várious kind or sorts* appéndent *belóng* huic régulæ *to this rule.*

Imprímìs *fóremost or in the first place* vérba *verbs* significántia *sígnifying* cómmodum *advántage* aùt *or* incómmodum *dísadvantage* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*— ut *as,* non pótes *you cánnot* commodáre *accómmodate or serve* nèc *nor* incommodáre *incommóde or dísserve* míhi *me.*

Ex his (vérbis) *of these,* júvo, *I help,* lǽdo *I hurt,* delécto *I delíght,* et *and* quǽdam ália (vérba) *some few óther verbs* éxigunt *requíre* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case:*— ut *as* quíes *rest* júvat *delíghts* féssum (hóminem) *a weáry pérson* plúrimum *véry much.*

Vérba *verbs* comparándi *of compáring* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* sîc *thus* solébam *was I accústomed or wont* compónere *to compáre* mágna (negótia) *great things* párvis (negótiis) *to small things.*

Vérò *but* intérdùm *sómetimes* (hæc vérba régunt) *they góvern* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case* cum præpositióne "cum" *with the preposítion "cum"* intérdùm *sómetimes* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* cum *with* præposi-

tiónibus "ad" et "ínter" *the prepositions "ad" and "inter:"* —ut *as,* cómparo *I compáre* Virgílium *Vírgil* cum *with* Homéro *Hómer.* Si *if* (is) comparátur *he is compáred* ad éum *to him* est níhil *he is nóthing.* Hæc (negótia) *these things* non sunt *are not* conferénda *wórthy of béing compáred, that is, are not fit to be compáred* ínter se *betweén themsélves or one with anóther.*

Vérba *verbs* dándi *of gíving* et *and* reddéndi *of restóring* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* fortúna *fórtune* dat *gives* nímìs *too much* múltis (homínibus) *to mány,* sátìs *enoúgh* núlli *to no one.* Est *he is* ingrátus (hómo) *an ungráteful pérson,* qui *who* non repónit *does not retúrn* grátiam *acknówledgment, that is, thanks* (cuíquam) merénti béne *to ány one desérving well (of him) that is, to his benefáctor.*

Vérba *verbs* promitténdi *of prómising* àc *and* solvéndi *of páying,* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* (negótia) quæ *the things which* promítto *I prómise* tíbi *to you,* àc *and* recípio *engáge* ésse observatúrum *to be obsérving of, that is, to obsérve* sanctíssimè *most relígiously or scrúpulously.* Numerávit *he coúnted or paid* míhi *to me* aliénum æs *the debt, líterally the strange brass or móney.*

Vérba *verbs* imperándi *of commánding* et *and* nuntiándi *of reláting or of télling* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* pecúnia *móney* collécta *collécted, that is, amássed or hoárded up* ímperat *commánds* aùt *or* sérvit *serves* cuíque *évery man.* Sǽpè *óften* vidéto *see, or take care,* quid dícas *what thou say* de quóque víro *of évery man, that is, of ány one,* et *and* cui *to whom* (dícas id, *thou say it*).

Excipe *excépt* régo *I rule,* gubérno *I góvern,* quæ (dúo vérba) *which (two) verbs* hábent *have* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case;* tempero *I rule* et *and* móderor *I mánage,* quæ (dúo vérba) *which two verbs* nùnc *sómetimes* hábent *have* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case,* nùnc *sómetimes* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative:*—ut *as,* Lúna *the moon* régit *rules or régulates* ménses *the months.* Déus ípse *God himsélf* gubérnat *góverns* órbem *the world.* Ípse *he* témperat síbi *témpers or commánds himsélf, that is, he has the commánd of himsélf.* Sol *the sun* témperat *témpers or sways* ómnia *all things* lúce *by or with his light.* Hic *this man* moderátur *mánages* équos *his hórses,* qui *who* non moderábitur *will not mánage, or, master* íræ *his ánger or pássion.*

Vérba *verbs* fidéndi *of confíding or trústing* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* décet *it is becóming or próper* commíttere *to commít* nîl *nóthing* nísì *unléss or excépt* léne *that which is soft or of a mítigating quálity* vácuis vénis *to the émpty veins.*

Vérba *verbs* obsequéndi *of complýing with* et *and* repugnándi *of oppósing,* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* píus fílius *a dútiful son* sémpèr *álways* obtémperat *obéys* pátri *his fáther.* Fortúna *fórtune* repúgnat *oppóses* ignávis précibus *slúggish práyers, that is, the práyers of the slúggish or slóthful.*

Vérba *verbs* minándi *of threátening,* et *and* irascéndi *of béing ángry,* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* est minitátus *he threátened* mórtem *death* utríque *to both of them.* Níhil est *there is nóthing, that is, no reáson* quod *that (or why)* succénseam *I should be ángry* adolescénti *with the young man.*

Sum *I am* cum *with* (súis) compósitis (vérbis) *its cómpounds,* prǽter *excépt* póssum *I am áble,* régit *góverns* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* píus rex *a píous king* est *is* ornaméntum *an órnament* reipúblicæ *to the state.* Nèc óbest *it neíther hurts* nèc pródest *nor prófits* míhi *me.*

Vérba *verbs* compósita *compoúnded* cum *with* his advérbiis *these ádverbs* bénè *well* sátìs *enoúgh,* málè *ill;* et *and* cum *with* his præpositiónibus *these prepositions,* præ, ad, con, sub, ánte, post, ob, in, ínter; férmè *for the most part* régunt *góvern* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* Díi *may the Gods* benefáciant *do good* tíbi *únto thee, that is, may they bless thee.* Ego *I* prælúxi *have outshóne* méis majóribus *my áncestors* virtúte *in vírtue, or válour.* (Hómo) qui *(a pérson) who* intempestívè *out of seáson* adlúserit *jóked on him* occupáto *óccupied or when he was búsy.* Hoc *this* condúcit *condúces or is condúcive, that is, redoúnds* túæ laúdi *to your praise.* Convíxit *he líved* nóbis *with us.* Súbolet uxóri *it sávours a líttle to my wife, that is, she begíns to smell out,* jàm *alreády* (id) quod *that which* égo máchinor *I am contríving, that is, she has some just suspícions respécting my plans.* Antéfero *I prefér* iniquíssimam pácem *the most unéqual or dishónourable peace* justíssimo béllo *to or befóre the most just war.* Postpóno *I postpóne* pecúniam *móney* fámæ *to reputátion, that is, I válue móney less than I válue reputátion.* Quóniam *becaúse*

éa *she* pótest *can* obtrúdi *be thrust* némini *upón nóbody*, ítur *it is come, that is, they come* ad me *to me.* Períiculum *dánger* impéndet *hangs óver* ómnibus *all.* Non sólùm *not ónly* intér-fuit *was he présent* his rébus *at these things,* sèd *but* étiàm *álso* præ̈fuit *he was forémost or chief in them.*

Non paúca (vérba) *not a few* ex his (vérbis) *of these verbs* aliquótiès *sómetimes* mútant *change* datívum (cásum) *the dátive* in álium cásum *into anóther case:*—ut *as,* álius *one* præ̈stat *exceéds or excéls* álium *anóther* ingénio *in tálent or abílity.*

Est *there is,* pro *for* hábeo *I have,* régit *góverns* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case:*—ut *as,* námquè *for* est míhi *there is to me* páter *a fáther* dómi *at home, that is, I have a fáther at home,* est *there is,* injústa novérca *an iníquitous* (*or*) *a sevére stép-mother, that is, I have a sevére stép-mother.*

Súppetit *it suffíceth* est *is* símile *like* huic (vérbo) *to this verb* (*námely,* sum, *or ráther* est): ut *as,* énim *for* non est *he is not* paúper *poor* cui *to whom* úsus rérum *the use of things* súppetit *is suffícient, that is, who has a suffíciency of the nécessaries of life.*

Sum *I am* cum *with* múltis áliis (vérbis) *mány óther verbs* admíttit *admíts* géminum datívum (cásum) *a doúble dátive case:* ut *as,* máre *the sea* est *is* exítio *a destrúction* ávidis naútis *to greédy máriners, that is, the destrúction of avarí-cious saílors.* Spéras *do you expéct* (id) fóre *that* (*that*) *should be* laúdi *a crédit* tíbi *to yoursélf* quod *which* vértis *you impúte* vítio *as a fault* míhi *to me?*

Est úbi *there is where, that is, sómetimes* hic datívus (cásus) *this dátive case,* tíbi *to thee,* aùt *or* síbi *to himsélf, hersélf, itsélf, or themsélves,* aùt *or* étiàm *álso* míhi *to me* ádditur *is ádded* caúsâ *for the sake* elegántiæ *of élegance in expréssion:*—ut *as,* júgulo *I stab* hunc (hóminem) *this man* súo gládio *with his own sword* síbi *to himsélf, that is, with his véry own sword.*

Transitíva vérba *tránsitive verbs* cujuscúnque géneris *of what kind soéver,* sívè *whéther* actívi (géneris) *of the áctive* (*kind*) sívè *or* deponéntis (géneris) *depónent,* sívè *or* com-múnis (géneris) *cómmon,* éxigunt *requíre* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case:*—ut *as,* fúgito *avoíd* percontatórem *an inquísitive pérson,* nàm *for* ídem *the same* est *is* gárrulus *a blab.* Áper *the wild-boar* depopulátur *lays waste* ágros *the*

*fields.* Imprimìs *in the first place* veneráre Déos *vénerate the Gods, that is, addréss yoursélf to the Gods wórshipfully.*

Neútra vérba *neúter verbs* hábent *have or take* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* cognátæ significatiónis *of a kíndred or like significátion :* ut *as,* sérvit *he serves* dúram servitútem *a hard sérvitude.*

Sunt *there are* (nonnúlla vérba) *some few verbs* quæ *which* hábent *have* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* figurátè *fíguratively or by a fígure :*—ut *as,* nèc *nor* vox *does (your) voice* sónat *sound* hóminem *man, that is, like the voice of a húman creáture :* O Déa *O a Góddess !* cértè *cértainly or withoút doubt.*

Vérba *verbs* rogándi *of ásking,* docéndi *of teáching,* vestiéndi *of clóthing,* celándi *of conceáling,* férè *cómmonly* régunt *góvern* dúplicem accusatívum (cásum) *a double accúsative, that is, two accúsative cáses :* ut *as,* tu módò *do ónly you* pósce *crave* véniam *párdon* Déos *of the Gods.* Dedocébo *I will unteách* te *you* ístos móres *those mánners.* Est ridículum (negótium) *it is ridículous or a jest* te *for you* admonére me *to remínd me* ístùc *of that.* Índuit se *he clad himsélf, that is, he put on* cálceos *the shoes* quos (cálceos) *which* exúerat *he had put off* priùs *befóre.* Consueféci *I have accústomed* fílium *my son,* nè célet *that he conceál not* éa *those things* me *from me.*

Vérba *verbs* hujúsmodi *of this sort* hábent *have* post se *áfter them* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* étiàm *álso* in passívâ vóce *in the pássive voice :*—ut *as,* pósceris *you are demánded or ásked for, that is you are requíred to sácrifice* éxta *the éntrails* bóvis *of a heífer.*

Appellatíva nómina *appéllative nouns* férè *cómmonly* addúntur *are ádded* cum *with* præpositióne *a preposítion* vérbis *to verbs* quæ (vérba) *which* dénŏtant *denóte* mótum *mótion :*—ut *as,* íbant *they went* ad témplum *to the témple* Pálladis *of Pállas.*

Quódvis vérbum *ány verb you like, that is, évery verb* admíttit *admíts* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case* significántem *sígnifying* instruméntum *the ínstrument,* aùt *or* caúsam *the cause,* aùt *or* módum *the mánner* actiónis *of an áction :* ut *as,* hi (mílites) *these soldiers* cértant *endeávour* deféndere (se) *to defénd themsélves* jáculis *with darts,* ílli *those,* sáxis *with stones.* Excánduit veheméntèr *he túrned excéssively pale* írâ *with*

*ánger.* Perégit rem *he perfórmed the mátter* mírâ celeritáte *with wónderful despátch.*

Nómen *a noun* prétii *of price* subjícitur *is subjoíned to or put áfter* quibúsdam vérbis *some verbs* in ablatívo cásu *in the áblative case:*—ut *as,* non émerim *I would not púrchase it* terúncio *at a fárthing,* seù *or* vitiósâ núce *a rótten nut.* Ea victória *that víctory* stétit *stood or cost* Pœ́nis *the Carthagínians* sánguine *the blood* multórum (hóminum) *of mány men, that is, much blood,* àc *and* vulnéribus (*mány*) *wounds.*

Víli *at a low rate,* paúlo *for líttle,* mínimo *for véry líttle,* mágno *for much,* nímio *for too much,* plúrimo *for véry much,* dimídio *for half,* dúplo *for twice as much,* ponúntur *are put* sǽpè *óften* per se *by themsélves,* vóce *the word* prétio (*price*) subaudítâ *béing understoód:*—ut *as,* tríticum *wheat* vénit *is sold* víli *at a low rate.*

Hi genitívi (cásus) *these génitive cáses* pósiti *put* síne substantívis *withoút súbstantives* excipiúntur *are excépted:* tánti *for so much,* quánti *for how much,* plúris *for more,* minóris *for less,* tantídem *for just so much,* quantívis *for as much as you like,* quantílibet *for as much as you please,* quanticúnque *for how much soéver:* ut *as,* éris *you will be* tánti *of so much válue* áliis *to óthers* quánti *as* fúeris *you shall have been or are* tíbi *to yoursélf.*

Flócci *of a lock of wool,* naúci *of a nut-shell,* níhili *of nóthing,* píli *of a hair,* ássis *of a pénny,* hújus *of this,* terúncii *of a fárthing,* addúntur *are ádded,* peculiaritèr *pecúliarly or véry próperly* vérbis *to verbs* æstimándi *of esteéming:* ut *as,* égo péndo íllum *I válue him* flócci *a straw,* nèc fácio *nor do I regárd him* hújus *this* (viz. *a snap of the fínger and thumb*) qui *who* ǽstimat me *esteéms me* píli (*not*) *a hair.*

Vérba *verbs* abundándi *of aboúnding,* impléndi *of fílling,* onerándi *of loáding,* et *and* (vérba) divérsa his (vérbis) *verbs dífferent to (or from) these, that is, their cóntraries,* jungúntur *are joíned* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case:*—ut *as,* Ántipho, *O Ántipho,* abúndas *you aboúnd* amóre *with love, that is, in that which you like.* Sýlla explévit *Sýlla filled* ómnes súos (mílites) *all his sóldiers or his ármy* divítiis *with ríches.* Quíbus mendáciis *with what lies* levíssimi hómines *have the vaínest pérsons* onerárunt (*for* oneravérunt) te *loáded you!* Éxpedi *clear* te *yoursélf* hôc crímine *of this charge.*

Ex quíbus (vérbis) *of which (verbs)* quǽdam (vérba) *some*

*verbs* nonnúnquam *occásionally* régunt *góvern* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case:*—ut *as,* impléntur *they are filled* véteris Bácchi *of old Bácchus, that is, with old wine,* átquè *and* pínguis ferínæ (cárnis) *fat wild flesh or vénison.* Quási *as though* tu indígeas *you have need* pátris hújus (hóminis) *of this man's fáther.*

Fúngor *I dischárge,* frúor, *I enjóy,* útor, *I use,* véscor, *I live upón,* dígnor *I deem mysélf wórthy,* múto, *I change or bárter,* commúnico *I commúnicate,* supersédeo *I pass by,* jungúntur *are joíned* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case:*—ut *as,* (ílle) qui *he who* vólet *shall desíre* adipísci *to obtaín* véram glóriam *true glóry* fungátur *should dischárge* officiis *the duties* justítiæ *of jústice, that is, let the man who desíres, dischárge—.* Est *it is* óptimum (negótium) *an éxcellent thing* frúi *to enjóy or to prófit by* aliénâ insániâ *álien insánity or fólly, that is, by the mádness of óthers.* Júvat *it prófits or is of sérvice* si *if* utáre *you can use or emplóy* bóno ánimo *a good coúrage, that is, can keep up an undaúnted resolútion* in málâ re *in an unlúcky affaír, or, unprósperous evént.* Véscor *I eat* cárnibus *fléshes, that is, bútchers' meat.* Équidèm *trúly* haùd dígnor me *I deem not mysélf wórthy* táli honóre *of such hónour.* Díruit *he pulls down,* ædíficat *he builds up,* mútat *he chánges or álters* quadráta *square things* rotúndis *for round.* Communicábo te *I will commúnicate you* méâ ménsâ *with my táble, that is, I will give you accéss to my táble, or I will confér with you at my táble.* Est supersedéndum *it is to be superséded or let pass,* multitúdine *from a múltitude* verbórum *of words, that is, we must forbeár sáying mány words or much.*

Méreor *I desérve,* cum advérbiis *with the ádverbs* bénè *well,* málè *ill,* méliùs, *bétter,* péjùs *worse,* óptimè *véry well,* péssimè *véry ill,* júngitur *is joíned* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case* cum *with* præpositióne de *the preposítion* de: ut *as,* núnquàm est méritus *he néver desérved* bénè *well* de me *of me.*

Quædam vérba *cértain verbs* accipiéndi *of receíving,* distándi *of dístancing, or, of béing dístant,* et *and* auferéndi *of táking awáy,* aliquándò *sómetimes* jungúntur *are joíned* datívo (cásui) *to a dátive case:*—ut *as,* celáta vírtus *conceáled vírtue* dístat *dífers* paúlum *líttle* sepúltæ inértiæ *from búried ídleness, or, from lífeless sloth.* Éripe te móræ *snatch thysélf awáy to deláy, that is, throw off lárdiness or deláy.*

Ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* súmptus *táken* absolútè *ábsolutely* ádditur *is ádded or subjóined* quibúslibet vérbis *to ány verbs you like:*—ut *as*, Chrístus *Christ* est nátus *was born* Augústo imperánte *Augústus réigning, that is, when Augústus was émperor*, (est) crucifíxus *he was crúcified* Tibério impérante, *Tibérius réigning,—that is, when Tibérius was Róman émperor.* Me dúce *I béing your guide* éris *you will be* tútus *safe.*

Ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* pártis (córporis vèl ánimi) *of the part (of bódy or mind)* afféctæ *affécted*, et *and* poéticè *poétically, or by the póets,* accusatívus (cásus) *an accúsative* ádditur *is ádded* quibúsdam vérbis *to some verbs:* ut *as*, ægrótat *he is ill* ánimo *in mind* mágìs *more* quàm *than* córpore *in bódy.* Cándet *he is white* déntes *as to his teeth, that is, his teeth are white.* Rúbet *he is red* capíllos *as to his hairs, that is, his hair is red.*

Quǽdam (vérba ex his vérbis) *some of these verbs* usurpántur *are usúrped, or úsed,* étiàm *álso* cum genitívo (cásu) *with a génitive case:* ut *as*, fácis *you do, or act,* absúrdè *absúrdly* qui *who* ángas *torméntest* te *thysélf* ánimi *of or in mind.*

Ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* agéntis *of the dóer* ádditur *is ádded* passívis (vérbis) *to pássive verbs,* sèd *but* præpositióne *with the prepositíon* à *from* vèl *or* ab *by* antecedénte *góing befóre;* ut *as*, laudátur *he is praísed* ab his *by these*, culpátur *he is blámed* ab íllis *by those.* Honésta (negótia) *hónest things or hónourable óbjects* non occúlta (negótia) *not hídden or únderhand things* quærúntur *are sought or aímed at* bónis víris *by good men.*

Cǽteri cásus *the óther cáses* mánent *remaín or contínue*, in passívis (vérbis) *in pássive verbs*, qui (cásus) *which cáses* fuérunt *were or belónged* (iis) *to them* activórum (verbórum) *of (or as) áctives:* ut *as*, accusáris *you are accúsed* fúrti *of theft* à me *by me.* Habéberis *you will be had* ludibrio *for a laúghing-stock, that is, you will be made a laúghing-stock.* Dedocéberis *you will be untaúght* ístos móres *those mánners* à me *by me.* Priváberis *you will be depríved* magistrátu *of your mágistracy or óffice.*

Vápulo *I am beáten*, véneo *I am sold*, líceo *I am prízed*, éxulo *I am bánished*, fío *I am made, or, I becóme*, neútro-passíva (vérba) *neúter-pássives* hábent *have* passívam con-

structiónem *a pássive constrúction:* ut *as*, vapulábis *you will be beáten* à præceptóre *by the máster.* Málo *I would ráther* spoliári *be plúndered* à cíve *by a cítizen* quàm *than* veníre *be sold* ab hóste *by an énemy.* Vírtus *vírtue* lícet *is set* párvo prétio *at a small or low price* ab ómnibus (homínibus) *by all men.* Cùr *why* philosóphia éxulat *is philósophy bánished* à convivántibus *by pérsons feásting?* Quid *what* fíet *will becóme* ab íllo *of him?*

Infiníta vérba *infínitive verbs, that is, verbs of the infínitive mood* addúntur *are ádded to or put áfter* quibúsdam vérbis *some verbs*, participiis *párticiples*, et *and* adjectívis *ádjectives*; et *and álso* substantívis *súbstantives* pöéticè *pöétically or by the póets:*—ut *as*, ámor *love* jússit *commanded* (*me*) scríbere *to write* (éa vérba) *those things* quæ *which* púduit *it ashámed me or which I was ashámed* dícere *to speak.* Júșsus *béing órdered* confúndere fœ́dus *to víolate the treáty.* Érat *he was* tùm *then*, *or at that time*, dígnus *wórthy* amári *to be lóved.* (Est) témpus *it is time* tíbi *for you* abíre *to go awáy, that is, to be gone.*

Infiníta vérba *infínitive verbs, that is, verbs of the infinitive mood* intérdùm *sómetimes* ponúntur *are put* sóla *alóne or by themsélves* per ellípsin *by the fígure ellípsis:* ut *as*, hînc *from this time or upón this* spárgere in vúlgum [*he begán*] *to scátter abroád, that is, to throw out, or forth*, ambíguas vóces *ambíguous or equívocal sáyings*, et *and* cónscius *knówing himsélf guílty*, quǽrere *to seek* árma *means to déstroy me:*—hîc *here* incipiébat *he begán* subaudítur *is understoód.*

Gerúndia *gérunds* et *and* supína *súpines* régunt *góvern* cásus *the cáses* suórum verbórum *of their own verbs:*—ut *as*, éfferor, *I am transpórted* stúdio *with desíre* vidéndi *of seéing* véstros pátres *your fáthers.* Est uténdum *it is to be emplóyed, that is, we must emplóy, or make use of*, ætáte *our time:* ǽtas *time* prǽterit *pásses awáy* cíto péde *with nímble step.* Míttimus *we send* scitátum *to consúlt* orácula *the óracle* Phœ́bi *of Apóllo.*

Gerúndia in -di *gérunds in -di* hábent *have* eándem constructiónem *the same constrúction* cum *with* genitívis (cásibus) *génitive cáses*, et *and* péndent *depénd* tùm *both* à quibúsdam substantívis *upón cértain súbstantives*, tùm *and álso* adjectívis *ádjectives:* ut *as*, innátus ámor *an ínnate love or a nátural desíre* habéndi *of háving, that is, of gétting* (*hóney*), úrget *úrges*

*or excítes* Cecrópias ápes *the Áttic bees.* Ænéas (*fáther*) *Ænéas* in célsâ púppi *on his lófty stern, that is, on board his státely ship*, jàm cértus eúndi *alreády sure of* (*or detérmined upón*) *góing.*

Gerúndia in -do *gérunds in -do* óbtinent *obtaín* (*or have*) eándem constructiónem *the same constrúction* cum *with* ablatívis (cásibus) *áblative cáses;* et *and álso* gerúndia in -dum *gérunds in -dum* cum *with* accusatívis (cásibus) *accúsative cáses:*—ut *as*, rátio *the mánner or means* scribéndi *of wríting* est *is* conjúncta *conjoíned or connécted* cum loquéndo *with speáking*, *or, with óratory.* Vítium *diseáse* álitur *is fed or núrtured* átquè *and* vívit *lives* tegéndo *by béing cóvered or conceáled.* Lócus *a place* amplíssimus *most ámple* ad agéndum *for pleáding, that is, véry mágnificent and hónourable to plead in.*

Cùm *when* necéssitas *necéssity* significátur *is sígnified*, gerúndia in -dum *gérunds énding in -dum* ponúntur *are put or úsed* cítra præpositiónem *this side of a prepositíon, that is, withoút a prepositíon*, vérbo "est" *the verb "est"* áddito *béing ádded:*—ut *as*, est orándum *it is to be práyed, that is, we must pray* ut sit *that there be or that we may have* sána mens *a sound mind* in sáno córpore *in a sound bódy.* Est vigilándum éi *it must be wátched by him, that is, he must watch* qui *who* cúpit *desíres* víncere *to cónquer.*

Gerúndia *gérunds* étiàm *álso* vertúntur *are chánged* in adjectíva nómina *into ádjective nouns:*—ut *as*, dúci *to be led or indúced* prǽmio *by rewárd or a bribe* ad accusándos hómines *to accúse men* est *is* próximum *next akín* latrocínio *to róbbery.*

Supínum in -um *the súpine in -um* signíficat *sígnifies* actíve *áctively*, et *and* séquitur *fóllows* vérbum *a verb* aùt *or* partícipium *a párticiple* signíficans *sígnifying* mótum *mótion* ad lócum *to a place:*—ut *as*, véniunt *they come* spectátum *to see*, véniunt *they come* ut *to the end that* ípsæ *they themsélves* spectétur *may be seen.* Mílites *sóldiers* sunt míssi *were sent* speculátum *to view* árcem *the cítadel.*

Supínum in -u *the súpine in u* signíficat *sígnifies* passívè *pássively*, et *and* séquitur *fóllows* adjectíva nómina *ádjective nouns:*—ut *as*, (id) quod *that which* est *is* fœ́dum *foul or fílthy* fáctu *to be done*, ĭ'dem *the same* est *is* et *álso* túrpe *base or sháméful* díctu *to be spóken.*

(Nómina) quæ *nouns which* signíficant *sígnify* pártem *a pórtion or part* témporis *of time* ponúntur *are put* frequéntiùs *óftener, that is, more cómmonly* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case :*—ut *as*, némo mortálium *nóbody of mórtals, that is, no mórtal man* sápit *is wise* ómnibus hóris *at all hours or times.*

Aútèm *but* (nómina) quæ *nouns which* signíficant *sígnify* duratiónem *ány contínuance, or durátion* témporis *of time*, ponúntur *are put* férè *cómmonly* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case :*—ut *as*, hîc *here* jàm *now or from this time* regnábitur *it shall be swáyed, that is, kings shall reign* tèr céntum *three húndred* tótos ánnos *whole years, or, full three húndred years.*

Dícimus étiàm *we say álso :* In paúcis diébus *in a few days, meáning, withín the période of a few days.* De díe *by day.* De nócte *by night.* Promítto *I prómise* in díem *ínto or for a day.* Cómmodo *I accómmodate or I lend* in ménsem *for a month.* Nátus ad quinquagínta ánnos *born to fífty years, that is, fífty years old.* Stúdui *I stúdied* per tres ánnos *for three years.* Púer *a boy or child* id ætátis *that of age, meáning, of that age.* Non plus *not more than, or, not above* tríduum *the space of three days*, aùt *or* tríduo *the space of three days.* Tértio (díe) *on the third* vèl *or* ad tértium (díem) *at the third* (ánte) caléndas *befóre the cálends* vèl *or* calendárum *of the cálends of the month.*

Spátium *dístance* lóci *of place* pónitur *is put* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, et *and* intérdùm *sómetimes* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative :*—ut *as*, jàm *now* procésseram *I had advánced* mílle pássus *a thoúsand steps or a mile.* Ábest *he is dístant* quingéntis míllibus pássuum *five húndred thoúsand of steps or five húndred miles* ab úrbe *from the cíty.* Ítèm *álso*, ábest *he is dístant* bídui *two days' joúrney :* úbì *where* spátium *the space* vèl *or* spátio *by the space*, itínere *by a joúrney*, vèl *or* íter *a joúrney*, intellígitur *is understoód.*

Om'ne vérbum *évery verb* admíttit *admíts* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* nóminis *of the name* óppidi *of a cíty or town* in quo (óppido) *in which* áctio fit *an áction is done, that is, in which aught takes place ;* módò *províded ónly* sit *it be* prímæ (declinatiónis) *of the first* vèl *or* secúndæ declinatiónis *of the sécond declénsion*, et *and* singuláris númeri *of the síngular númber :* ut *as*, quid *what* fáciam *should I do* Rómæ *at*

*Rome?* Néscio *I know not* mentíri (*how*) *to lie, that is, I cánnot útter fálsehoods.*

Hi genitívi (cásus) *these génitive cáses,* húmi *upón the ground,* dómi *at home,* milítiæ *in wárfare or abroád,* bélli *of or in war,* sequúntur *fóllow* fórmam *the constrúction* propriórum (nóminum) *of próper names;*—ut *as,* árma *arms* sunt *are* párvi *of líttle worth* fóris *abroád,* nísì *unléss* est *there is* consílium *coúnsel or wísdom* dómi *at home.* Fúĭmus *we were* sémpèr *álways* únà *togéther* milítiæ *abroád or in war,* et *and* dómi *at home.*

Vérùm *but* si *if* nómen *the name* óppidi *of a cíty or town,* fúerit *be* (*líterally, may or shall have been*) plurális númeri *of the plúral númber* duntáxàt *ónly,* aùt *or* tértiæ declinatiónis *of the third decléneion,* pónitur *it is put* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case:*—ut *as,* Cólchus *a Cólchian,* àn *or* Assýrius *an Assýrian;* nutrítus *brought up* Thébis *at Thebes,* àn *or* Árgis *at Árgos.* Ventósus *being wind-like, that is, fíckle or incónstant as the wind,* Rómæ *at Rome* ámem *I* (*can*) *like* Tíbur *the cíty Tíbur,* Tíbure *at Tíbur* (ámem) Rómam *I* (*can*) *like Rome.*

Nómen *the name* lóci *of a place* férè *cómmonly* ádditur *is ádded to, or, put áfter* vérbis *verbs* significántibus *sígnifying* mótum *mótion* ad lócum *to a place,* in accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case* síne præpositióne *withoút a preposítion:*—ut *as,* concéssi *I went* Cantabrígiam *to Cámbridge* ad capiéndum *to take* cúltum *cúlture or cultivátion* ingénii *of génius, that is, to get leárning.*

Ad hunc módum *to* (*or áfter*) *this mánner* útimur *we use* dómus *a house,* et *and* rus *the coúntry:*—ut *as,* capéllæ *ye líttle she-goats* sáturæ *béing full* íte dómum *go home,* Hésperus *the E'vening star* vénit *comes, that is, the évening appróaches,* íte *be gone.* Égo íbo *I will go* rus *ínto the coúntry.*

Nómen *the name* lóci *of a place* férè *cómmonly* ádditur *is ádded to, or, put áfter* vérbis *verbs* significántibus *sígnifying* mótum *mótion* à lóco *from a place* in ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case,* síne præpositióne *withoút a preposítion:*—ut *as,* nísì *unléss* ésses proféctus *you had gone, that is, if you had not gone* Rómâ *from Rome* ántè *befóre,* relínqueres *you would leave* éam *it* nùnc *now.*

Impersonália vérba *impérsonal vérbs* non hábent *have not* nominatívum (cásum) *a nóminative case* enunciátum *expréssed*

*(in Látin)* :—ut *as*, júvat *it is pleásant* íre *to go* sub úmbras *únder the shádows, or ínto the shade.*

Hæc impersonália (vérba) *these impérsonals*, ínterest *it ínterests*, et *and* réfert *it concérns*, jungúntur *are joíned* quibúslibet genitívis (cásibus) *únto ány génitive cáses you like*, præter *excépt or with the excéption of* hos fœminínos ablatívos (cásus) *these féminine áblative cáses*, méâ *with mine ;* túâ *with thine ;* súâ, *with his, hers, its, theirs ;* nóstrâ, *with ours ;* véstrâ, *with yours ;* et *and* cújâ, *with whose ?*—ut *as*, ínterest *it ínterests or concérns* magistrátûs *a mágistrate, that is, it is his dúty*, tuéri *to défend* bónos (hómines) *the good*, animadvértere *to animadvért* in málos (hómines) *upón the bad, that is, to púnish the bad.* Réfert túâ *it concérns your búsiness, that is, you*, nôsse (*for* novísse) *to know* te ípsum *yoursélf.*

Et *álso* hi genitívi (cásus) *these génitive cáses* addúntur *are ádded*, tánti *of so much*, quánti *of how much*, mágni *of a great deal*, párvi *of líttle*, quanticúnquè *of how much soéver*, tantídem *of just so much :* ut *as*, réfert tánti *it relátes of so much, that is, of such concérn is it* ágere *to do* honésta *hónest things, that is, to act hónestly.*

Impersonália (vérba) *impérsonal verbs* pósita *put* acquisitívè *acquísitively* póstulant *demánd or requíre* datívum (cásum) *a dátive case :*—aútèm *but* (éa vérba) quæ *those verbs which* ponúntur *are put* transitívè *tránsitively*, (póstulant *requíre*) accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case :* ut *as*, bénefit *it bénefits* nóbis *us, that is, we enjóy bléssings* à Déo, *from God.* Júvat *it delights* me *me* íre *to go* per áltum *óver the deep, that is, to trável by sea.*

Vérò *but* præposítio ad *the preposítion ad* propriè ádditur *is próperly or pecúliarly ádded* his (vérbis) *únto these verbs*, áttinet *it belóngs*, pértinet *it pertaíns*, spéctat *it concérns :* ut *as*, vis *would you have* me *me* dícere *to speak* (id) quod (*that*) *which* áttinet *belóngs* ad te *to you ?* Spéctat *it looks* ad ómnes (hómines) *to all men, that is, it concérns all* vívere *to live* bénè *well or ríghteously.*

Accusatívus (cásus) *an accúsative case* cum *with* genitívo (cásu) *a génitive*, subjícitur *is subjoíned to or put áfter* his impersonálibus (vérbis) *these impérsonal verbs*, pœ́nitet *it repénts*, tǽdet *it weáries*, míseret, *it pítieth*, miseréscit, *it commíserates*, púdet *it shames*, píget *it irks or grieves :*—ut *as*, si *if* vixísset *he had lived* ad centésimum ánnum *to (his) hún-*

*dredth year*, non pœnitéret *it would not repént, that is, it would not have repénted* éum *him* súæ senectútis *of his old age.* Míseret me *it píties me* túi *of thee, that is, I píty thee.*

Impersonále vérbum *an impérsonal verb* passívæ vócis *of the pássive voice* pótest *can or may* áccipi *be táken* pro *for* síngulis persónis *the séveral pérsons respéctively, that is, for each pérson* utriúsque númeri *of both númbers* elegántèr *élegantly, or with élegance:* —ut *as*, státur *it is stood* (à me *by me*), id est, *that is*, sto *I stand*, (à te *by thee, that is*), stas *thou stándest*, (ab íllo *by him, that is*), stat *he stands*, (à nóbis, *by us, that is*), stámus *we stand*, (à vóbis *by you, that is*), státis *you stand*, (ab íllis *by them, that is*), stant *they stand:* vidélicèt *you may see, or námely*, ex vi *by vírtue* cásûs *of a case* adjúncti *ádded to it:* ut *as*, státur *it is stood* à me *by me*, id est *that is*, sto *I do stand:* státur *it is stood* ab íllis *by them*, id est *that is*, stant *they do stand.*

Participia *the párticiples of verbs* régunt *góvern* cásus *the cáses* verbórum *of the verbs* à quíbus (vérbis) *from which* derivántur *they are dedúced or deríved:*—ut *as*, téndens *strétching forth or spreáding out* dúplices pálmas *doúble ópen-hands or both his palms or hands* ad sídera *to the stars, or tówards heáven*, réfert *he útters* vóce *with voice, that is, loúdly* tália (vérba) *such words as these.*

Datívus (cásus) *a dátive case* intérdùm *sómetimes* ádditur *is ádded* participiis *to párticiples* passívæ vócis *of the pássive voice*,—præsértim *espécially* si *if* éxeunt in -dus *they end in -dus:* ut *as*, mágnus cívis *a greát or míghty cítizen or súbject* óbîit (*for* obívit) *died*, et *and* formidátus (*one*) *feáred* Othóni *to O'tho, that is, a pérson dreáded by O'tho.* Chrémes réstat *Chrémës remaíns*, qui *who* est *is* exorándus *to be beseéched* míhi *to me, that is, to be yet prevaíled upón by me.*

Participia *párticiples*, cùm *when* fiunt *they are made or becóme* (adjectíva) nómina *ádjective nouns* éxigunt *require* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case:* ut *as*, áppetens *greédy* aliéni (negótii) *of anóther man's próperty*,—profúsus *lávish* súi (negótii) *of his own.*

Exósus *háting*, perósus *útterly háting*, pertæsus *weáry of*, significántia *sígnifying* actívè *áctively*, éxigunt *requíre* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case:* ut *as*, astrónomus *an astrónomer* exósus *háting* mulíeres *wómen* ad únam (mulíerem) *to one, that is, in géneral.* Perósæ *útterly háting* im-

múndam segnítiem *fílthy sloth or ídleness.* Pertǽsus *quite weáry or tíred of* súam ignáviam *his own slúggishness.*

Exósus *detésted,* et *and* perósus *háted to death,* significántia *sígnifying* passívè *pássively,* legúntur *are read* cum *with* datívo (cásu) *a dátive case:* ut *as,* exósus *detésted or greátly háted* Déo *of God,* et *and* sánctis *the saints.* Germáni *the Gérmans* sunt *are* perósi *mórtally ódious* Románis *to the Rómans, that is, are mórtally háted by the Rómans.*

Nátus *born,* prognátus *prócreated,* sátus *sprung,* crétus *descénded,* creátus *begótten or prodúced,* órtus *rísen,* éditus *brought forth,* éxigunt *requíre* ablatívum (cásum) *an áblative case;* et *and* sǽpè *óftentimes* cum *with* præpositióne *a prepo-sítion:* ut *as,* bóna (fœ́mina) *a vírtuous lády* prognáta *born* bónis paréntibus *of vírtuous párents.* Sáte *O thou who art sprung* sánguine *from the blood* Dívûm (*for* Divórum) *of the Gods!* Quo sánguine *from what blood* crétus *descénded!* Vénus órta *Vénus sprung* mári *from the sea* prǽstat *secúres* máre *the sea* eúnti *to the pérson góing, that is, to the pássen-ger.* Éditus *sprung* térrâ *from the earth.* Fúi *I was* nýmpha *a nymph* édita *descénded* de mágno flúmine *from a great ríver.*

En *lo or behóld* et *and* éccè *look or see,* advérbia *adverbs* demonstrándi *of shówing,* jungúntur *are joíned* frequéntiùs *more fréquently, that is, most cómmonly* nominatívo (cásui) *to a nóminative case:* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative,* ráriùs *séldomer, that is, less fréquently:* ut *as,* èn *see* Príamus *Príam.* Ec'cè tíbi *behóld for thee* nóster státus *our state or condítion.* En *lo* quátuor áras *four áltars:* éccè *see there* dúas (áras) *two* tíbi *for thee,* Dáphni *O Dáphnis,* átquè *and* dúo altária *two sacrifícial hearths* Phœ́bo *for Phœ́bus or Apóllo.*

En *lo or behóld,* et *and* éccè *look at or see,* (advérbia) exprobrándi *ádverbs of upbraíding,* jungúntur *are joíned* ac-cusatívo (cásui) sóli *to an accúsative case ónly:*—ut *as,* èn ánimum et méntem *see a mind and a disposítion.* Aútèm *but* éccè álterum *see the óther (here).*

Quǽdam advérbia *cértain ádverbs* lóci *of place,* témporis *of time,* et *and* quantitátis *of quántity,* admíttunt *admít* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case.*

1. Lóci *of place:* ut *as,* úbì *where,* úbĭnàm *where,* nusquàm *no where* éò *thither,* lóngè *far,* quò *whíther,* úbĭvìs *ány where,*

húccinè *what hither, &c.*—ut *as*, úbì géntium *where of nátions or in the world?* Invenítur *he is found* núsquàm lóci *no where of place, that is, no where.* Est véntum *it is come, that is, men are now arrived* éò impudéntiæ *at that (degreé) of impudence.* Quò terrárum *to what part of lands or of the globe or earth* ábîit (*for* abívit) *is he gone?*

2. Témporis *of time:* ut *as*, nùnc *now*, tùnc *then*, tùm *then*, intéreà *in the mean time*, prídiè *the day befóre*, postrídiè, *the day áfter, &c.:* ut *as*, póteram *I could do* níhil *nóthing* ámpliùs *more* tùnc témporis *then of time, that is, at that time* quàm *than* flére *weep.* Iniérunt (*for* inivérunt) *they éntered or begán* púgnam *the fight or báttle* prídiè *the day befóre* éjus diéi *that day.* Prídiè *the day befóre* calendárum *the cálends of the month*, vèl *or* caléndas *the cálends of the month.*

3. Quantitátis *of quántity:* ut *as*, párùm *but líttle*, sátis *enoúgh*, abúndè *abúndantly, &c.*—ut *as*, sátis eloquéntiæ *enoúgh of éloquence*, párum sapiéntiæ *líttle enoúgh of wísdom.* Audívimus *we have heard* abúndè fabulárum *abúndantly of tales, that is, a world of fábles.*

Quǽdam (advérbia) *some ádverbs* admíttunt *admít* cásus *the cáses* nóminum *of the nouns* úndè *whence or from which* sunt dedúcta *they are dedúced, or were derived:*—ut *as*, vívit *he lives* inutílitèr *úselessly or unprófitably* síbi *to himsélf.* Maúri *the Moors* sunt *are* próximè Hispániam *next to Spain.* Méliùs *bétter*, vèl *or* óptimè *the best* ómnium *of all.* Morabátur *he staid or tárried* ámpliùs opinióne *more than opínion, that is, lónger than was expécted.*

(Hæc) advérbia *these ádverbs* diversitátis *of divérsity*, álitèr *ótherwise*, sécùs *ótherwise;* et *and* ílla dúo (advérbia) *these two*, ántè *befóre*, pòst *áfter*, non rárò jungúntur *are not séldom joíned, that is, are óften joíned* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative:*—ut *as*, múltò álitèr *much ótherwise.* Paúlò sécùs *líttle ótherwise.* Múltò ántè *much befóre.* Paúlò pòst *a líttle áfter.* Vènit *she came* lóngo témpore pòst *a long time áfter.*

Ínstar *like, or équal to*, et *and* érgô *becaúse or for the sake of* súmpta *béing assúmed or táken* adverbiálitèr *advérbially, that is, as ádverbs*, hábent *have* genitívum (cásum) *a génitive case* post se *áfter them:* ut *as*, ædíficant *they build* équum *a horse* divínâ árte *by the divíne art or aid* Pálladis *of Pállas, or Minérva*, ínstàr móntis *as big as a moúntain.* Donári *to be gífted or rewárded* érgô *for the sake of* virtútis *vírtue.*

Conjunctiónes *conjúnctions* copulatívæ *cópulative* et *and* disjunctívæ *disjúnctive* conjúngunt *join togéther*, *that is, connéct* símiles cásus *like cáses*, (símiles) módos (*like*) *moods*, et *and* (simília) témpora (*like*) *ténses* :—ut *as*, Sócrates dócuit *Sócratës taught* Xenophóntem *Xénophon* et *and* Platónem *Pláto.* Stat *he stands* récto córpore *with eréct bódy, that is, with his bódy eréct or úpright*, átquè *and* déspicit *looks down upón* térras *the lands or earth.* Nèc scríbit *he neíther writes* nèc légit *nor reads.*

Nísì *unléss* rátio *the reáson or the adóption* váriæ constructiónis *of a dífferent constrúction* póscat *requíre* áliud *anóther thing, that is, that it should be ótherwise* :—ut *as*, émi *I bought* líbrum *a book* centússi *for a húndred pence* et *and* plúris *more.* Víxi *I líved* Rómæ *at Rome* et *and* Venétiis *at Vénice.* Nísì *unléss* lactásses (*for* lactavísses) me *you had súckled or fed me up* amántem *lóving or béing in love,* et *and* prodúceres *were dráwing me on, that is, had drawn* (*or contínued to draw*) *me on* fálsâ spe *with false hope.*

Quàm *the conjúnction* "quàm" *than*, sǽpè *oftentímes* intellígitur *is understoód* post *áfter* (hæc advérbia *these ádverbs*) ámpliùs *more*, plus *more* et *and* mínùs *less* : ut *as*, sunt *there are* ámpliùs *more, that is, it is more* sex ménses (*than*) *six months.* Paúlò plùs *sómewhat more* trecénta vehícula (*than*) *three húndred cárriages* sunt amíssa *were lost.* Nix *the snow* núnqùam *néver* jácuit *lay* álta *deep* mínùs *less* quátuor pédes (*than*) *four feet.*

Quíbus módis *únto what moods* verbórum *of verbs* quǽdam advérbia *cértain ádverbs* et *and* conjunctiónès *conjúnctions* cóngruant *correspónd.*

Nè, àn, nùm *whéther or not*, pósita *béing put or úsed* dubitatívè *doúbtfully*, aùt *or* indefinítè *indéfinitely*, jungúntur *are joíned* subjunctívo (módo) *únto a subjúnctive mood* : ut *as*, réfert níhil *it mátters nóthing, or, it makes no dífference* fecerísne *whéther you did it* àn *or* persuáseris *persuáded* (*to it*). Víse *go see* nùm *whéther or not* redíerit (*for* redíverit) *he be retúrned.*

Dùm *whilst* pro *for* dúmmodò *so that,* et *and* quoúsquè *untíl*, póstulat *claims or demánds* subjunctívum (módum) *a subjúnctive mood* :—ut *as*, dùm *so that* prósim *I may prófit* tíbi *you.* Dùm *untíl* tértia ǽstas *the third súmmer* víderit *shall have seen or behéld* (íllum) regnántem *him reígning.*

Qui *who* signíficans *sígnifying* caúsam *the cause,* éxigit *requíres* subjunctívum (módum) *a subjúnctive mood:* ut *as,* es *you are* stúltus *a fool* qui crédas *who can beliéve, that is, for beliéving* huic (hómini) *this féllow.*

Ut *that* pro *for* póstquam *áfter that, or, since that,* sícùt *as,* et *and* quómodò *how,* júngitur *is joíned* indicatívo (módo) *to an indícative mood:* aútèm *but* cùm *when* dénŏtat *it implíes or sígnifies* quánquàm *althoúgh,* útpotè *for as much as,* vèl *or* finálem caúsam *the fínal cause,* (júngitur *it is joíned*) subjunctívo (módo) *to a subjúnctive mood:* ut *as,* ut *since that* súmus *we are* in Pónto *in Póntus,* Íster *the Dánube* cónstitit frígore *has stood with cold, that is, has been frózen* tèr *three times.* Ut *as* túte *you yoursélf* es *are,* ità *so* cénses *you judge or think* ómnes *that all* ésse *are.* Ut *althoúgh* ómnia (negótia) *all things* contíngant *should fall out,* quæ (negótia) *which* vólo *I wish, or I would,* non póssum *I cánnot* levári *be eásed.* Non est fidéndum *it is not to be trústed, that is, no trust is to be gíven* tíbi *to you* ut qui *as one who* fefélleris *have deceíved* tótiès *so oft, that is, becaúse you have so fréquently been found a deceíver.* Dáve *O Dávus,* óro *I intreát* te *you* ut *that,* jàm *now* rédeat *he may retúrn* in viam *ínto the way.*

Déniquè *lástly,* ómnes vóces *all words* pósitæ *put* indefinítè *indéfinitely,* quáles *such as* sunt (hæ vóces) *are these,* quis *who,* quántus *how great,* quótus *how many, &c.* póstulant *requíre* subjunctívum (módum) *the subjúnctive mood:* ut *as,* vídeo *I see* cui *to whom, or to what sort of man* scrîbam *I am writing.* Quántus *how great* assúrgat *he rises up* in clýpeum (hóstis) *against the enemy's shield:* quo túrbine *with what a whirl or force* tórqueat *he hurls* hástam *the lance!*

Præposítio *a preposítion* subaudíta *understoód* intérdùm *sómetimes* fácit *makes, or caúses,* ut *that* ablatívus (cásus) *an áblative case* addátur *be ádded:* ut *as* hábeo *I have* (*or I esteém*) te *you* lóco *in the place* paréntis *of a párent,* id est, *that is,* in lóco.

Præposítio *a preposítion* in compositióne *in composítion* nonnúnquàm *sómetimes* régit *góverns* eúndem cásum *the same case* quem (cásum) *which* regébat *it góverned* et *álso* éxtra compositiónem *out of composítion:* ut *as,* detrúdunt *they thrust off* náves *the ships or véssels* scópulo *from the rock.* Prætéreo *I pass by* te *you* insalutátum *unsalúted, that is, I pass you withoút salúting you.*

Vérba *verbs* compósita *compoúnded* cum *with* (præpositiónibus *the prepositions*) à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, nonnúnquàm *sómetimes* répetunt *repeát* eásdem præpositiónes *the same prepositions* cum súo cásu *with their case, that is, with the case which they góvern*, éxtra compositiónem *out of composítion*,—átquè *and* id *that or this* elegántèr *élegantly* :—ut *as*, abstinuérunt *they abstaíned* à víno *from wine.*

In *the preposítion* "*in*," pro *for* érga *tówards*, cóntra *agaínst*, ad *to*, et *and* súpra *abóve*, éxigit *requíres* accusatívum (cásum) *an accúsative case* :—ut *as*, áccipit *she receíves or admíts* ánimum *a feéling* átquè *and* méntem *a mind* benígnam *kind, that is, she conceíves or entertaíns kíndly thoughts and inclinátions* in Teúcros *tówards the Trójans.* Péccem *I should offénd* in pública cómmoda *agaínst the públic advántage, or good.* Hǽres *an heir* quǽritur *is sought* in régnum *for the kíngdom.* Impérium *the góvernment or pówer* Jóvis *of Júpiter* est *is* in réges ípsos *óver kings themsélves.*

Sub *the preposítion* "sub" *únder*, cùm *when* refértur *it has relátion or relátes* ad témpus *to time*, férè *cómmonly* júngitur *is joíned* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case* : ut *as*, sub ídem témpus *about the same time*, id est *that is*, círca *aboút* vèl *or* per *throughoút* ídem témpus.

Súper *the preposítion* "súper" *óver*, prò *for* últra *beyónd*, appónitur *is put* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative case* ; pro *for* de *of or concérning* (apponitur *is put*) ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative* :—ut *as*, próferet *he will exténd* impérium *the émpire* (*or kíngdom*) et *both* súper Garamántas *beyónd the Garamátians or Áfricans* et *and* Índos *the In'dians.* Rógitans *inquíring and inquíring óver again* múlta *mány things* (*or much*), súper Príamo *concérning Príam*, múlta *mány things* (*or much*) súper Héctore *aboút or concérning Héctor.*

Ténus *as far as* júngitur *is joíned* ablatívo (cásui) *to an áblative case* et *both* singulári (número) *in the síngular* et *and* pluráli (número) *plúral númber* :—ut *as*, ténus púbe *as high as the waist or groin.* Ténus pectóribus *up to the breasts.*

At *but* genitívo (cásui) *to a génitive case* pluráli (número) *in the plúral númber* tántùm *alóne* : et *and* sémpèr séquitur *it álways fóllows* súum cásum *its case* :—ut *as*, crúrum ténus *as high as the legs.*

Interjectiónes *interjéctions* ponúntur *are put, that is, are úsed*, non ráro *not séldom, in óther words, are fréquently*

*employed* síne cásu *withoút a case:*—ut *as*, conníxa *háving yeáned*, relíquit *she abándoned or left* spem grégis *the hope of the flock*, ah *alás!* in núdâ sílice *upón the bare flint, that is, on the hard and náked rock.* Quæ deméntia *what mádness* (*is this*) málùm (*with*) *a míschief!*

O! exclamántis *the interjéction* "*O!*" *of a pérson exclaíming*, júngitur *is joíned* nominatívo (cásui) *to a nóminative case*, accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative*, et *and* vocatívo (cásui) *to a vócative:*—ut *as*, O féstus díes *O! the jóyful day* hóminis *of* (*mórtal*) *man!* O nímiùm fortunátos agrícolas *O! too fórtunate húsbandmen*, si *if* nôrint (*for* nóverint) *they knew* súa bóna *their own háppiness!* O formóse púer *O! beaútiful boy*, nè créde *trust not* nímiùm *too much* colóri *to cólour, or compléxion; that is, to your beaúty.*

Heù *ah!* et *and* proh *wo! or alás!* jungúntur *are joíned* nùnc *now or sómetimes* nominatívo (cásui) *to a nóminative case*, nùnc *now or at óther times* accusatívo (cásui) *to an accúsative:*—ut *as*, heù píetas *ah! his píety!* Heù prísca fídes *ah! the áncient intégrity!* Heù invísam stírpem *ah! the ódious stock or race!* Proh! Júpiter *O! Júpiter*, tu *thou*, hómo *man*, ádigis me *drívest me* ad insániam *to mádness.* Proh fídem *alas! the faith or help* Déûm (*for* Deórum) *of Gods* átquè *and* hóminum *of men!* Ítem *líkewise* vocatívo (cásui) *to a vócative case*·—ut *as*, Proh! sáncte Júpiter *O! sácred Jove.*

Heì *wo!* et *and* væ *alás!* jungúntur *are joíned* datívo (cásui) *to a dátive case:*—ut *as*, heì míhi *wo! me* quòd *that* ámor *love* est *is* medicábilis *cúrable* núllis hérbis *by no herbs or médicaments.* Væ *alás!* mísero míhi *wrétched me, that is, O alás! wrétched man that I am*, de quántâ spe *from how great hope* décidi *have I fállen,—that is, from what high hopes am I fállen!*

---

## PROSODY CONSTRUED.

Prosódia *prósody* est *is* (éa) pars *that part* grammáticæ *of grámmar*, quæ *which* dócet *teáches* quantitátem *the quántity or true time* syllabárum *of sýllables.*

Prosódia *prósody* (vúlgò) divíditur *is* (*cómmonly*) *divíded* in

tres pártes *into three parts*, tónum *the tone*, spíritum *the breáthing*, et *and* témpus *the time*.

Hoc lóco *in this place* est vísum nóbis *it is seen to us, that is, it is thought próper by us*, tractáre *to treat* tántùm *ónly* de témpore *of time or quántity.*

Témpus *time* est *is* mensúra *the meásure or durátion* proferéndæ sýllabæ *of úttering or pronoúncing a sýllable.*

Bréve témpus *a short quántity or time* notátur *is márked or distínguished* sîc *thus* (˘) :—ut *as*, (grátiâ excémpli, *for the sake of exámple*), Dŏ'mĭnŭs *the Lord* :—aútèm *but* lóngum (témpus) *a long quántity* (notátur *is márked*) sîc *thus or áfter this fáshion* (¯) :—ut *as*, cōn'trā *agaínst.*

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitútio *the plácing togéther* duárum syllabárum *of two sýllables* vèl *or* plúrium (syllabárum) *of more* (*than two*) ex *from* (*or accórding to*) cértâ observatióne *the cértain observátion* (*or obsérvance*) témporum *of the times or meásures of the sýllables.*

Spondǽus *a spóndee* est *is* dissýllabus (pes) *a díssyllable foot, that is, a foot consísting of two sýllables :* ut *as*, vīr'-tūs *virtue.*

Dáctylus *a dáctyle* est *is* trisýllabus (pes) *a trísyllable foot,—that is, a métrical foot consísting of three sýllables :* ut *as*, scrī'-bĕ-rĕ *to write.*

Scánsio *scánsion or scánning* est *is* legítima commensurátio *the legítimate commensurátion* (*or, the meásuring accórding to Rule*) vérsûs *of a verse* in síngulos pédes *into its séveral feet, that is, the divíding it corréctly ínto the métrical feet whereóf it is fórmed.*

Scansióni *to scánsion, or the scánning of a verse*, áccidunt *there háppen or belóng* figúræ *the fígures* (appellátæ *cálled*) Synalœ́pha, Ecthlípsis, Synǽresis, Diǽresis, et *and* Cæsúra.

Synalœ́pha *the fígure Synalœ́pha* est *is* elísio *the elísion or stríking out* vocális *of a vówel* in fíne *in or at the end* dictiónis *of a word* ánte álteram (vocálem) *befóre anóther* (*vówel*) in inítio *in the begínning* sequéntis (dictiónis) *of the fóllowing word :*—ut *as*, crástina víta *to-mórrow's life* est *is* nímis séra *too late*, víve *live*, hódiè *to-day. In this verse*, pro *for* vī'tă, vī'vĕ, *we pronoúnce or say* vī't' *and* vī'v'.

At *but* heù ! *alás !* et *and* O ! *the interjéction O !* núnquàm intercipiúntur *are néver intercépted, or struck out ; that is, are néver elíded by synalœ́pha.*

Ecthlípsis *the figure Ecthlípsis* est *is* quótiès *as óften as* m *the létter m* perímitur *is cut off* cum *with* súâ vocáli *its vówel,* próximâ dictióne *the next word* exórsâ *begínning* à vocáli *with a vówel:* ut *as,* mónstrum *a mónster* horréndum *hórrible,* infórme *úgly,* íngens *huge or of vast bulk,* cúi *to whom* lúmen *the light* (est) adémptum *has been táken awáy, that is, a hórrid, úgly, big mónster, deprived of his sight. In this verse* pro *for* mónstrum horréndum, infórme, *we pronoúnce* mónstr' mhorrénd' minfórm'.

Synǽresis *the figure Synǽresis* est *is* contráctio *the contráction* duárum syllabárum *of two sýllables* in únam (sýllabam) *ínto one :*—ut *as,* seù *or whéther* alveária *the bee-hives* fúerint téxta *may have been wóven* lénto vímine *of límber ósier. Here the word* alveária *is pronoúnced* quásì *as though* esset scríptum *it were wrítten* alvária.

Diǽresis *the figure Diǽresis* est *is* úbì *when* ex únâ sýllabâ *of one sýllable* disséctâ *divíded* dúæ (sýllabæ) *two sýllables* fíunt *are made :*—ut *as,* debúerant *they ought* (*líterally, had ówed*) evoluísse *to have unwoúnd* súos fúsos *their spíndles.* Evoluísse, pro *for* evolvísse.

Cæsúra *the figure Cæsúra* est *is* cùm *when* post *áfter* absolútum pédem *an ábsolute or a pérfect foot* brévis sýllaba *a short sýllable* exténditur *is exténded or made long* in fíne dictiónis *in or at the end of a word :*—ut *as,* ínhians *intént upón* pectóribus *the víscera, or ínner parts,* cónsulit *she consúlts* spirántia éxta *the reéking or pánting éntrails.*

Heróïcus vérsus *an heróic verse,* qui (vérsus) *which* dícitur étiàm *is cálled álso* Hexámeter (*by the name of*) *Hexámeter* cónstat *consísts* ex sex pédibus *of six feet :*—quíntus lócus *the fifth place* (*of the verse*) peculiáritèr *pecúliarly* (*or, in a spécial mánner*) víndicat síbi *árrogates or claims to itsélf* dáctylum *a dáctyle,*—séxtus (lócus) *the sixth* (*place requíres*) spondǽum *a spóndee ;* réliqui, (lóci) *the óther pláces* (hábent) hunc *have this foot* vèl íllum *or that* (*either a dáctyle or a spóndee*) próût *accórding as* vólumus *we will or like :* ut *as,* Títyre *O Títyrus,* tu *thou,* récubans *reclíning* sub tégmine *únder the cóver* pátulæ fági *of a wide-spreáding beéch-tree.*

Spondǽus *a spóndee* étiàm *álso* aliquándò *sómetimes* repecrítur *is found* in quínto lóco *in the fifth place :*—ut *as,* cára sóboles (*thou*) *dear offspring* Déûm (*for* Deórum) *of the*

*Gods*, mágnum increméntum *great increment, that is, illústrious prógeny* Jóvis *of Júpiter.*

Última sýllaba *the last sýllable* cujuscúnque vérsûs *of évery verse* habétur *is accoúnted* commúnis *cómmon, that is, may be éither a long or a short sýllable at pleásure.*

Elegíacus vérsus *an elegíac verse*, qui (vérsus) *which* et *álso* hábet *has* nómen *the name* Pentámetri *of Pentámeter*, cónstat *consísts* è dúplici penthemímeri *of a doúble penthémimer, that is, of two penthémimers*, quárum (penthemímerum) *whereóf or of which* príor (penthemímeris) *the fórmer or first of the two* comprehéndit *contaíns* dúos pédes *two feet*, dactýlicos *dactýlic, that is, dáctyles*, spondíacos *spondáic or spóndees*,—vèl *or* alterútros *éither the one or the óther of those;* cum *with* lóngâ sýllabâ *a long sýllable*:—áltera (penthemímeris) *the other penthémimer* (comprehéndit) étiàm *contaíns álso* dúos pédes *two feet*, sèd *but* omnínò dactýlicos *whólly dactýlic, that is, álways dáctyles*, ítèm *likewise* cum *with* lóngâ sýllabâ *a long sýllable*:—ut *as*, ámor *love* est *is* res *a thing* pléna *full* sollíciti timóris *of ánxious fear.*

THE QUANTITY OF FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

I. VOCÁLIS *a vówel* ánte *befóre* dúas consonántes *two cónsonants*, aùt *or* dúplicem (consonántem) *a doúble cónsonant*, in eâdem dictióne *in the same word*, est *is* ubíquè *éverywhere* lónga *long* positióne *by posítion*: ut *as*, (*in the words*) vēn'tus *the wind*, āx'is *an áxle-tree*, patrī'zo *I act like my father*, cū'jus *of whom or of what.*

II. Quòd si *but if* cónsonans *a cónsonant* claúdat *términate or close* priórem dictiónem *the fórmer word* (*that is, the first word of the two*), sequénte (dictióne) *the fóllowing word* ítèm *álso* inchoánte *beginning* à consonánte *by or with a cónsonant*, vocális *the vówel* præcédens *góing befóre* étiàm *álso* érit *will be* lónga *long* positióne *by posítion*:—ut *as*, sum *I am* májor *greáter* quàm *than* cúi *whom, that is, one whom* fortúna *fórtune* póssit *is áble* nocére *to hurt.* Sýllabæ *the sýllables* -jor, -sum, quàm, et *and* -sit, sunt lóngæ *are* (*here*) *long* positióne *by posítion.*

III. At si *but if* príor díctio *the first word of the two* éxeat *términate* in brévem vocálem *in a short vówel*, sequénte (dictióne) *the fóllowing word* incipiénte *beginning* à duábus consonántibus *by or with two cónsonants*, intérdum *sómetimes*

prodúcitur *it is made long, that is, the fínal létter is léngthened*, sèd *but* ráriùs *séldomer, meáning, not óften* :—ut *as*, occúltā spóliă *the sécret spoils : here the fínal* "a" *of* "occúltă" *is léngthened befóre inítial* "sp-" *either by this Rule or by Cæsúra.*

IV. Brévis vocális *a short vówel* ánte mútam (líteram) *befóre a mute*, líquidâ (líterâ) sequénte *a líquid fóllowing*, rédditur *is réndered* commúnis *cómmon* :—ut *as* (*in the words*) pátris *of a fáther*, vólucris (vèl volúcris) *of a bird.* Vérò *but* lónga (vocális) *a long vówel* non mutátur *is not áltered or chánged* :—ut *as* (*in the words*) arátrum *a plough*, simulácrum *an ímage.*

Vocális *a vówel* ánte álteram (vocálem) *befóre anóther vówel* in éâdem dictióne *in the same word* est *is* ubíquè *éverywhere* brévis *short* :—ut *as* (*in the words*) Dĕ'us *God*, mĕ'us *mine*, tŭ'us *thine*, pĭ'us *gódly or afféctionate.*

Excípias *you may or must excépt* genitívos (cásus) *génitive cáses* (finítos) in -ius *énding in -ius*, habéntes *háving* secúndam fórmam *the sécond form or declénsion* pronóminis *of a prónoun* :—ut *as*, únius vèl unícus *of one*, íllius vèl illíus *of him, her, it or that, &c.* ; úbì *where or in which* i *the vówel* "*i*" reperítur *is found* commúnis *cómmon* ; lícèt *althóugh* in altérius *in the word* "altérius" *of anóther*, sit *it be* sémpèr *álways* brévis *short* : in alíus *in the génitive* "alíus" *of anóther*, (sit) sémpèr *it be álways* lónga *long.*

Étiàm *likewise* genitívi (cásus) *the génitive* et *and* datívi (cásus) *dátive cáses* quíntæ declinatiónis *of the fifth declénsion* sunt *are* excipiéndi *to be excepted*, úbì *where, or in which* e *the vówel* "*e*" ínter *betwíxt or betweén* géminum i *double* "*i*" *that is, precéded and fóllowed by the létter* "*i*," fit *is made* lónga *long* ; ut *as* (*in the word*) faciéi *of a face* :—alióquì non *ótherwise not* ; ut *as* (*in the words*) réi *of a thing*, spéi *of hope*, fídei *of faith.*

Etiàm *álso* fi- *the sýllable fi-* in fío *in the verb* "fío" *I am made or I becóme*, est lónga *is long* ; nísì *unless* e et r *the létters e and r* sequúntur *fóllow* símùl *togéther* : ut *as* (*in the two words*) fī'ĕrem *I might becóme*, fī'ĕri *to be made or done* :—vélùt *thus*, jàm *now* ómnia (negótia) *all things* fiunt *are done* quæ (negótia) *which* negábam *I deníed* pósse *were áble* fíeri *to be done, that is, which I assérted could not be done.*

Díus *gódlike or heávenly* hábet *has* prímam sýllabam *the*

*first sýllable* lóngam *long:*—Diána *the próper name Diána* (hábet prímam sýllabam) commúnem *has the first sýllable cómmon.*

Interjéctio óhe *the interjéction "óhē"* hábet *has* priórem sýllabam) *the príor sýllable, that is, the first sýllable of the two* commúnem *cómmon.*

Vocális *a vówel* ánte álteram (vocálem) *befóre anóther vówel* in Grǽcis dictiónibus *in Greek words* subíndè *now and then* fit *is made* lónga *long;* ut *as,* dícite Pīérides *say, O ye Múses.* Réspice Lāérten *regárd Läértës.*

Et *and* in Grǽcis possessívis (nomínibus) *in Greek possés-sives:* ut *as,* Ænē'ïa nútrix *the Ænéan nurse, that is, Ænéas's nurse.* Rhodopē'ïus Or'pheus, *Rhodopéan Or'pheus, that is, Or'pheus of Rhódopë.*

Om'nis diphthóngus *évery díphthong* est *is* lónga *long* ápud Latínos *amóng or with the Látins:*—ut *as,* aū'rum *gold,* neū'ter *neither,* músæ *of or to a song:* nísì *unléss or excépt* præ *the preposítion "præ,"* vocáli sequénte *a vówel fóllowing, that is, when a vówel fóllows:* ut *as,* prǣíre *to go befóre,* prǣústus *burnt at one end,* prǣámplus *véry large.*

Derivatíva (vocábula) *derívative words* férè *in géneral, or cómmonly,* sortiúntur *are allótted or assígned* eándem quantitátem *the same quántity* cum *with* primitívis (vocábulis) *their prímitives, that is, with the words from which they are derívecl:*—ut *as,* ămátor *a lóver,* ămícus *a friend,* ămábilis *ámiable;* prímâ (sýllabâ existénte) brévi *the first sýllable béing short,*—ab ă'mō (*becaúse deríved*) *from* (*the verb*) "ă'mō" *I love.*

Támèn *howéver* paúca (vérbula) *a few words* excipiúntur *are excépted,* quæ (vérbula) *which* dedúcta *béing deríved* à brévibus (sýllabis) *from short sýllables* prodúcunt *exténd or léngthen* prímam sýllabam *the first sýllable:*—ut *as,* cō'mō cō'mĭs *I comb or adórn the hair,* à cŏ'mă (*deríved*) *from* "cŏ'mă" *the hair;* fō'mĕs *fúel,* et *and* fōmēn'tŭm *an assuág-ing pláster,* à *from* fŏ'vĕō *I chérish;* hūmā'nŭs *húman, or humáne,* ab hŏ'mō *from* "hŏ'mō" *a man* (*or wóman*)*:* jūcūn'dŭs *pleásant,* à *from* jŭ'vō *I delíght;* jūmēn'tŭm *a beast of búrden,* à *from* jŭ'vō *I help;* jū'nĭŏr *yóunger,* à *from* jŭ'vĕnĭs *young,* —*unléss this last be ríghtly a contráction for* jŭvĕ'nĭŏr; lātēr'nă *a lántern,* à *from* lă'tĕō *I lie hid;* lēx lē'gĭs *a law,* à *from* lĕ'gō *I read;* mō'bĭlĭs *móveable* à *from* mŏ'vĕō *I move;* nō'nŭs *the ninth* à *from* nŏ'vĕm *nine;* rēx rē'gĭs *a king,*

rēgī′nă *a queen*, à *from* rĕ′gŏ *I rule:* sē′dēs *a seat*, à *from* sĕ′dĕŏ *I sit;* tĕ′gŭlă *a tile*, à *from* tĕ′gŏ *I cóver;* trā′gŭlă *a jávelin, álso a drag-net*, à *from* trăʹhŏ *I drag or draw;* vŏ′mĕr *a plough-share*, à *from* vŏ′mŏ *I throw out or cast up;* vōx vō′cĭs *a voice*, à *from* vŏ′cŏ *I call.*

Et *and* cóntrà *upón the óther hand* sunt (dícta) *there are words*, quæ (dícta) *which* (étsì) dedúcta (*althoúgh*) *deríved* à lóngis (sýllabis) *from long sýllables, that is, from prímitives with or of long quántity* (*yet*) corrípiunt *shórten* prímam (sýllabam) *the first sýllable:* ut *as*, ărē′nă *sand*, ărĭs′tă *the beard of corn*, ărūn′dŏ *a reed*, ab *from* ā′rĕŏ *I am dry or párched;* ărūs′pēx *a sóothsayer, or divíner*, ab *from* ā′ră *an áltar;* dĭ′cāx *a jéster*, à *from* dī′cŏ *I speak or say;* dĭ′tĭŏ *pówer*, à *from* dī′tĭs *ópulent, or rich;* dĭsēr′tŭs *éloquent*, à *from* dĭs′-sĕrŏ *I dispúte;* dūx dŭ′cĭs *a leáder*, à *from* dū′cŏ *I lead;* fĭ′dēs *faith*, à *from* fī′ŏ *I am made or I becóme:* fră′gŏr *a rústling noise or crash*, fră′gĭlĭs *frail*, à *from* frān′gŏ *I break;* gĕ′nŭī *I begát*, à *from* gīg′nŏ *I begét;* lŭcēr′nă *a cándle*, à *from* lū′cĕŏ *I shine;* nă′tŏ nă′tās *I shoot out*, à *from* nā′tū *to be grown or to be sprung up;* nŏ′tŏ nŏ′tās *I mark*, à *from* nō′tū *to be known;* pŏ′sŭī *I have put*, à *from* pō′nŏ *I put;* pŏ′tŭī *I have been áble*, à *from* pōs′sŭm *I am áble;* sŏ′pŏr *sound sleep*, à *from* sō′pĭŏ *I lull to sleep.*

Et *and* nonnúlla ália (dícta) *some few óther words* ex utróque génere *of éither sort or kind*, quæ (dícta) *which* relinquúntur *are left* observánda *to be obsérved* studiósis *by the stúdious* ínter legéndum *in* (*their*) *reáding.*

Compósita (vérba) *cómpound words* sequúntur *fóllow* quantitátem *the quántity* (*long or short*), simplícium (verbórum) *of their símple words:* ut *as*, à *from* lĕ′gŏ lĕ′gĭs *I read* (vénit *comes*) pēr′lĕgŏ *I read through;* (à *from*) lē′gŏ lē′gās *I send as an ambássador* (vénit *comes*) āllē′gŏ *I allége, or I accúse by méssengers;* à *from* pŏ′tēns *pówerful*, īm′pŏtēns *weak;* à *from* sō′lŏr *I sólace or cheer*, cōnsō′lŏr *I cómfort.*

Támèn *yet or howéver* hæc (paúca) brévia (vérbula) *these* (*few*) *short words, that is, these words háving short sýllables*, (étsì) enáta (*though*) *deríved* à lóngis (sýllabis) *from long sýllables*, excipiúntur *are excépted:*—dē′jĕrŏ *I swear a great oath*, pē′jĕrŏ *I pérjure or forsweár*, à *from* jū′rŏ *I swear;* in′nŭbă *unmárried*, prō′nŭbă *a bride-maid*, à *from* nū′bŏ *I márry or am márried.*

Om'ne prætéritum (témpus) *évery preterpérfect tense* dissýllabum *of two sýllables* hábet *has* priórem (sýllabam) *the first sýllable of the two* lóngam *long* :—ut *as*, lē'gi *I have read*, ē'mi *I have bought*, mō'vi *I have móved*.

1. Támèn *yet* excípias *you may* (*or must*) *excépt* (*the préterites*) bĭ'bi *I drank*, dĕ'di *I gave*, scĭ'di *I have cut*, stĕ'ti *I stood*, stĭ'ti *I stáyed*, tŭli *I bore or I súffered*, et *and* fĭ'di *I I clove or cleft*, à *from* fíndo *I cleave*.

2. (Vérba) geminántia *verbs doúbling* prímam (sýllabam) *the first sýllable* prætériti (témporis) *of the preterpérfect* hábent *have* prímam (sýllabam) *the first sýllable* brévem *short* ; ut *as*, cĕ'cidi, *I fell or have fállen*, à *from* că'do *I fall* ; cĕcídi *I have beáten*, à *from* cædo *I beat* ; dĭ'dici *I have learnt*, fĕfélli *I have deceíved*, mŏmórdi *I bit or have bitten*, pĕpéndi *I weíghed*, pŭ'pugi *I prícked*, tĕténdi *I strétched*, tĕ'tigi *I toúched*, tŏtóndi *I shore or I have shorn*, tŭ'tudi *I thúmped*.

Dissýllabum supínum *a díssyllable súpine, that is, ány súpine of two sýllables* hábet *has* priórem (sýllabam) *the fórmer or first sýllable* lóngam *long* : ut *as*, vī'sum *to see*, lā'tum *to bear or súffer*, lō'tum *to wash*, mō'tum *to move*.

Éxcipe *excépt* dă'tum *to give*, ĭ'tum *to go*, lĭ'tum *to besmeár or daub*, quĭ'tum *to be áble*, ră'tum *to suppóse*, rŭ'tum *to rush*, să'tum, *to sow*, sĭ'tum *to permít*, stă'tum *to stop*, et *and* cĭ'tum *to stir up*, à *from* cíeo cíes *I stir up* ; nàm *for* cī'tum *to make to go*, à *from* cío cis *I make to go*, quártæ (conjugatiónis) *of the fourth conjugátion*, hábet *hath* priórem (sýllabam) *the fórmer, or first, sýllable* lóngam *long*.

THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. A finíta '*a*' *fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in -a* producúntur *are prodúced or made long* :—ut *as*, ámā *love thou*, cóntrā *against*, érgā *tówards*.

Excípias *you may* (*or must*) *excépt*, pútă *suppóse*, ítă *éven so*, quiă *becaúse*, pósteă *áfterwards*, éjă, *well!* Ítèm *álso* ómnes cásus *all cáses* (finítos) in "a" *énding in "a*," cujuscúnque géneris *of whatéver génder* fúerint *they may have been, or are*, (cujuscúnque) númeri (*of whatéver*) *númber*, aùt *or* declinatiónis *declénsion* ; præter *excépt* vocatívos (cásus) *vócative cáses* à Græcis (dictiónibus finítis) in -ās *of Greek words énding in -ās* ; ut *as*, O Ænéā *O Ænéas*, O Thómā *O Thómas*.—et *and* ablatívum (cásum) *the áblative*

*case* (*síngular*) prímæ declinatiónis *of the first declénsion;* ut *as*, músâ *by or with a song.*

Numerália (nómina) *númeral nouns, that is, nouns of númber* (finíta) in -gínta *énding in "gínta"* hábent *have* finálem (líteram) *the fínal or last létter*, (*that is, the terminátional sýllable*) commúnem *cómmon*, sèd *but* frequéntiùs *óftener or more fréquently* lóngam *long:*—ut *as*, trigíntă *thírty.*

II. (Vérba) desinéntia *words énding* in b, d, t, *in ány of the three mutes b, d, t*, sunt brévia *are short* (*as to the terminátional or fínal sýllable*):—ut *as*, ăb *by or from*, ăd *to*, cápŭt *the head.*

III. (Vérba) desinéntia in c *words énding in c* producúntur *are made long:*—ut *as*, āc *and*, sīc *so*, et *and* advérbium *the ádverb* hîc *here.*

Sèd *but* dúo (vérbula finíta) in c *two* (*words énding*) *in c*, corripiúntur *are shórtened*,—nĕc *neíther*, et *and* dónĕc *until.*

Tría (vérbula) *three words* (*énding in c*) sunt commúnia *are cómmon, that is, are eíther long or short as to the quántity of the sýllable thus términating, námely*, fāc *do thou*, pronómen "hĭc" *the prónoun "hĭc,"* et *and* neútrum (génus) éjus *its neúter* "hŏc," módò *províded ónly* non sit *it be not* ablatívi cásûs *of the áblative case.*

IV. E finíta *'e' fínal, that is, words énding in -e*, sunt brévia *are short* (*as to the last létter*):—ut *as*, márĕ *the sea*, pénĕ *álmost*, légĕ *read thou*, scríbĕ *write.*

Om'nes vóces *all words* quíntæ inflectiónis *of the fifth declénsion* (finíta) in -e *énding in -e* sunt excipiéndæ *are to be excépted:*—ut *as*, fídē *with faith or fidélity*, (*the áblative case of* fídes *faith*), et *and* díē *in the day-time or by day:* únà *togéther* cum *with* partículis *the párticles* (*or words*) enátis índè *derived from it, that is, from "dĭē:"* ut *as*, hódiē *today*, quotídiē *daily*, prídiē *the day befóre*, postrídiē *the day áfter:* ítèm *álso* quárē (*that is*, quâ re) *whérefore;* quadérē (*that is*, quâ dē rē) *for what púrpose or cause;* eârē (*that is*, ĕ'â rē) *thérefore;* et *and* si quă sunt simília (vocábula) *if there be ány* (*more words*) *of the like sort or derivátion.*

Et ítèm *and álso* secúndæ persónæ singuláres *the sécond pérsons síngular* secúndæ conjugatiónis *of the sécond conjugátion:* ut *as*, dócē *teach*, móvē *move.*

Etiàm *álso* monosýllaba (*all*) *mónosyllables* (finíta) in e

*énding in "e"* producúntur *are made long*:—ut *as*, mē *me*, tē *thee*, sē *himsélf, hersélf, itsélf, or themsélves*; prǽter *excépt* enclíticas conjunctiónes *the enclític or adjúnctive conjúnctions*, -quĕ *and* -nĕ *whether or not*, -vĕ *or*.

Quìn et *moreóver, too,* advérbia *ádverbs* (finíta) in -e *énding in "e,"* dedúcta *dedúced or derived* ab adjectívis *from ádjectives* secúndæ declinatiónis *of the sécond declénsion* hábent *have* e *the létter e* lóngum *long*:—ut *as*, púlchrē *beaútifully*; dóctē *leárnedly*; váldē *míghtily* pro *for* válidē.

Quíbus (vócibus) *to which* (advérbia) *the ádverbs* férmĕ *cómmonly*, et *and* férĕ *álmost*, accédunt *accéde or are ádded*: támèn *yet* bénĕ *well*, et *and* málĕ *ill* omnínò corripiúntur *are altogéther or álways made short.*

Postrémò *lástly*, (vérba) quæ *words which* scribúntur *are written* à Grǽcis *by the Greeks* per η *with the létter "éta," that is, long "é,"* producúntur *are léngthened* natúrâ *by náture*, cujuscúnque cásûs *of whatéver case* fúerint *they may have been, or are*, (cujuscúnque) géneris (*of whatéver génder*), aùt *or* númeri *númber*: ut *as*, Léthē *the river Léthe, or Wáter of Oblívion*; Anchísē *with Anchísēs*; cétē *whales*; Témpē *the vale of Témpë, a pleásant place in Théssaly.*

V. I finíta *-i fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in i* sunt lóngæ *are long*: ut *as*, dóminī *lords*, magístrī *másters*, amárī *to be lóved.*

Prǽter *excépt* míhĭ *to me*, tíbĭ *to thee*, síbĭ *to himsélf, hersélf, itsélf, or themsélves*, úbĭ *when or where*, íbĭ *there*, quæ (vérbula) *which words* sunt *are* commúnia *cómmon* (*as to the last sýllable*).

Vérò *but* nísĭ *unléss*, et *and* quásĭ *as if*, corripiúntur *are shórtened; that is, they have the fínal "i" short.*

Cújus sórtis *of which kind* étiàm *líkewise* sunt *are* datívi (cásus) *the dátive* (*cáses*) et *and* vocatívi (cásus) *the vócative cáses* (singuláres *síngular*) Græcórum (nóminum) *of Greek nouns*; quórum (nóminum) *of which* genitívus (cásus) singuláris *the génitive case síngular* éxit *ends* in *os* bréve *in -ŏs short*:—ut *as*, (hī datívi (cásus) *these dátive cáses*, Minóidi *to Minóïs, or the daúghter of Mínos*; Pálladi *to Pállas, that is, Minérva*; Phýllĭdi *to Phýllis*: vocatívi (cásus) *these vócative cáses*, Aléxi *O Aléxis*, Amarýlli *O Amarýllis*, Dáphni *O Dáphnis.*

VI. L finíta *-l fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in -l* corripi-

*úntur are shórtened:*—ut *as*, ánimăl *an ánimal*, Ánnibăl *Hánnibal, a Carthagínian géneral*, mĕl *hóney*, púgĭl *a chámpion or bóxer*, cónsŭl *a cónsul.*

Prǽter *excépt* (*these three words*) nīl *nought*, contráctum *contrácted* à *of* (*or from*) níhĭl *nóthing ;* sāl *salt*, et *and* sōl *the sun.*

Et *and* quǽdam Hebrǽa (nómina) *some* (*or cértain*) *Hébrew words or names* (finíta) in -ēl *énding in -ēl :*—ut *as*, Míchaēl *the ángel Míchäel*, Gábriēl *the ángel Gábriel*, Ráphaēl *the ángel Ráphäel*, Dániēl *the próphet Dániel.*

VII. N finíta *-n fínal, that is, últimate sýllables in -n* producúntur *are léngthened:* ut *as*, Pǽān *a hymn to Apóllo*, Hýmēn *the god of wédlock, or, márriage*, quīn *but*, Xénophōn *a man's name*, nōn *no, or not*, dǽmōn *a démon or dévil.*

Éxcipe *excépt* (*these words*) fórsăn *perháps*, fórsităn *perchánce*, ăn *whéther*, támĕn *yet*, áttamĕn *but yet*, verúntamĕn *nevertheléss*, et *and* in *the prepositíon* "in."

Et *and* his (vócibus) *to these* (*words*) accédunt *accéde or are ádded* íllæ vóces *those words*, quæ (vóces) *which* patiúntur *súffer* apócopen *apócopë,—that is, loss at the end:* ut *as*, mĕ'n' (*for* méne ?) *what me?* vidĕ'n' (*for* vidésne ?) *do you see?* audĭ'n' (*for* audísne ?) *do you hear?* Étiám *álso* éxĭn (*for* exíndè) *hénceforth*, súbĭn (*for* subíndè) *now and then*, déĭn (*for* deíndè) *thereafter, or, áfterwards*, prōĭn (*for* proíndè) *thérefore.*

Quóquè in -an *álso words énding* in '*-an*,' à *from* nominatívis (cásibus) *nóminative cáses* (finítis) in -ă *énding in* "*a :*" ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Iphigeníă *Iphigénia, a daúghter of Agamémnon*, Ægína *Ǽgine, a príncess of Bœótia ;* accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Iphigeníăn Ægínăn :—nàm *for* (vóces finítæ) in -an *words in* '*an*,' à *from* nominatívis (cásibus) *nóminative cáses* (finítis) in -ās *énding in* "*ās*," producúntur *are léngthened :*—ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Ænéās *a Trójan prince of that name*, Mársyās *a Phrýgian sátyr so cálled :*—accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Ænéān, Mársyān.

Ítèm *álso* nómina *nouns* in -ĕn *énding in* "*ĕn*," quórum (nóminum) *whereóf* genitívus (cásus) *the génitive case* hábet *hath* -ĭnis, corréptum *shórtened,—that is, hath the pénult short:*—ut *as*, cármĕn *a song or póem*, crímĕn *a faúlt or crime*, péctĕn *a comb*, tibícĕn *a pláyer on the flute*, (cúncta habéntia)

-ĭnis (in genitívo cásu) *háving all of them -ĭnis in the génitive case síngular.*

Quædam (nómina) *some nouns* étiàm *álso* (finíta) in -in *énding in -in* per -i *with an -i*, ut *as*, Aléxĭn, *Aléxis (in the objéctive case)*: et in -yn *and in -yn* per -y *with the létter -y*, ut *as*, Ítўn, *I'tys (in the objéctive case).*

Grǽca (vérba) *Greek words* étiàm *álso* (finíta) in -on *énding in -on*, per párvum o *with líttle o (cálled by the Greeks ŏmĭcrón)*, cujuscúnque cásûs *of whatsoéver case* fúerint *they be, líterally, shall or may have been*:—ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case (síngular)*, Íliŏn *the cíty Troy;* Péliŏn *a hill of that name, in Théssaly:* accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Caúcasŏn *mount Caúcasus;* Pýlon *the town Pýlos.*

VIII. O finíta *-o fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in -o* sunt commúnia *are cómmon (as to quántity)*: ut *as*, dícŏ *I say*, vírgŏ, *a vírgin*, pórrŏ *moreóver.* Sîc *so* docéndŏ *in teáching*, legéndŏ *in reáding*, et *and* ália gerúndia *other gérunds* (finíta) in -do *(énding) in -do.*

Sèd *but* oblíqui cásus in -o *oblíque cáses in -o* sémpèr *álways* producúntur *are léngthened;* ut *as*, datívo (cásu) *in the dátive case*, dóminō *to a lord or máster;* sérvō *to a slave or sérvant;* ablatívo (cásu) *in the áblative case*, témplō *by or from a church or temple;* dámnō *with loss.*

Et *and* advérbia *ádverbs* derivàta *deríved* ab adjectívis (nomínibus) *from ádjective nouns*:—ut *as*, tántō *by so much*, quántō *by how much*, líquidō *cleárly*, fálsō *fálsely*, prímō *first*, maniféstō *mánifestly*, *&c.* prǽter *excépt* sédulō *díligently*, mútuŏ *mútually*, crébrŏ *fréquently*, quæ (advérbia) *which* sunt *are* commúnia *cómmon (as to the quántity of the fínal -o).*

Cǽterùm *but (these two)* módŏ *now or ónly, álso, províded that*, et *and* quómodŏ *how*, sémpèr *álways* corripiúntur *are made short.*

Quóquè *líkewise* cítò *soon*, ut et *as álso*, ámbo *both*, dúo *two*, égo *I*, átquè *and* hómo *a man or wóman*, vix legúntur *are scárcely éver read* prodúcta *long (as to the fínal sýllable).* Támèn *howéver* monosýllaba in -o *mónosyllables in -o* producúntur *are léngthened*:—ut *as*, dō *I give*, stō *I stand.*

Ítèm *álso* Grǽca (vocábula) *Greek words* per ω *with o long (by the Greeks cálled ōmĕ'ga)*, cujúsmodi cásûs *of whatéver case* fúerint *they shall have been, or are*:—ut *as*, nominatívo

(cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Sápphō *a póetess of Lésbos*, Dídō *a queen of Cárthage*:—genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, Andrógeō *of Andrógeus*:—accusatívo (cásu) *in the accúsative case*, Áthō *mount Áthos*. Et sîc *and so líkewise* érgô *the word "érgô" (when put)* pro *for* caúsâ *the cause or sake of*.

IX. R finíta *-r fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in r* corripiúntur *are shórtened*: ut *as*, Cǽsăr *a títle of the Róman émperors*, pĕr *by or through*, vĭr *a man*, úxŏr *a wife*, túrtŭr *a túrtle*.

Aútèm *but* (hæc vérba) producúntur *these (words) are made long*:—fār *bread-corn*, Lār *a hoúsehold god*, Nār *the ríver Nar, now cálled the Néra*, vēr *the spring*, fūr *a thief*, cūr *why*:—quóquè *álso* pār *équal to or like*, cum *with* (súis) compósitis *its cómpounds*,—ut *as*, cómpār *a compánion*, ímpār *unéqual*, díspar *unlíke*.

Étiàm *álso* Grǽca (vocábula) *Greek words* in -ēr *énding in -ēr*, quæ (vocábula) *which* íllis *with or among them* (némpè *námely*, Grǽcis *the Greeks*), désinunt *end* in *-ηρ in long e befóre r*:—ut *as*, ā'ēr *the air*, crátēr *a bowl, or góblet*, charáctēr *a mark or sign*, ǽthēr *the sky*, sótēr *a sáviour or delíverer*: prǽter *excépt* pátĕr *a fáther*, et *and* mátĕr *a móther*,—quǽ (dúo nómina) *which two nouns* ápud Latínos *with the Látins or Rómans* hábent *have* últimam (sýllabam) *the last sýllable* brévem *short*.

X. S finíta *-s fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in -s* hábent *have* páres terminatiónes *the like terminátions, that is, the same númber of éndings* cum *with* número *the númber* vocálium *of the vówels*:—némpè *námely*, -as, -es, -is, -os, -us, -ys.

1. As finíta *'-as' fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in '-as'* producúntur *are léngthened or made long*:—ut *as*, ámās *thou lóvest*, Músās *the Múses*, majéstās *májesty*, bónitās *goódness*.

Prǽter *excépt* (quǽdam) Grǽca (vérbula *some*) *Greek words*, quórum (verbulórum) *whereóf or of which* genitívus (cásus) singuláris *the génitive case síngular* éxit in -dŏs *ends in -dŏs*: ut *as*, Árcăs *an Arcádian*, Pállas *Minérva*; genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, Árcadŏs *of an Arcádian*, Pálladŏs *of Minérva*.

Et *líkewise* prǽter *excépt* accusatívos (cásus) pluráles *the accúsative cáses plúral* nóminum *of nouns* crescéntium *increásing*: ut *as*, héros heróŏs *a héro*, Phýllis Phýllidŏs *Phýllis*;

accusatívo (cásu) plurâli *in the accúsative plúral* heróăs *héroes*, Phýllidăs *Phýllisses.*

2. Es finíta *-es fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in -es* sunt lónga *are long:* ut *as*, Anchísēs *the father of Ænéas*, sédēs *a seat*, dócēs *thou teáchest*, pátrēs *fáthers.*

Nómina in -es *nouns (énding) in -es* tértiæ inflectiónis *of the third infléction or declénsion*, quæ (nómina) *which* corrípiunt *shórten* penúltimam (sýllabam) *the last sýllable save one* genitívi (cásus) *of the génitive case* crescéntis *increásing*, excipiúntur *are excépted:*—ut *as*, mílĕs *a sóldier*, ségĕs *stánding corn*, dívĕs *rich.* Sèd *but* áriēs *a ram*, ábiēs *a fir-tree*, páriẹs *a wall or partítion*, Cérēs *the Góddess of corn, and of hárvests*, et *also* pēs *a foot*, únâ *togéther* cum *with* compósitis (vérbulis éjus) *its cómpounds:* ut *as*, bípēs *two-fóoted or háving two feet*, trípēs *three-fóoted or háving three feet*, sunt *are* lónga *long.*

Quóquè *likewise* ĕs *thou art*, à *from* sum *I am*, únâ *togéther* cum *with* compósitis (vérbis éjus) *its (séveral) cómpounds*, corrípitur *is shórtened:* ut *as*, pótĕs *thou art áble or canst*, ádĕs *thou art présent, or, be présent*, pródĕs *thou prófitest*, óbĕs *thou hínderest or húrtest:* quíbus (vócibus) *to which (words)* pénĕs *in the pówer of*, pótest *may* adjúngi *be ádded.*

Ítèm *álso* neútra (nómina) *neúter nouns, that is, words of the neúter génder*,—et *and* nominatívi (cásus) plurâles *the nóminative cáses plúral* (quorúndam) Græcórum (nóminum) *of cértain Greek nouns:*—ut *as*, hippómanĕs *a ráging húmour in mares*, cacöéthĕs *an ill hábit or a vícious cústom*, Cyclópĕs *the Cýclops, giants of Sícily*, Nāïadĕs, *the Náïds, fairies haúnting rivers and fóuntains.*

3. Is finíta *-is fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in -is* sunt *are* brévia *short:*—ut *as*, Párĭs *a Trójan prince*, pánĭs *bread*, trístĭs *sórrowful or sad*, hílărĭs *mérry or gay.*

Éxcipe *excépt* oblíquos cásus plurâles *oblíque cáses plúral* (finítos) in -is *énding in -is*, qui (cásus) *which* producúntur *are léngthened or made long:* ut *as*, músīs *to or by songs*, à *of* músă *a song;* ménsīs *to or by tables*, à *of* ménsă *a táble;* dóminīs *to or by lords*, témplis *to or by témples*, et *and* quîs, pro *for* quíbus, *to or by whom.*

Ítèm *álso* (nómina) producéntia *nouns léngthening* penúltimam (sýllabam) *the pénult, or last sýllable save one*, genitívi (cásûs) *of the génitive case* (crescéntis) *increásing:* ut *as*,

Sámnīs *a Sámnite,* Sálamīs *an isle by Áthens ;* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, Samnítis, Salamínis.

Ádde hùc *add hither*, *or*, *to this place*, *that is*, *to these nouns* (ómnia vérba) quæ (vérba) *all words which*, *that is*, *such words as* désinunt in -îs *end in -îs*, contrácta *contrácted* ex -eīs *from the díphthong -eīs*, sívè *whéther* Grǽca (vérba) *Greek*, sívè *or* Latína (vérba) *Látin*, cujuscúnque númeri *of whatéver númber* aùt *or* cásûs *case* fúerint *they may be :*—ut *as*, Símŏīs *a ríver by Troy*, Pýrŏīs *one of the hórses of the Sun*, pártīs *parts*, ómnīs *all :* è *from* (*the words*) Símŏeīs, Pýrŏeīs, párteīs, ómneīs.

Et ítèm *and álso* ómnia monosýllaba (vérba) *all mónosyllables ;* ut *as*. vīs *strength or force*, līs *strife :*—prǽter *excépt* nominatívos (cásus) *these nóminative cáses*, ĭs *he*, et *and* quĭs *who ?* et *and* (advérbium) *the ádverb* bĭs *twice*.

Ístis (vócibus) *to these words* accédunt *accéde* (*or are ádded*) secúndæ persónæ singuláres *the sécond pérsons síngular* verbórum (finítæ) in '-is' *of verbs énding in '-is'* quórum (verbórum) *whereóf or of which* secúndæ (persónæ) pluráles *the sécond pérsons plúral* désinunt in -ītis *end in -ítis*, penúltimâ (sýllabâ) *the pénult or last sýllable save one* prodúctâ *béing made long :* únâ *togéther* cum *with* futúris (tempóribus) *the fúture ténses* optatívi (módi) *of the óptative or poténtial mood* (finítis) in -ris *énding in -ris :* ut *as*, audīs *thou dost hear*, vélīs *thou máyest* (*or canst*) *be wílling*, déderīs *thou wilt have gíven ;* plurálitèr *in the plúral númber* audī'tis, velī'tis, dederī'tis.

4. Os finíta *-os fínal*, *that is*, *fínal sýllables in -os* producúntur *are léngthened or made long :* ut *as*, hónōs *hónour*, népōs *a grándchild*, dóminōs *lords*, sérvōs *slaves or sérvants*.

Prǽter *excépt* cómpŏs *máster of*, *or*, *a pérson who has obtáined his desíre*, ímpŏs *not máster of*, *or*, *a pérson who is unáble ;* et *and* ŏs óssis *a bone*.

Et *and* Grǽca (vocábula) *Greek words* per párvum -o *with líttle o :* ut *as*, Délŏs *the isle of Délos in the Ægéan sea*, cháŏs *a confúsed mass or heap ;* Pálladŏs *of Pállas*, *or of Minérva ;* Phýllidŏs *of Phýllis*, *a wóman's name*.

5. Us finíta "*-us*" *fínal*, *that is*, *últimate sýllables in -us* corripiúntur *are made short :*—ut *as*, fámulŭs *a man-sérvant*, régiŭs *róyal*, témpŭs *time*, amámŭs *we love*.

(Nómina) producéntia *nouns léngthening* penúltimam (sýllabam) *the penúlt*, *or last sýllable save one*, genitívi (cásus) *of*

*the génitive case* crescéntis *increásing*, excipiúntur *are excépted:* ut *as*, sálūs *health*, téllūs *the earth;* genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, salū'tis, tellū'ris.

Étiàm *álso* ómnes vóces *all words* quártæ inflectiónis *of the fourth infléction or declénsion* (finítæ) in -us *énding in -us* sunt lóngæ *are long:*—prǽter *excépt* nominatívum (cásum) *the nóminative* et *and* vocatívum (cásum) *the vócative case* singuláres *síngular* (*or, of the síngular númber*):—ut *as*, genitívo (cásu) singulári *in the génitive case síngular*, mánūs *of the hand*, nominatívo, accusatívo, vocatívo (cásu) pluráli *in the nóminative, accúsative, and vócative case plúral*, mánūs *hands.*

Étiàm *líkewise* monosýllaba (vérba) *mónosyllables* accédunt *accéde or are ádded* his *to these:*—ut *as*, crūs *the leg from the knee to the áncle*, thūs *fránkincense*, mūs *a mouse*, sūs *a swine,—sow or boar.*

Et ítèm *and álso* Grǽca (vocábula) *Greek words* per diphthóngum -ους (*énding*) *with the díphthong -ous*, cujuscúnque cásûs *of whatéver case* fúerint *they may have been or are:* ut *as*, nominatívo (cásu) *in the nóminative case*, Pánthūs, Melámpūs, *Próper Names of men:*—genitívo (cásu) *in the génitive case*, Sápphûs *of Sáppho*, Clíûs *of Clío, one of the Múses.*

Átquè *and* Jésūs *the Sáviour Jésus* nómen *a name* venerándum *to be réverenced* cúnctis píis (homínibus) *by all relígious or gódly pérsons.*

6. Ys finíta *-ys fínal, that is, last sýllables in -ys* sunt brévia *are short:* ut *as*, Téthȳs *a maríne góddess of that name*, Ítȳs *a son of Téreus a king of Thrace*, chlámȳs *a cloak or mántle.* Éxcipe *excépt* pluráles cásus *plúral cáses* (finítos) in -ys *énding in -ys* contráctos *contrácted* ex -ȳĕs vèl -ȳăs *from -ȳĕs or from -ȳăs:*—ut *as*, Erínnȳs *the Fúries* pro *for* Erínnȳĕs, vèl *or* Erínnȳăs.

XI. Postrémò *lástly*, - u finíta *-u fínal, that is, fínal sýllables in 'u'* producúntur *are made long* ómnia *all or withoút excéption:* ut *as*, mánū *by or with the hand, the áblative case síngular of* mánus *a hand;* génū *the knee;* amátū *to be lóved;* díū *a long while or time.*

# APPENDIX.

## I. PUNCTUATION.

A SÉNTENCE is eíther *Símple* or *Cómpound* :—*Símple* when it consísts of no more than one súbject, and contaíns no more than one *fínite* verb; that is, a verb in ány mood excépt the *infínitive mood*,—whéther the verb be expréssed or understoód :—*Cómpound* when it consísts of more than one súbject, and contaíns more than one *fínite* verb.

Évery cómpound séntence is divíded ínto two or more parts (accórding to the númber of indepéndent fínite verbs in it) by one or more of the fóllowing stops :—

1. A CÓMMA [,] which is úsed at the end of évery símple súbject, in a cómpound séntence:—as, *Cícero, who stúdied díligently, hóping to becóme éminent, gaíned leárning, glóry, and rank.*

2. A SÉMICOLON [;] which is úsed in the míddle of ány cómpound séntence, when half the séntence is fínished, and the remaíning half forms a cóntrast with the fórmer half :—as, *A dishónest man may take pains to screen himsélf from shame and púnishment ; but jústice will take still more pains to discóver and expóse him.*

3. A CÓLON [:] which is used when the sense is pérfect, but the séntence not énded:—as, *Dread to be known for a líar : becaúse that cháracter is detéstable, and sure to last as long as life lasts.*

4. A PÉRIOD OR FULL STOP [.] which is úsed at the end of évery séntence, both símple and cómpound.

☞ The pause occásioned by a cómma is équal to the time nécessary (at the órdinary rate of reáding or speáking) to count *one.* The pause at a semicólon is twice as long as at a cómma; that is, équal to the time necessary to count *two.* The pause at a cólon is three times as long as at a cómma ; or équal to the time nécessary to count *three.* And the pause at a périod (or a full stop), is four times as long as at a cómma; or équal to the time nécessary to count *four.*

5. A parénthesis, ( ) which is a clause in the míddle of a séntence, such, that it may be omítted withoút détriment to the sense: thus, *Quintílian (an áccurate judge of mankínd) was pleásed with boys who wept when their school-féllows out-díd them: for he knew that the sense of disgráce would make them émulous,—and that emulátion would make them schólars.*

☞ Insteád of the two crótchets inclósing the words of a parénthesis, two cómmas are not unfréquently emplóyed: thus, in the precéding exámple, we might, with pérfect corréctness, write,—*Quintílian, an áccurate judge of mankínd, was pleásed, &c.*

6. An interrogátion, [?] which is a mark úsed insteád of a full stop áfter ány séntence wherebý a quéstion is ásked:—as, *Xenócratës, hólding his peace at some detrácting discoúrse, was ásked, why he did not speak?* "*Becaúse,*" said he, "*I have more than once repénted of háving spóken, but néver of háving been sílent.*"

7. A sign of admirátion, [!] which is a mark that denótes wónder or some súdden emótion of mind: as, *Alás! the cares of life! Oh! the émptiness of its pursuíts!*

## II. CAPITAL LETTERS.

1. Évery séntence ought to begín with a cápital letter; and, in póetry, each verse may, or may not, comménce in a símilar mánner.

2. All próper names, and words úsed for próper names, such, for exámple, as *Septémber, the Gráces; Tówer-hill,* should begín with a cápital.

3. Cómmon súbstantives, when emphátic, should begín with a cápital létter; but not unléss they are emphátic.

4. All ádjectives derívcd from próper names, as, *Róman, Swédish, Welsh;* and cómmon ádjectives when applíed to pérsons of éminence, as *Almíghty* God, *Hóly* Ghost, *Róyal* Májesty, *Seréne* Híghness, are génerally made to begín with a cápital létter.

5. A quotátion or speech, introdúced in the míddle of a séntence, may begín with a cápital létter; but when invérted cómmas are úsed, a cápital létter is séldom réquisite: as, *Zéno, heáring a young man speak more than was becóming, said,* "*we have two ears, and ónly one tongue, to the end that we should hear much and say líttle.*"

*** As the Rómans were unacquaínted with the fígures of aríthmetic now in use amóng us, they emploýed cértain cápital létters to denóte númbers:—as, for exámple, I for *one*, V for *five*, X for *ten*, L for *fifty*, C for *a húndred*, D for *five húndred*, and M for *a thoúsand*.

### III. FIGURES OF GRAMMAR.

Any deviátion from the órdinary way of speáking, or from the órdinary form of wríting, whéther for the sake of brévity, of beaúty, or of énergy, is cálled a FÍGURE.

I. The Fígures of ETYMÓLOGY are :—

1. *Prósthesis,* which adds a létter, or sy̌llable, to a word at the begínning : as gnā'tă, *a daúghter,* for nā'tă ; tĕ'tŭlī, *I bore,* for tŭ'lī.

2. *Aphǽresis,* which takes awáy a létter, or sy̌llable, from the begínning of a word : as, 'st, *it is,* for ēst ; 'rŭ'ĭt, *he rúshes forth,* for ē'rŭĭt.

3. *Epénthesis,* which insérts a létter, or a sy̌llable, in the míddle of a word : as, rēp'pĕrĭt, *he found,* for rĕ'pĕrĭt ; īndŭpĕrā'tŏr, *a commánder,* for īmpĕrā'tŏr.

4. *Sýncopē,* which drops (or omíts) a létter, or a sy̌llable, in the míddle of a word : as, pŭĕr'tĭă, *chíldhood,* for pŭĕrĭ'tĭă ; ŏb'ĭĭt, *he díed,* for ŏbĭ'vĭt ; dīx'tī, *thou saídest,* for dīxĭs'tī.

5. *Paragógē,* which adds a létter, or sy̌llable, to the end of a word :— as, hērō'ĭsĭn, *to héroes,* for hērō'ĭsĭ ; dĭ'cĭĕr, *to be said,* for dĭ'cī.

6. *Apócopē,* which takes awáy a létter, or sy̌llable, from the end of a word : as, mĕ'n' ! *what me ?* for mē'nĕ ; să'tĭn' ! *enoúgh ?* for sătĭs'nĕ ?

7. *Metáthesis,* which transpóses a létter in a word :—as, cōrcŏdī'lŭs, *a crócodile,* for crŏcŏdī'lŭs ; pīs'trĭs, *a sort of whale,* álso, *a gálley,* for prīs'tĭs.

8. *Archäísmus,* which means an old or ántiquated mánner of wríting, or of pronoúncing : as, cūr'rū, *to a cháriot ;* for cūr'rŭī ; ōl'lī, *they,* for īl'lī.

9. *Hellenísmus,* which implíes eíther the adóption, or else the imitátion, of some Greek word : as, Hĕ'lĕnē, *Hélen,* for Hĕ'lĕnă : dēl'phīn, *a dólphin,* for dēlphī'nŭs : tĭ'grĭdŏs, *of a tíger,* for tĭ'grĭs or tĭ'grĭdĭs.

II. The Fígures of SYN'TAX are clássed únder the heads of *Ellípsis, Pleonásmus, Enállagē, and Hypérbaton ;* each of which is agaín subdivíded ínto várious bránches, whereóf the fóllowing are the príncipal.

#### I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLÍPSIS is the omíssion of some word, or words, nécessary to compléte the sense :—as, ĕ'gŏmĕt cōntĭ'nŭō mē'cŭm, *fórthwith I mysélf with mysélf,* understánd cōgĭtā'rĕ īncĭpĭē'bām, *begán to cógitate* or *to think.* Quĭd mūl'tă ! *Why mány things or words ?* Understánd dĭ'cām, *need I say,* Vēn'tŭm ĕ'răt ăd Vēs'tæ, *it was* or *it had been come to Vésta's*— understánd æ'dĕm *vĕl* tēm'plŭm, *fane* or *témple.*

#### II. PLEONASMUS.

PLEONAS'MUS is the use of sómething supérfluous in a séntence :—as, Rō'mă ēst mĕ'ă pă'trĭă ĕt nā'tālĕ sŏ'lŭm, *Rome is my coúntry and nátive soil.*

### III. Enallage.

Enal'lage is a change of génder, númber, case, mood, tense, or pérson: as, Rōmā'nŭs vic'tŏr ĕ'răt, *the Róman was cónqueror,* for Rōmā'nī vīctō'rēs ĕ'rānt, *the Rómans were cónquerors.*

### IV. Hyperbaton.

Hypérbaton is a deviátion from the cómmon práctice in the arrángement of words in a séntence, as respécts eíther the nátural órder of evénts, or the estáblished mode of speáking and of wríting: as, vă'lĕt āt'quĕ vī'vĭt, *he is well and líves,* insteád of vī'vĭt āt'quĕ vă'lĕt.

III. The Fígures of Prósody are, *Synalœ́pha, Ecthlípsis, Synǽresis, Diǽresis, Sýstolē, Diástolē, Synapheía,* and *Cæsúra*:—the whole of which have been nóticed above, únder the head of Prósody.

### IV. Figures of Rhetoric.

The art of speáking and of wríting with *propríety* is términed Gram'mar; whilst the art of speáking and of wríting with *élegance* is námed Rhétoric.

The chief *Fígures* of Rhétoric, or *Tropes*, as they are génerally cálled, are the fóllowing:—

1. *Metáphora,* or the applicátion of some bórrowed áttribute or quálity, to expréss more beaútifully, or more fórcibly, some círcumstance or appeárance: as, gĕ'mĭnī, dŭ'ŏ fŭl'mĭnă bĕl'lī, Scīpĭ'ădæ, clā'dēs Lĭ'byæ, *the twín-like Scípios* (líterally, *sons of Scipio*), *two thúnderbolts of war, hávoc to Líbya;* with allúsion to *Públius Cornélius Scípio Africánus májor,* and *Públius Cornélius Scípio Æmiliánus Africánus mínor*:—or, vĭ'tĭō mŏ'rĭēns sĭ'tĭt ā'ĕrĭs hēr'bă, *by fault of the air the dýing hérbage thirsts,* meáning, that, *ówing to the drought the grass is in lack of moísture to fúrther its growth, and enáble it to regaín and maintaín its vérdure.*

2. *Metonýmia,* or the súbstituting for a pérson or a thing some signíficant círcumstance relàting eíther to the one or the óther: as, ēxpēctā'tĕ cĭcā'dās, *wait for the balm-críckets,* meáning æstā'tĕm, ĭn quā strī'dēnt cĭcā'dæ, *súmmer, whereín the grásshoppers* or *balm-críckets chirp*: Vĭrgĭ'lĭŭs lĕ'gĭtŭr, *Vírgil is read,* for cār'mĭnă ā Vĭrgĭ'lĭō cōmpŏ'sĭtă lĕgŭn'tŭr, *the póems compósed by Vírgil are read.*

3. *Synécdochē,* or the pútting the whole for a part, or a part for the whole; as, trīgĭn'tā mĭ'nās prō că'pĭtĕ tŭ'ō dĕ'dī, *I gave thírty mínæ for thy head:* Ă'rărĭm Păr'thŭs bĭ'bĕt, *the Párthian shall drink the Saône.*

4. *Irónia,* or the assúmed use of words in a sense diamétrically ópposite to their meáning: as, Ō săl'vē, bŏ'nĕ vĭr, cūrās'tī prŏ'bē, *O God save you, good sir, you have táken care hónestly.* Here the words are at váriance with the thoughts of the speáker.

5. *Allegória,* or the méntion of sómething únder a fictítious or feigned appellátion, maintaíning throughoút the whole discoúrse a séries of métaphors bórrowed from the súbject first assúmed:—as, Ō nā'vĭs, rĕ'fĕrēnt ĭn mă'rĕ tē nŏ'vī flūc'tŭs, *O ship,* (meáning, *O Róman state*) *new waves will bear thee back to the sea,* that is, *new commótions will embroíl thee in cívil war.*

6. *Clímax,* or a grádual adváncement in force of expréssion úntil the súbject rises to the híghest:—as, fă'cĭnŭs ēst vīncī'rĕ cī vĕm Rōmā'nŭm scĕ'lŭs, vērbĕrā'rĕ; prŏ'pĕ pārrĭcī'dĭŭm, nĕcārĕ; quĭd dī'cām, ĭn crŭ'cĕ

tōl′lĕrĕ ? *It is a dáring thing to bind a Róman cítizen ; an atrócity, to inflíct láshes on him ; álmost párricide, to slay him ; what can I call it to uplíft him on the cross ?*

7. *Hypérbolē*, or the mágnifying a súbject excéssively in admirátion or dimínishing it excéssively in contémpt :—thus, sī′dĕră vēr′tĭcĕ fĕ′rĭam, *I shall strike the stars with my crown :* lĕ′vĭŏr cōr′tĭcĕ, *líghter than cork.*

8. *Prosopopœ́ia*, or the personificátion of eíther *inánimate* or *irrátional* óbjects : as, tē′cŭm, Cătĭlī′nă, pă′trĭă sīc ă′gĭt, ĕt quōdăm′mŏdŏ tă′cĭtă lŏ′quĭtŭr ; nūl′lŭm, jăm tŏt ān′nōs, fă′cĭnŭs ēx′tĭtĭt, &c., *with thee, Cátiline, thy coúntry thus impleáds, and in a mánner sílent she says ; until now, for so mány years no víllany has exísted,* &c.

9. *Apóstrophē*, or when a speáker, transpórted with eárnestness, addrésses himsélf to ánything that presénts itsélf to his mind,—whéther présent or ábsent : as, Pŏlŭdō′rŭm ōbtrūn′căt, ĕt aū′rō vī pŏ′tĭtŭr. Quid nōn mōrtā′lĭă pēc′tŏră cō′gĭs, aū′rī sāc′ră fă′mēs ? *He múrders Pólydore, and by víolence gets posséssion of his gold. What, O cúrsed húnger of gold, fórcest thou not mórtal breasts untó ?*

THE END.

BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

12767

grammar. New ed.

NAME OF BORROWER

~~fasch, st~~ ~~overdue~~